COMPOSITIONS AND METHODS OF INHIBITING MASP-3 FOR THE TREATMENT OF VARIOUS DISEASES AND DISORDERS

CROSS-REFERENCE TO RELATED APPLICATIONS

This application claims the benefit of U.S. Provisional Application No 62/369,674, filed August 1, 2016, and claims the benefit of U.S. Provisional Application No. 62/419,420, filed November 8, 2016, and claims the benefit of U.S. Provisional Application No. 62/478,336, filed March 29, 2017, all three of which are hereby incorporated by reference in their entirety.

STATEMENT REGARDING SEQUENCE LISTING

The sequence listing associated with this application is provided in text format in lieu of a paper copy and is hereby incorporated by reference into the specification. The name of the text file containing the sequence listing is MP_1_0254_US_Sequence_Listing_20170628_ST25; the file is 191 KB; was created on June 28, 2017 and is being submitted via EFS-Web with the filing of the specification.

BACKGROUND

The complement system provides an early acting mechanism to initiate, amplify and orchestrate the immune response to microbial infection and other acute insults (M.K. Liszewski and J.P. Atkinson, 1993, in *Fundamental Immunology*, Third Edition, edited by W.E. Paul, Raven Press, Ltd., New York), in humans and other vertebrates. While complement activation provides a valuable first-line defense against potential pathogens, the activities of complement that promote a protective immune response can also represent a potential threat to the host (K.R. Kalli, et al., *Springer Semin. Immunopathol. 15*:417-431, 1994; B.P. Morgan, *Eur. J. Clinical Investig. 24*:219-228, 1994). For example, C3 and C5 proteolytic products recruit and activate neutrophils. While indispensable for host defense, activated neutrophils are indiscriminate in their release of destructive enzymes and may cause organ damage. In addition, complement activation may cause the deposition of lytic complement components on nearby host cells as well as on microbial targets, resulting in host cell lysis.

The complement system has also been implicated in the pathogenesis of numerous acute and chronic disease states, including: myocardial infarction, stroke, ARDS, reperfusion

injury, septic shock, capillary leakage following thermal burns, postcardiopulmonary bypass inflammation, transplant rejection, rheumatoid arthritis, multiple sclerosis, myasthenia gravis, and Alzheimer's disease. In almost all of these conditions, complement is not the cause but is one of several factors involved in pathogenesis. Nevertheless, complement activation may be a major pathological mechanism and represents an effective point for clinical control in many of these disease states. The growing recognition of the importance of complement-mediated tissue injury in a variety of disease states underscores the need for effective complement inhibitory drugs. To date, Eculizumab (Solaris®), an antibody against C5, is the only complement-targeting drug that has been approved for human use. Yet, C5 is one of several effector molecules located "downstream" in the complement system, and blockade of C5 does not inhibit activation of the complement system. Therefore, an inhibitor of the initiation steps of complement activation would have significant advantages over a "downstream" complement inhibitor.

Currently, it is widely accepted that the complement system can be activated through three distinct pathways: the classical pathway, the lectin pathway, and the alternative pathway. The classical pathway is usually triggered by a complex composed of host antibodies bound to a foreign particle (*i.e.*, an antigen) and thus requires prior exposure to an antigen for the generation of a specific antibody response. Since activation of the classical pathway depends on a prior adaptive immune response by the host, the classical pathway is part of the acquired immune system. In contrast, both the lectin and alternative pathways are independent of adaptive immunity and are part of the innate immune system.

The activation of the complement system results in the sequential activation of serine protease zymogens. The first step in activation of the classical pathway is the binding of a specific recognition molecule, C1q, to antigen-bound IgG and IgM molecules. C1q is associated with the Clr and Cls serine protease proenzymes as a complex called Cl. Upon binding of C1q to an immune complex, autoproteolytic cleavage of the Arg-Ile site of Clr is followed by Clr-mediated cleavage and activation of Cls, which thereby acquires the ability to cleave C4 and C2. C4 is cleaved into two fragments, designated C4a and C4b, and, similarly, C2 is cleaved into C2a and C2b. C4b fragments are able to form covalent bonds with adjacent hydroxyl or amino groups and generate the C3 convertase (C4b2a) through noncovalent interaction with the C2a fragment of activated C2. C3 convertase (C4b2a) activates C3 by proteolytic cleavage into C3a and C3b subcomponents leading to generation of the C5 convertase (C4b2a3b), which, by cleaving C5 leads to the formation of the membrane attack complex (C5b combined with C6, C7, C8 and C-9, also referred to as

"MAC") that can disrupt cellular membranes resulting in cell lysis. The activated forms of C3 and C4 (C3b and C4b) are covalently deposited on the foreign target surfaces, which are recognized by complement receptors on multiple phagocytes.

Independently, the first step in activation of the complement system through the lectin pathway is also the binding of specific recognition molecules, which is followed by the activation of associated serine protease proenzymes. However, rather than the binding of immune complexes by C1q, the recognition molecules in the lectin pathway comprise a group of carbohydrate-binding proteins (mannan-binding lectin (MBL), H-ficolin, M-ficolin, L-ficolin and C-type lectin CL-11), collectively referred to as lectins. See J. Lu et al., *Biochim. Biophys. Acta 1572*:387-400, (2002); Holmskov et al., *Annu. Rev. Immunol.* 21:547-578 (2003); Teh et al., *Immunology 101*:225-232 (2000)). See also J. Luet et al., *Biochim Biophys Acta* 1572:387-400 (2002); Holmskov et al, *Annu Rev Immunol* 21:547-578 (2003); Teh et al., *Immunology* 101:225-232 (2000); Hansen et al, *J. Immunol* 185(10):6096-6104 (2010).

Ikeda et al. first demonstrated that, like C1q, MBL could activate the complement system upon binding to yeast mannan-coated erythrocytes in a C4-dependent manner (Ikeda et al., *J. Biol. Chem. 262*:7451-7454, (1987)). MBL, a member of the collectin protein family, is a calcium-dependent lectin that binds carbohydrates with 3-and 4-hydroxy groups oriented in the equatorial plane of the pyranose ring. Prominent ligands for MBL are thus D-mannose and N-acetyl-D-glucosamine, while carbohydrates not fitting this steric requirement have undetectable affinity for MBL (Weis et al., *Nature* 360:127-134, (1992)). The interaction between MBL and monovalent sugars is extremely weak, with dissociation constants typically in the single-digit millimolar range. MBL achieves tight, specific binding to glycan ligands by avidity, i.e., by interacting simultaneously with multiple monosaccharide residues located in close proximity to each other (Lee et al., *Archiv. Biochem. Biophys.* 299:129-136, (1992)). MBL recognizes the carbohydrate patterns that commonly decorate microorganisms such as bacteria, yeast, parasites and certain viruses. In contrast, MBL does not recognize D-galactose and sialic acid, the penultimate and ultimate sugars that usually decorate "mature" complex glycoconjugates present on mammalian plasma and cell surface glycoproteins. This binding specificity is thought to promote recognition of "foreign" surfaces and help protect from "self-activation." However, MBL does bind with high affinity to clusters of high-mannose "precursor" glycans on N-linked glycoproteins and glycolipids sequestered in the endoplasmic reticulum and Golgi of mammalian cells (Maynard et al., *J. Biol. Chem. 257*:3788-3794, (1982)). In addition, it has been shown that MBL can bind the

polynucleotides, DNA and RNA, which may be exposed on necrotic and apoptotic cells (Palaniyar et al., *Ann. N.Y. Acad. Sci.,* 1010:467-470 (2003); Nakamura et al., *J. Leuk. Biol.* 86:737-748 (2009)). Therefore, damaged cells are potential targets for lectin pathway activation via MBL binding.

The ficolins possess a different type of lectin domain than MBL, called the fibrinogen-like domain. Ficolins bind sugar residues in a Ca^{++}-independent manner. In humans, three kinds of ficolins (L-ficolin, M-ficolin and H-ficolin) have been identified. The two serum ficolins, L-ficolin and H-ficolin, have in common a specificity for N-acetyl-D-glucosamine; however, H-ficolin also binds N-acetyl-D-galactosamine. The difference in sugar specificity of L-ficolin, H-ficolin, CL-11, and MBL means that the different lectins may be complementary and target different, though overlapping, glycoconjugates. This concept is supported by the recent report that, of the known lectins in the lectin pathway, only L-ficolin binds specifically to lipoteichoic acid, a cell wall glycoconjugate found on all Gram-positive bacteria (Lynch et al., *J. Immunol. 172*:1198-1202, (2004)). In addition to acetylated sugar moieties, the ficolins can also bind acetylated amino acids and polypeptides (Thomsen et al., *Mol. Immunol.* 48(4):369-81 (2011)). The collectins (i.e., MBL) and the ficolins bear no significant similarity in amino acid sequence. However, the two groups of proteins have similar domain organizations and, like C1q, assemble into oligomeric structures, which maximize the possibility of multisite binding.

The serum concentrations of MBL are highly variable in healthy populations and this is genetically controlled by polymorphisms/mutations in both the promoter and coding regions of the MBL gene. As an acute phase protein, the expression of MBL is further upregulated during inflammation. L-ficolin is present in serum at concentrations similar to those of MBL. Therefore, the L-ficolin branch of the lectin pathway is potentially comparable to the MBL arm in strength. MBL and ficolins can also function as opsonins, which allow phagocytes to target MBL- and ficolin-decorated surfaces (see Jack et al., *J Leukoc Biol.*, 77(3):328-36 (2004), Matsushita and Fujita, *Immunobiology*, 205(4-5):490-7 (2002), Aoyagi et al., *J Immunol,* 174(1):418-25(2005). This opsonization requires the interaction of these proteins with phagocyte receptors (Kuhlman et al., *J. Exp. Med. 169*:1733, (1989); Matsushita et al., *J. Biol. Chem. 271*:2448-54, (1996)), the identity of which has not been established.

Human MBL forms a specific and high-affinity interaction through its collagen-like domain with unique C1r/Cls-like serine proteases, termed MBL-associated serine proteases

(MASPs). To date, three MASPs have been described. First, a single enzyme "MASP" was identified and characterized as the enzyme responsible for the initiation of the complement cascade (i.e., cleaving C2 and C4) (Matsushita et al., *J Exp Med* 176(6):1497-1502 (1992); Ji et al., *J. Immunol. 150*:571-578, (1993)). It was subsequently determined that the MASP activity was, in fact, a mixture of two proteases: MASP-1 and MASP-2 (Thiel et al., *Nature 386*:506-510, (1997)). However, it was demonstrated that the MBL-MASP-2 complex alone is sufficient for complement activation (Vorup-Jensen et al., *J. Immunol. 165*:2093-2100, (2000)). Furthermore, only MASP-2 cleaved C2 and C4 at high rates (Ambrus et al., *J. Immunol. 170*:1374-1382, (2003)). Therefore, MASP-2 is the protease responsible for activating C4 and C2 to generate the C3 convertase, C4b2a. This is a significant difference from the C1 complex of the classical pathway, where the coordinated action of two specific serine proteases (C1r and C1s) leads to the activation of the complement system. In addition, a third novel protease, MASP-3, has been isolated (Dahl, M.R., et al., *Immunity 15*:127-35, 2001). MASP-1 and MASP-3 are alternatively spliced products of the same gene.

MASPs share identical domain organizations with those of Clr and Cls, the enzymatic components of the Cl complex (Sim et al., *Biochem. Soc. Trans. 28*:545, (2000)). These domains include an N-terminal Clr/Cls/sea urchin VEGF/bone morphogenic protein (CUB) domain, an epidermal growth factor-like domain, a second CUB domain, a tandem of complement control protein domains, and a serine protease domain. As in the C1 proteases, activation of MASP-2 occurs through cleavage of an Arg-I1e bond adjacent to the serine protease domain, which splits the enzyme into disulfide-linked A and B chains, the latter consisting of the serine protease domain.

MBL can also associate with an alternatively spliced form of MASP-2, known as MBL-associated protein of 19 kDa (MAp19) or small MBL-associated protein (sMAP), which lacks the catalytic activity of MASP-2. (Stover, *J. Immunol. 162*:3481-90, (1999); Takahashi et al., *Int. Immunol. 11*:859-863, (1999)). MAp19 comprises the first two domains of MASP-2, followed by an extra sequence of four unique amino acids. The function of Map19 is unclear (Degn et al., *J Immunol. Methods*, 2011). The MASP-1 and MASP-2 genes are located on human chromosomes 3 and 1, respectively (Schwaeble et al., *Immunobiology 205*:455-466, (2002)).

Several lines of evidence suggest that there are different MBL-MASP complexes and a large fraction of the MASPs in serum is not complexed with MBL (Thiel, et al., *J. Immunol. 165*:878-887, (2000)). Both H- and L-ficolin bind to all MASPs and activate the lectin complement pathway, as does MBL (Dahl et al., *Immunity 15*:127-35, (2001); Matsushita

et al., *J. Immunol. 168*:3502-3506, (2002)). Both the lectin and classical pathways form a common C3 convertase (C4b2a) and the two pathways converge at this step.

The lectin pathway is widely thought to have a major role in host defense against infection in the naïve host. Strong evidence for the involvement of MBL in host defense comes from analysis of patients with decreased serum levels of functional MBL (Kilpatrick, *Biochim. Biophys. Acta 1572*:401-413, (2002)). Such patients display susceptibility to recurrent bacterial and fungal infections. These symptoms are usually evident early in life, during an apparent window of vulnerability as maternally derived antibody titer wanes, but before a full repertoire of antibody responses develops. This syndrome often results from mutations at several sites in the collagenous portion of MBL, which interfere with proper formation of MBL oligomers. However, since MBL can function as an opsonin independent of complement, it is not known to what extent the increased susceptibility to infection is due to impaired complement activation.

In contrast to the classical and lectin pathways, no initiators of the alternative pathway have previously been found to fulfill the recognition functions that C1q and lectins perform in the other two pathways. Currently it is widely accepted that the alternative pathway spontaneously undergoes a low level of turnover activation, which can be readily amplified on foreign or other abnormal surfaces (bacteria, yeast, virally infected cells, or damaged tissue) that lack the proper molecular elements that keep spontaneous complement activation in check. There are four plasma proteins directly involved in the activation of the alternative pathway: C3, factors B and D, and properdin.

Although there is extensive evidence implicating both the classical and alternative complement pathways in the pathogenesis of non-infectious human diseases, the role of the lectin pathway is just beginning to be evaluated. Recent studies provide evidence that activation of the lectin pathway can be responsible for complement activation and related inflammation in ischemia/reperfusion injury. Collard et al. (2000) reported that cultured endothelial cells subjected to oxidative stress bind MBL and show deposition of C3 upon exposure to human serum (Collard et al., *Am. J. Pathol. 156*:1549-1556, (2000)). In addition, treatment of human sera with blocking anti-MBL monoclonal antibodies inhibited MBL binding and complement activation. These findings were extended to a rat model of myocardial ischemia-reperfusion in which rats treated with a blocking antibody directed against rat MBL showed significantly less myocardial damage upon occlusion of a coronary artery than rats treated with a control antibody (Jordan et al., *Circulation 104*:1413-1418, (2001)). The molecular mechanism of MBL binding to the vascular endothelium after

oxidative stress is unclear; a recent study suggests that activation of the lectin pathway after oxidative stress may be mediated by MBL binding to vascular endothelial cytokeratins, and not to glycoconjugates (Collard et al., *Am. J. Pathol. 159*:1045-1054, (2001)). Other studies have implicated the classical and alternative pathways in the pathogenesis of ischemia/reperfusion injury and the role of the lectin pathway in this disease remains controversial (Riedermann, N.C., et al., *Am. J. Pathol. 162*:363-367, 2003).

Recent studies have shown that MASP-1 and MASP-3 convert the alternative pathway activation enzyme factor D from its zymogen form into its enzymatically active form (see Takahashi M. et al., *J Exp Med* 207(1):29-37 (2010); Iwaki et al., *J. Immunol.* 187:3751-58 (2011)). The physiological importance of this process is underlined by the absence of alternative pathway functional activity in plasma of MASP-1/3-deficient mice. Proteolytic generation of C3b from native C3 is required for the alternative pathway to function. Since the alternative pathway C3 convertase (C3bBb) contains C3b as an essential subunit, the question regarding the origin of the first C3b via the alternative pathway has presented a puzzling problem and has stimulated considerable research.

C3 belongs to a family of proteins (along with C4 and α-2 macroglobulin) that contain a rare posttranslational modification known as a thioester bond. The thioester group is composed of a glutamine whose terminal carbonyl group forms a covalent thioester linkage with the sulfhydryl group of a cysteine three amino acids away. This bond is unstable and the electrophilic glutamyl-thioester can react with nucleophilic moieties such as hydroxyl or amino groups and thus form a covalent bond with other molecules. The thioester bond is reasonably stable when sequestered within a hydrophobic pocket of intact C3. However, proteolytic cleavage of C3 to C3a and C3b results in exposure of the highly reactive thioester bond on C3b and, following nucleophilic attack by adjacent moieties comprising hydroxyl or amino groups, C3b becomes covalently linked to a target. In addition to its well-documented role in covalent attachment of C3b to complement targets, the C3 thioester is also thought to have a pivotal role in triggering the alternative pathway. According to the widely accepted "tick-over theory", the alternative pathway is initiated by the generation of a fluid-phase convertase, iC3Bb, which is formed from C3 with hydrolyzed thioester (iC3; $C3(H_2O)$) and factor B (Lachmann, P.J., et al., *Springer Semin. Immunopathol. 7*:143-162, (1984)). The C3b-like $C3(H_2O)$ is generated from native C3 by a slow spontaneous hydrolysis of the internal thioester in the protein (Pangburn, M.K., et al., *J. Exp. Med. 154*:856-867, 1981). Through the activity of the $C3(H_2O)$Bb convertase, C3b molecules are deposited on the target surface thereby initiating the alternative pathway.

Prior to the instant discovery described herein, very little was known about the initiators of activation of the alternative pathway. Activators were thought to include yeast cell walls (zymosan), many pure polysaccharides, rabbit erythrocytes, certain immunoglobulins, viruses, fungi, bacteria, animal tumor cells, parasites, and damaged cells. The only feature common to these activators is the presence of carbohydrate, but the complexity and variety of carbohydrate structures has made it difficult to establish the shared molecular determinants which are recognized. It has been widely accepted that alternative pathway activation is controlled through the fine balance between inhibitory regulatory components of this pathway, such as factor H, factor I, DAF, and CR1, and properdin, the latter of which is the only positive regulator of the alternative pathway (see Schwaeble W.J. and Reid K.B., *Immunol Today* 20(1):17-21 (1999)).

In addition to the apparently unregulated activation mechanism described above, the alternative pathway can also provide a powerful amplification loop for the lectin/classical pathway C3 convertase (C4b2a) since any C3b generated can participate with factor B in forming additional alternative pathway C3 convertase (C3bBb). The alternative pathway C3 convertase is stabilized by the binding of properdin. Properdin extends the alternative pathway C3 convertase half-life six to ten-fold. Addition of C3b to the alternative pathway C3 convertase leads to the formation of the alternative pathway C5 convertase.

All three pathways (i.e., the classical, lectin and alternative) have been thought to converge at C5, which is cleaved to form products with multiple proinflammatory effects. The converged pathway has been referred to as the terminal complement pathway. C5a is the most potent anaphylatoxin, inducing alterations in smooth muscle and vascular tone, as well as vascular permeability. It is also a powerful chemotaxin and activator of both neutrophils and monocytes. C5a-mediated cellular activation can significantly amplify inflammatory responses by inducing the release of multiple additional inflammatory mediators, including cytokines, hydrolytic enzymes, arachidonic acid metabolites, and reactive oxygen species. C5 cleavage leads to the formation of C5b-9, also known as the membrane attack complex (MAC). There is now strong evidence that sublytic MAC deposition may play an important role in inflammation in addition to its role as a lytic pore-forming complex.

In addition to its essential role in immune defense, the complement system contributes to tissue damage in many clinical conditions. Thus, there is a pressing need to develop therapeutically effective complement inhibitors to prevent these adverse effects.

SUMMARY

In one example, the present disclosure provides an isolated monoclonal antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof thereof that specifically binds to the serine protease domain of human MASP-3 (amino acid residues 450 to 728 of SEQ ID NO:2) with high affinity (having a K_D of less than 500 pM), wherein the antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof inhibits alternative pathway complement activation. In some examples, antibody or antigen-binding fragment is characterized by at least one or more of the following properties: (a) inhibits pro-Factor D maturation; (b) does not bind to human MASP-1 (SEQ ID NO:8); (c) inhibits the alternative pathway at a molar ratio of from about 1:1 to about 2.5:1 (MASP-3 target to mAb) in a mammalian subject (d) does not inhibit the classical pathway (e) inhibits of hemolysis and/or opsonization; (f) inhibits of MASP-3 serine protease substrate-specific cleavage; (g) reduces hemolysis or the reduction of C3 cleavage and C3b surface deposition; (h) reduces of Factor B and/or Bb deposition on an activating surface; (i) reduces resting levels (in circulation, and without the experimental addition of an activating surface) of active Factor D relative to pro-Factor D; (j) reduces the level of active Factor D relative to pro-Factor D in response to an activating surface; (k) reduces the production of resting and surface-induced levels of fluid-phase Ba, Bb, C3b, or C3a; and/or (l) reduces factor P deposition. In some example, the isolated antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of paragraph 1 or 2, wherein said antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof specifically binds to an epitope located within the serine protease domain of human MASP-3, wherein said epitope is located within at least one or more of: VLRSQRRDTTVI (SEQ ID NO:9), TAAHVLRSQRRDTTV (SEQ ID NO:10), DFNIQNYNHDIALVQ (SEQ ID NO:11), PHAECKTSYESRS (SEQ ID NO:12), GNYSVTENMFC (SEQ ID NO:13), VSNYVDWVWE (SEQ ID NO:14) and/or VLRSQRRDTTV (SEQ ID NO:15). In some examples, the antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof binds to an epitope within at least one of: ECGQPSRSLPSLV (SEQ ID NO:16), RNAEPGLFPWQ (SEQ ID NO:17); KWFGSGALLSASWIL (SEQ ID NO:18); EHVTVYLGLH (SEQ ID NO:19); PVPLGPHVMP (SEQ ID NO:20); APHMLGL (SEQ ID NO:21); SDVLQYVKLP (SEQ ID NO:22); and/or AFVIFDDLSQRW (SEQ ID NO:23).

In another example, the present disclosure provides an isolated antibody, or antigen-binding fragment thereof, that binds to MASP-3 comprising: (a) a heavy chain variable region comprising a HC-CDR1 set forth as SEQ ID NO:209 (XXDIN, wherein X at position 1 is S or T and wherein X at position 2 is N or D); a HC-CDR2 set forth as SEQ ID NO:210 (WIYPRDXXXKYNXXFXD, wherein X at position 7 is G or D; X at position 8 is S, T or R;

X at position 9 is I or T; X at position 13 is E or D; X at position 14 is K or E; and X at position 16 is T or K); and a HC-CDR3 set forth as SEQ ID NO:211 (XEDXY, wherein X at position 1 is L or V, and wherein X at position 4 is T or S); and (b) a light chain variable region comprising a LC-CDR1 set forth as SEQ ID NO:212 (KSSQSLLXXRTRKNYLX, wherein X at position 8 is N, I, Q or A; wherein X at position 9 is S or T; and wherein X at position 17 is A or S); a LC-CDR2 set forth as SEQ ID NO:144 (WASTRES) and a LC-CDR3 set forth as SEQ ID NO:146 (KQSYNLYT).

In another example, the present disclosure provides an isolated antibody, or antigen-binding fragment thereof, that binds to MASP-3 comprising: (a) a heavy chain variable region comprising a HC-CDR1 set forth as SEQ ID NO:213 (SYGXX, wherein X at position 4 is M or I and wherein X at position 5 is S or T); a HC-CDR2 set forth as SEQ ID NO:74; and a HC-CDR3 set forth as SEQ ID NO:214 (GGXAXDY, wherein X at position 3 is E or D and wherein X at position 5 is M or L); and (b) a light chain variable region comprising a LC-CDR1 set forth as SEQ ID NO:215 (KSSQSLLDSXXKTYLX , wherein X at position 10 is D, E or A; wherein X at position 11 is G or A; and wherein X at position 16 is N or S); a LC-CDR2 set forth as SEQ ID NO:155; and a LC-CDR3 set forth as SEQ ID NO:216 (WQGTHFPXT, wherein X at position 8 is W or Y).

In example, the present disclosure provides an isolated antibody, or antigen-binding fragment thereof, that binds to MASP-3 comprising: (a) a heavy chain variable region comprising a HC-CDR1 set forth as SEQ ID NO:84 (GKWIE); a HC-CDR2 set forth as SEQ ID NO:86 (EILPGTGSTNYNEKFKG) or SEQ ID NO:275 (EILPGTGSTNYAQKFQG); and a HC-CDR3 set forth as SEQ ID NO:88 (SEDV); and (b) a light chain variable region comprising a LC-CDR1 set forth as SEQ ID NO:142 (KSSQSLLNSRTRKNYLA), SEQ ID NO:257 (KSSQSLLQSRTRKNYLA); SEQ ID NO:258 (KSSQSLLASRTRKNYLA); or SEQ ID NO:259 (KSSQSLLNTRTRKNYLA), a LC-CDR2 set forth as SEQ ID NO:144 (WASTRES); and a LC-CDR3 set forth as SEQ ID NO:161 (KQSYNIPT).

In one aspect, the present disclosure provides an isolated antibody, or antigen-binding fragment thereof, that binds to MASP-3 comprising: a heavy chain variable region comprising a HC-CDR1 set forth as SEQ ID NO:84 (GKWIE); a HC-CDR2 set forth as SEQ ID NO:86 (EILPGTGSTNYNEKFKG) or SEQ ID NO:275 (EILPGTGSTNYAQKFQG); and a HC-CDR3 set forth as SEQ ID NO:88 (SEDV); and a light chain variable region comprising a LC-CDR1 set forth as SEQ ID NO:142 (KSSQSLLNSRTRKNYLA), SEQ ID NO:257 (KSSQSLLQSRTRKNYLA); SEQ ID NO:258 (KSSQSLLASRTRKNYLA); or SEQ ID NO:259 (KSSQSLLNTRTRKNYLA), a LC-CDR2 set forth as SEQ ID NO:144 (WASTRES); and a LC-CDR3 set forth as SEQ ID NO:161 (KQSYNIPT).

In one aspect, the present disclosure refers to an isolated antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof that binds to human MASP-3, comprising a heavy chain variable region comprising SEQ ID NO:254 or SEQ ID NO:255 and a light chain variable region comprising SEQ ID NO:256 or SEQ ID NO:280.

In another example, the present disclosure provides an isolated antibody, or antigen-binding fragment thereof, that binds to MASP-3 comprising: (a) a heavy chain variable region comprising a HC-CDR1 set forth as SEQ ID NO:91 (GYWIE); a HC-CDR2 set forth as SEQ ID NO:93 (EMLPGSGSTHYNEKFKG), and a HC-CDR3 set forth as SEQ ID NO:95 (SIDY); and (b) a light chain variable region comprising a LC-CDR1 set forth as SEQ ID NO:163 (RSSQSLVQSNGNTYLH), a LC-CDR2 set forth as SEQ ID NO:165 (KVSNRFS) and a LC-CDR3 set forth as SEQ ID NO:167 (SQSTHVPPT).

In another example, the present disclosure provides an isolated antibody, or antigen-binding fragment thereof, that binds to MASP-3 comprising:

(a) a heavy chain variable region comprising a HC-CDR1 set forth as SEQ ID NO:109 (RVHFAIRDTNYWMQ), a HC-CDR2 set forth as SEQ ID NO:110 (AIYPGNGDTSYNQKFKG), a HC-CDR3 set forth as SEQ ID NO:112 (GSHYFDY); and a light chain variable region comprising a LC-CDR1 set forth as SEQ ID NO:182 (RASQSIGTSIH), a LC-CDR2 set forth as SEQ ID NO:184 (YASESIS) and a LC-CDR3 set forth as SEQ ID NO:186 (QQSNSWPYT); or

(b) a heavy chain variable region comprising a HC-CDR1 set forth as SEQ ID NO:125 (DYYMN), a HC-CDR2 set forth as SEQ ID NO:127 (DVNPNNDGTTYNQKFKG), a HC-CDR3 set forth as SEQ ID NO:129 (CPFYYLGKGTHFDY); and a light chain variable region comprising a LC-CDR1 set forth as SEQ ID NO:196 (RASQDISNFLN), a LC-CDR2 set forth as SEQ ID NO:198 (YTSRLHS) and a LC-CDR3 set forth as SEQ ID NO:200 (QQGFTLPWT); or

(c) a heavy chain variable region comprising a HC-CDR1 set forth as SEQ ID NO:137 a HC-CDR2 set forth as SEQ ID NO:138, a HC-CDR3 set forth as SEQ ID NO:140; and a light chain variable region comprising a LC-CDR1 set forth as SEQ ID NO:206, a LC-CDR2 set forth as SEQ ID NO:207 and a LC-CDR3 set forth as SEQ ID NO:208: or

(d) a heavy chain variable region comprising a HC-CDR1 set forth as SEQ ID NO:98, a HC-CDR2 set forth as SEQ ID NO:99, a HC-CDR3 set forth as SEQ ID NO:101; and a light chain variable region comprising a LC-CDR1 set forth as SEQ ID NO:169, a LC-CDR2 set forth as SEQ ID NO:171 and a LC-CDR3 set forth as SEQ ID NO:173; or

(e) a heavy chain variable region comprising a HC-CDR1 set forth as SEQ ID NO:103, a HC-CDR2 set forth as SEQ ID NO:105, a HC-CDR3 set forth as SEQ ID NO:107; and a light chain variable region comprising a LC-CDR1 set forth as SEQ ID NO:176, a LC-CDR2 set forth as SEQ ID NO:178 and a LC-CDR3 set forth as SEQ ID NO:193: or

(f) a heavy chain variable region comprising a HC-CDR1 set forth as SEQ ID NO:114, a HC-CDR2 set forth as SEQ ID NO:116, a HC-CDR3 set forth as SEQ ID NO:118; and a light chain variable region comprising a LC-CDR1 set forth as SEQ ID NO:188, a LC-CDR2 set forth as SEQ ID NO:178 and a LC-CDR3 set forth as SEQ ID NO:190; or

(g) a heavy chain variable region comprising a HC-CDR1 set forth as SEQ ID NO:114, a HC-CDR2 set forth as SEQ ID NO:121, a HC-CDR3 set forth as SEQ ID NO:123; and a light chain variable region comprising a LC-CDR1 set forth as SEQ ID NO:191, a LC-CDR2 set forth as SEQ ID NO:178 and a LC-CDR3 set forth as SEQ ID NO:193.

In one aspect, the present disclosure provides a composition comprising the antibody or antigen-binding fragment as described herein and a pharmaceutically acceptable excipient.

In one aspect, the present disclosure provides an isolated DNA sequence encoding the heavy and light chain variable regions of an antibody or antigen-binding fragment as described herein.

In one aspect, the present disclosure provides a cloning or expression vector comprising one or more DNA sequences as described herein.

In one aspect, the present disclosure refers to a host cell comprising one or more cloning or expression vectors as described herein.

In one aspect, the present disclosure refers to a process for producing the antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof as described herein comprising culturing the host cell as described herein and isolating the antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof.

In another example, the present disclosure provides a method of inhibiting alternative pathway complement activation in a mammal, the method comprising administering to a mammal subject in need thereof an amount of a composition comprising a high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof sufficient to inhibit alternative pathway complement pathway activation in the mammal. In one example of the method, the antibody, or antigen binding fragment thereof binds to MASP-3 with an affinity of less than 500 pM. In one example of the method, as a result of administering the composition comprising the antibody or antigen-binding fragment one or more of the following is present in the mammalian subject: (a) inhibition of Factor D maturation; (b) inhibition of the alternative pathway when administered to the subject at a molar ratio of from about 1:1 to about 2.5:1 (MASP-3 target to mAb); (c) the classical pathway is not inhibited; (d) inhibition of hemolysis and/or opsonization; (e) a reduction of hemolysis or the reduction of C3 cleavage and C3b surface deposition; (f) a reduction of Factor B and Bb deposition on an activating surface; (g) a reduction of resting levels (in circulation, and without the experimental addition of an activating surface) of active Factor D relative to pro-Factor D; (h) a reduction of levels of active Factor D relative to pro-Factor D in response to an activating surface; and/or (i) a reduction of the production of resting and surface-induced levels of fluid-phase Ba, Bb, C3b, or C3a. In one example of the method, the composition comprises an MASP-3 inhibitory antibody that inhibits the alternative pathway at a molar ratio of from about 1:1 to about 2.5:1 (MASP-3 target to mAb).

In another example, the present disclosure provides a method of inhibiting MASP-3-dependent complement activation in a subject suffering from paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria (PNH), age-related macular degeneration (AMD), ischemia-reperfusion injury, arthritis, disseminated intravascular coagulation, thrombotic microangiopathy, asthma, dense deposit disease, pauci-immune necrotizing crescentic glomerulonephritis, traumatic brain injury, aspiration pneumonia, endophthalmitis, neuromyelitis optica or Behcet's disease. The method includes the step of administering to the subject a composition comprising an amount of a high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory agent effective to inhibit MASP-3-dependent complement activation. In some examples, the method further comprises administering to the subject a composition comprising a MASP-2 inhibitory agent.

In another example, the present disclosure provides a method of manufacturing a medicament for use in inhibiting the effects of MASP-3-dependent complement activation in living subjects in need thereof, comprising combining a therapeutically effective amount of a MASP-3 inhibitory agent in a pharmaceutical carrier. In some examples, the MASP-3

inhibitory agent is a high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory antibody. In some examples, the method in accordance with this example of the disclosure comprises manufacturing a medicament for use in inhibiting the effects of MASP-3-dependent complement activation in a subject suffering from, or at risk for developing a disease or disorder selected from the group consisting of paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria (PNH), age-related macular degeneration (AMD), ischemia-reperfusion injury, arthritis, disseminated intravascular coagulation, thrombotic microangiopathy, asthma, dense deposit disease, pauci-immune necrotizing crescentic glomerulonephritis, traumatic brain injury, aspiration pneumonia, endophthalmitis, neuromyelitis optica or Behcet's disease. In some examples, the method further comprises combining a therapeutically effective amount of a MASP-2 inhibitory agent into or with the medicament comprising the MASP-3 inhibitor.

In one aspect, the present disclosure provides use of a composition as described herein in the manufacture of a medicament for treating an alternative pathway disease or disorder selected from the group consisting of paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria (PNH), age-related macular degeneration (AMD, including wet and dry AMD), ischemia-reperfusion injury, arthritis, disseminated intravascular coagulation, thrombotic microangiopathy (including hemolytic uremic syndrome (HUS), atypical hemolytic uremic syndrome (aHUS),thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura (TTP) or transplant-associated TMA), asthma, dense deposit disease, pauci-immune necrotizing crescentic glomerulonephritis, traumatic brain injury, aspiration pneumonia, endophthalmitis, neuromyelitis optica, Behcet's disease, multiple sclerosis, Guillain Barre Syndrome, Alzheimer's disease, amylotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS), lupus nephritis, systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE), diabetic retinopathy, uveitis, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD), C3 glomerulopathy, transplant rejection, graft-versus-host disease (GVHD), hemodialysis, sepsis, systemic inflammatory response syndrome (SIRS), acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS), ANCA vasculitis, anti-phospholipid syndrome, atherosclerosis, IgA nephropathy and myasthenia gravis, wherein the composition comprising a MASP-3 inhibitory antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof is in an amount sufficient to inhibit alternative pathway complement activation in the mammalian subject.

In another example, the present disclosure provides a pharmaceutical composition comprising a physiologically acceptable carrier and a high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory monoclonal antibody or antigen binding fragment thereof that binds to human MASP-3 and inhibits alternative pathway complement activation. In one example, said high affinity MASP-3 antibody or antigen binding fragment thereof comprises (a) a heavy chain variable region comprising (i) VHCDR1 comprising SEQ ID NO:84, (ii) VHCDR2 comprising SEQ ID NO:86 or SEQ ID NO:275 and (iii) VHCDR3 comprising SEQ ID NO:88; and (b) a light chain variable region comprising (i) VLCDR1 comprising SEQ ID NO:142, SEQ ID NO:257, SEQ ID NO:258, or SEQ ID NO:259 (ii) VLCDR2 comprising SEQ ID NO:144 and (iii) VLCDR3 comprising SEQ ID NO:161.

In another example, the present disclosure provides a method for treating a subject suffering from, or at risk for developing paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria (PNH), comprising administering to the subject a pharmaceutical composition comprising an effective amount of a high affinity monoclonal antibody or antigen binding fragment thereof that binds to human MASP-3 and inhibits alternative pathway complement activation to treat or reduce the risk of PNH in the subject. In one example antibody or antigen binding fragment thereof comprises (a) a heavy chain variable region comprising (a) a heavy chain variable region comprising (i) VHCDR1 comprising SEQ ID NO:84, (ii) VHCDR2 comprising SEQ ID NO:86 or SEQ ID NO:275 and (iii) VHCDR3 comprising SEQ ID NO:88; and (b) a light chain variable region comprising (i) VLCDR1 comprising SEQ ID NO:142, SEQ ID NO:257, SEQ ID NO:258, or SEQ ID NO:259 (ii) VLCDR2 comprising

SEQ ID NO:144 and (iii) VLCDR3 comprising SEQ ID NO:161. In some examples, the pharmaceutical composition increases the survival of red blood cells in the subject suffering from PNH. In some examples, wherein the subject suffering from or at risk for developing PNH exhibits one or more symptoms selected from the group consisting of (i) below normal levels of hemoglobin, (ii) below normal levels of platelets; (iii) above normal levels of reticulocytes, and (iv) above normal levels of bilirubin. In some examples, the pharmaceutical composition is administered systemically (e.g., subcutaneously, intra-muscularly, intravenously, intra-arterially or as an inhalant) to a subject suffering from, or at risk for developing PNH. In some examples, the subject suffering from or at risk for PNH has previously undergone, or is currently undergoing treatment with a terminal complement inhibitor that inhibits cleavage of complement protein C5. In some examples, the method further comprises administering to the subject a terminal complement inhibitor that inhibits cleavage of complement protein C5. In some examples, the terminal complement inhibitor is a humanized anti-C5 antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof. In some examples, the terminal complement inhibitor is eculizumab.

In another example, the present disclosure provides a method for treating a subject suffering from, or at risk for developing arthritis (inflammatory and non-inflammatory arthritides) comprising administering to the subject a pharmaceutical composition comprising an effective amount of a high affinity monoclonal antibody or antigen binding fragment thereof that binds to human MASP-3 and inhibits alternative pathway complement activation to treat or reduce the risk of arthritis in the subject. In one example, said antibody or antigen binding fragment thereof comprises (a) a heavy chain variable region comprising (i)VHCDR1 comprising SEQ ID NO:84, (ii) VHCDR2 comprising SEQ ID NO:86 or SEQ ID NO:275 and (iii) VHCDR3 comprising SEQ ID NO:88; and (b) a light chain variable region comprising (i) VLCDR1 comprising SEQ ID NO:142, SEQ ID NO:257, SEQ ID NO:258 or SEQ ID NO:259 (ii) VLCDR2 comprising SEQ ID NO:144 and (iii) VLCDR3 comprising SEQ ID NO:161. In some embodidments, the subject is suffering from arthritis selected fronm the group consisting of osteoarthritis, rheumatoid arthritis, juvenile rheumatoid arthritis, ankylosing spondylitis, Behcet's disease, infection-related arthritis and psoriatic arthritis. In some examples, the pharmaceutical composition is administered systemically (i.e., subcutaneously, intra-muscularly, intravenously, intra-arterially or as an

inhalant). In some examples, the pharmaceutical composition is administered locally to a joint.

As described herein, the various examples of the high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory antibodies, optionally in combination with the various examples of the MASP-2 inhibitory agents can be used in the pharmaceutical compositions of the disclosure.

As described herein, the pharmaceutical compositions of the disclosure can be used in accordance with the methods of the disclosure.

These and other aspects and examples of the herein described disclosure will be evident upon reference to the following detailed description and drawings. All of the U.S. patents, U.S. patent application publications, U.S. patent applications, foreign patents, foreign patent applications and non-patent publications referred to in this specification are incorporated herein by reference in their entirety, as if each was incorporated individually.

DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

The foregoing aspects and many of the attendant advantages of this invention will become more readily appreciated as the same become better understood by reference to the following detailed description, when taken in conjunction with the accompanying drawings, wherein:

FIGURE 1 illustrates a new understanding of the lectin and alternative pathways;

FIGURE 2 is a schematic diagram adapted from Schwaeble et al., *Immunobiol* 205:455-466 (2002), as modified by Yongqing et al., *BBA* 1824:253 (2012), illustrating the MASP-1, MASP-3 and MAp44 protein domains and the exons encoding the same;

FIGURE 3 depicts the human MASP-3 amino acid sequence (SEQ ID NO:2) with the leader sequence shown in underline;

FIGURE 4 shows an alignment of full length MASP-3 protein from multiple species;

FIGURE 5 shows an alignment of the SP domain of MASP-3 protein from multiple species;

FIGURE 6 is a Kaplan-Meyer plot graphically illustrating the percent survival of MASP-2 KO and WT mice after administration of an infective dose of 2.6 x 10^7 cfu of *N. meningitidis* serogroup A Z2491, demonstrating that MASP-2 deficient mice are protected from *N. meningitidis* induced mortality, as described in Example 1;

FIGURE 7 is a Kaplan-Meyer plot graphically illustrating the percent survival of MASP-2 KO and WT mice after administration of an infective dose of 6 x 10^6 cfu of *N.*

meningitidis serogroup B strain MC58, demonstrating that MASP-2 deficient mice are protected from *N. meningitidis* induced mortality, as described in Example 1;

FIGURE 8 graphically illustrates the log cfu/mL of *N. meningitidis* serogroup B strain MC58 per mL of blood recovered from MASP-2 KO and WT mice at different time points after i.p. infection with $6x10^6$ cfu of *N. meningitidis* serogroup B strain MC58 (n=3 at different time points for both groups of mice), demonstrating that although the MASP-2 KO mice were infected with the same dose of *N. meningitidis* serogroup B strain MC58 as the WT mice, the MASP-2 KO mice have enhanced clearance of bacteremia as compared to WT, as described in Example 1;

FIGURE 9 graphically illustrates the average illness score of MASP-2 KO and WT mice at 3, 6, 12 and 24 hours after infection with $6x10^6$ cfu of *N. meningitidis* serogroup B strain MC58, demonstrating that the MASP-2-deficient mice showed much lower illness scores at 6 hours, 12 hours, and 24 hours after infection, as compared to WT mice, as described in Example 1;

FIGURE 10 is a Kaplan-Meyer plot graphically illustrating the percent survival of mice after administration of an infective dose of $4x10^6$ cfu of *N. meningitidis* serogroup B strain MC58, followed by administration 3 hours post-infection of either inhibitory MASP-2 antibody (1 mg/kg) or control isotype antibody, demonstrating that MASP-2 antibody is effective to treat and improve survival in subjects infected with N. *meningitidis,* as described in Example 2;

FIGURE 11 graphically illustrates the log cfu/mL of viable counts of *N. meningitidis* serogroup B strain MC58 recovered at different time points in the human sera samples shown in TABLE 6 taken at various time points after incubation with *N. meningitidis* serogroup B strain MC58, as described in Example 3;

FIGURE 12 graphically illustrates the log cfu/mL of viable counts of *N. meningitidis* serogroup B-MC58 recovered at different time points in the human sera samples shown in TABLE 8, showing that complement-dependent killing of *N. meningitidis* in human 20% (v/v) serum is MASP-3 and MBL-dependent, as described in Example 3;

FIGURE 13 graphically illustrates the log cfu/mL of viable counts of *N. meningitidis* serogroup B-MC58 recovered at different time points in the mouse sera samples shown in TABLE 10, showing that the MASP-2 -/- knockout mouse (referred to as "MASP-2 -/-") serum has a higher level of bactericidal activity for N. meningitidis than WT mouse serum,

whereas in contrast, the MASP-1/3 -/- mouse serum does not have any bactericidal activity, as described in Example 3;

FIGURE 14 graphically illustrates the kinetics of C3 activation under lectin pathway-specific conditions (1% plasma) in WT, C4-/-, MASP-1/3-/-, Factor B-/- and MASP-2-/- mouse sera, as described in Example 4;

FIGURE 15 graphically illustrates the level of alternative pathway-driven (AP-driven) C3b deposition on zymosan-coated microtiter plates under "traditional" alternative pathway-specific (AP-specific) conditions (*i.e.* BBS/EGTA/Mg^{++} without Ca^{++}) as a function of serum concentration in serum samples obtained from MASP-3-deficient, C4-deficient and MBL-deficient human subjects, as described in Example 4;

FIGURE 16 graphically illustrates the level of AP-driven C3b deposition on zymosan-coated microtiter plates under "traditional" AP-specific conditions (*i.e.*, BBS/EGTA/Mg^{++} without Ca^{++}) as a function of time in 10% human serum samples obtained from MASP-3-deficient, C4-deficient and MBL-deficient human subjects, as described in Example 4;

FIGURE 17A graphically illustrates the level of C3b deposition on mannan-coated microtiter plates as a function of serum concentration in serum samples obtained from WT, MASP-2-deficient, and MASP-1/3-deficient mice under "traditional" AP-specific conditions (*i.e.* BBS/EGTA/Mg^{++} without Ca^{++}) or under physiological conditions allowing both the lectin pathway and the alternative pathway (AP) to function (BBS/Mg^{++}/Ca^{++}), as described in Example 4;

FIGURE 17B graphically illustrates the level of C3b deposition on zymosan-coated microtiter plates as a function of serum concentration in serum samples obtained from WT, MASP-2-deficient, and MASP-1/3-deficient mice under traditional AP-specific conditions (*i.e.* BBS/EGTA/Mg^{++} without Ca^{++}) or under physiological conditions allowing both the lectin pathway and the alternative pathway to function (BBS/Mg^{++}/Ca^{++}), as described in Example 4;

FIGURE 17C graphically illustrates the level of C3b deposition on *S. pneumoniae* D39-coated microtiter plates as a function of serum concentration in serum samples obtained from WT, MASP-2-deficient, and MASP-1/3-deficient mice under traditional AP-specific conditions (*i.e.* BBS/EGTA/Mg^{++} without Ca^{++}) or under physiological conditions allowing both the lectin pathway and the alternative pathway to function (BBS/Mg^{++}/Ca^{++}), as described in Example 4;

FIGURE 18A graphically illustrates the results of a C3b deposition assay in highly diluted sera carried out on mannan-coated microtiter plates under traditional AP-specific conditions (*i.e.* BBS/EGTA/Mg^{++} without Ca^{++}) or under physiological conditions allowing both the lectin pathway and the alternative pathway to function (BBS/Mg^{++}/Ca^{++}), using serum concentrations ranging from 0 % up to 1.25%, as described in Example 4;

FIGURE 18B graphically illustrates the results of a C3b deposition assay carried out on zymosan-coated microtiter plates under traditional AP-specific conditions (*i.e.* BBS/EGTA/Mg^{++} without Ca^{++}) or under physiological conditions allowing both the lectin pathway and the alternative pathway to function (BBS/Mg^{++}/Ca^{++}), using serum concentrations ranging from 0 % up to 1.25%, as described in Example 4;

FIGURE 18C graphically illustrates the results of a C3b deposition assay carried out on *S. pneumoniae* D39-coated microtiter plates under traditional AP-specific conditions (*i.e.* BBS/EGTA/Mg^{++} without Ca^{++}) or under physiological conditions allowing both the lectin pathway and the alternative pathway to function (BBS/Mg^{++}/Ca^{++}), using serum concentrations ranging from 0 % up to 1.25%, as described in Example 4;

FIGURE 19 graphically illustrates the level of hemolysis (as measured by hemoglobin release of lysed mouse erythrocytes (Crry/C3-/-) into the supernatant measured by photometry) of mannan-coated murine erythrocytes by human serum under physiological conditions (*i.e.*, in the presence of Ca^{++}) over a range of serum dilutions in serum from MASP-3-/-, heat inactivated normal human serum (HI NHS), MBL-/-, NHS + MASP-2 monoclonal antibody and NHS control, as described in Example 5;

FIGURE 20 graphically illustrates the level of hemolysis (as measured by hemoglobin release of lysed mouse erythrocytes (Crry/C3-/-) into the supernatant measured by photometry) of mannan-coated murine erythrocytes by human serum under physiological conditions (*i.e.,* in the presence of Ca^{++}) over a range of serum concentration in serum from MASP-3-/-, heat inactivated (HI) NHS, MBL-/-, NHS + MASP-2 monoclonal antibody and NHS control, as described in Example 5;

FIGURE 21 graphically illustrates the level of hemolysis (as measured by hemoglobin release of lysed WT mouse erythrocytes into the supernatant measured by photometry) of non-coated murine erythrocytes by human serum under physiological conditions (*i.e.,* in the presence of Ca^{++}) over a range of serum concentrations in serum from 3MC (MASP-3-/-), heat inactivated (HI) NHS, MBL-/-, NHS + MASP-2 monoclonal antibody and NHS control, as described in Example 5;

FIGURE 22 graphically illustrates hemolysis (as measured by hemoglobin release of lysed mouse erythrocytes (CD55/59-/-) into the supernatant measured by photometry) of non-coated murine erythrocytes by human serum under physiological conditions (*i.e.*, in the presence of Ca^{++}) over a range of serum concentrations in serum from heat inactivated (HI) NHS, MBL-/-, NHS + MASP-2 monoclonal antibody and NHS control, as described in Example 5;

FIGURE 23 graphically illustrates hemolysis (as measured by hemoglobin release of lysed rabbit erythrocytes into the supernatant measured by photometry) of mannan-coated rabbit erythrocytes by MASP-1/3-/- mouse serum and WT control mouse serum under physiological conditions (*i.e.*, in the presence of Ca^{++}) over a range of serum concentrations, as described in Example 6;

FIGURE 24A is a FACS histogram of MASP-3 antigen/antibody binding for clone M3J5, as described in Example 7;

FIGURE 24B is a FACS histogram of MASP-3 antigen/antibody binding for clone M3M1, as described in Example 7;

FIGURE 25 graphically illustrates a saturation binding curve of clone M3J5 (Clone 5) for the MASP-3 antigen, as described in Example 7;

FIGURE 26A is an amino acid sequence alignment of the VH regions of M3J5, M3M1, D14 and 1E10 to the chicken DT40 VH sequence, wherein dots represent amino acid identity with the DT40 sequence and dashes indicate spaces introduced to maximize the alignment, as described in Example 7;

FIGURE 26B is an amino acid sequence alignment of the VL regions of M3J5, M3M1, D14 and 1E10 to the chicken DT40 VL sequence, wherein dots represent amino acid identity with the DT40 sequence and dashes indicate spaces introduced to maximize the alignment, as described in Example 7;

FIGURE 27 is a bar graph showing the inhibitory activity of the monoclonal antibody (mAb) 1E10 in the Wieslab Complement System Screen, MBL Pathway in comparison to the positive serum provided with the assay kit, as well as an isotype control antibody, demonstrating that mAb1E10 partial inhibits LEA-2-dependent activation, (via inhibition of MASP-1-dependent activation of MASP-2), whereas the isotype control antibody does not, as described in Example 7;

FIGURE 28A provides the results of flow cytometry analysis for C3b deposition on heat-killed *Staphylococcus aureus*, demonstrating that in normal human serum in the presence of EDTA, which is known to inactivate the lectin and alternative pathways, no C3b

deposition was observed (panel 1), in normal human serum treated with Mg^{++}/EGTA, alternative pathway-driven C3b deposition is observed (panel 2), and as shown in panel 3, 4 and 5, in factor B-depleted, factor D-depleted and properdin (factor P)-depleted serum, respectively, no alternative pathway driven C3b deposition is observed, as described in Example 8;

FIGURE 28B provides the results of flow cytometry analysis for C3b deposition on heat-killed *S. aureus*, demonstrating that, as in EDTA-treated normal serum (panel 1), AP-driven C3b deposition is absent in 3MC serum in the presence of Mg^{++}/EGTA (panel 3), whereas panels 4 and 5 show that active full length rMASP-3 (panel 4) and active rMASP-3 (CCP1-CCP2-SP) (panel 5) both restore AP-driven C3b deposition in 3MC serum to levels observed in normal serum treated with Mg^{++}/EGTA (panel 2), neither inactive rMASP-3 (S679A) (panel 6) nor wild type rMASP-1 (panel 7) can restore AP-driven C3b deposition in 3MC serum, as described in Example 8;

FIGURE 29 shows the results of a Western blot analysis to determine factor B cleavage in response to *S. aureus* in 3MC serum in the presence or absence of rMASP-3, demonstrating that the normal human serum in the presence of EDTA (negative control, lane 1) demonstrates very little Factor B cleavage relative to normal human serum in the presence of Mg^{++}/EGTA, shown in lane 2 (positive control), as further shown in lane 3, 3MC serum demonstrates very little Factor B cleavage in the presence of Mg^{++}/EGTA. However, as shown in lane 4, Factor B cleavage is restored by the addition and pre-incubation of full-length, recombinant MASP-3 protein to the 3MC serum, as described in Example 8;

FIGURE 30 shows Comassie staining of a protein gel in which Factor B cleavage is analyzed, demonstrating that Factor B cleavage is most optimal in the presence of C3, MASP-3 and pro-factor D (lane 1), and as shown in lanes 4 and 5, either MASP-3 or pro-factor D alone are able to mediate Factor B cleavage, as long as C3 is present, as described in Example 8;

FIGURE 31 graphically illustrates the mean fluorescent intensities (MFI) of C3b staining of *S. aureus* obtained from mAbD14 (which binds MASP-3), mAb1A5 (negative control antibody) and an isotype control antibody plotted as a function of mAb concentration in 3MC serum in the presence of rMASP-3, demonstrating that mAbD14 inhibits MASP-3-dependent C3b deposition in a concentration-dependent manner, as described in Example 8;

FIGURE 32 shows Western blot analysis of pro-factor D substrate cleavage, wherein compared to pro-factor D alone (lane 1) or the inactive full length recombinant MASP-3 (S679A; lane 3) or MASP-1 (S646A; lane 4), full length wild type recombinant MASP-3

(lane2) and MASP-1 (lane 5) either completely or partially cleave pro-factor D to generate mature factor D, as described in Example 9;

FIGURE 33 is a Western blot showing the inhibitory activity of the MASP-3 binding mAbs D14 (lane 2) and M3M1 (lane 3) on MASP-3-dependent pro-factor D cleavage in comparison to a control reaction containing only MASP-3 and pro-factor D (no mAb, lane 1), as well as a control reaction containing a mAb obtained from the DTLacO library that binds MASP-1, but not MASP-3 (lane 4), as described in Example 9;

FIGURE 34 graphically illustrates the level of AP-driven C3b deposition on zymosan-coated microtiter plates as a function of serum concentration in serum samples obtained from MASP-3-deficient (3MC), C4-deficient and MBL-deficient subjects, demonstrating that MASP-3-deficient sera from Patient 2 and Patient 3 have residual AP activity at high serum concentrations (25%, 12.5%, 6.25% serum concentrations), but a significantly higher AP_{50} (i.e., 8.2% and 12.3% of serum needed to achieve 50% of maximum C3 deposition), as described in Example 10;

FIGURE 35A graphically illustrates the level of AP-driven C3b deposition on zymosan-coated microtiter plates under "traditional" AP-specific conditions (i.e., BBS/EGTA/Mg^{++} without Ca^{++}) as a function of time in 10% human serum samples obtained from MASP-3 deficient, C4-deficient and MBL-deficient human subjects, as described in Example 10;

FIGURE 35B shows a western blot with plasma obtained from 3MC patient #2 (MASP-3 (-/-), MASP-1 (+/+)), 3MC patient #3 (MASP-3 (-/-), MASP-1 (-/-)), and sera from normal donors (W), wherein human pro-factor D (25,040 Da) and/or mature factor D (24,405 Da) was detected with a human factor D-specific antibody, as described in Example 10;

FIGURE 35C graphically illustrates the results of the Weislab classical, lectin and alternative pathway assays with plasma obtained from 3MC patient #2, 3MC patient #3, and normal human serum, as described in Example 10;

FIGURE 36 graphically illustrates the percent hemolysis (as measured by hemoglobin release of lysed rabbit erythrocytes into the supernatant measured by photometry) of mannan-coated rabbit erythrocytes over a range of serum concentrations in serum from two normal human subjects (NHS) and from two 3MC patients (Patient 2 and Patient 3), measured in the absence of Ca^{++}, demonstrating that MASP-3 deficiency reduces the percentage of complement-mediated lysis of mannan-coated erythrocytes as compared to normal human serum, as described in Example 10;

FIGURE 37 graphically illustrates the level of AP-driven C3b deposition on zymosan-coated microtiter plates as a function of the concentration of recombinant full length MASP-3 protein added to serum samples obtained from human 3MC Patient 2 (MASP-3$^{-/-}$), demonstrating that, compared to the negative control inactive recombinant MASP-3 (MASP-3A; S679A), active recombinant MASP-3 protein reconstitutes AP-driven C3b deposition on zymosan-coated plates in a concentration-dependent manner, as described in Example 10;

FIGURE 38 graphically illustrates the percent hemolysis (as measured by hemoglobin release of lysed rabbit erythrocytes into the supernatant measured by photometry) of mannan-coated rabbit erythrocytes over a range of serum concentrations in (1) normal human serum (NHS); (2) 3MC patient serum; (3) 3MC patient serum plus active full length recombinant MASP-3 (20 μg/ml); and (4) heat-inactivated human serum (HIS), measured in the absence of Ca^{++}, demonstrating that the percent lysis of rabbit erythrocytes is significantly increased in 3MC serum containing rMASP-3 as compared to the percent lysis in 3MC serum without recombinant MASP-3 ($p=0.0006$), as described in Example 10;

FIGURE 39 graphically illustrates the percentage of rabbit erythrocyte lysis in 7% human serum from 3MC Patient 2 and from 3MC Patient 3 containing active recombinant MASP-3 at a concentration range of 0 to 110 μg/ml (in BBS/ Mg^{++}/EGTA, demonstrating that the percentage of rabbit erythrocyte lysis increases with the amount of recombinant MASP-3 in a concentration-dependent manner, as described in Example 10;

FIGURE 40 graphically illustrates the level of LEA-2-driven C3b deposition on Mannan-coated ELISA plates as a function of the concentration of human serum diluted in BBS buffer, for serum from a normal human subject (NHS), from two 3MC patients (Patient 2 and Patient 3), from the parents of Patient 3 and from a MBL-deficient subject, as described in Example 10;

FIGURE 41 graphically illustrates a representative example of a binding experiment that was performed with human MASP-3 in which the M3-1 Fab (also referred to as 13B1) shows an apparent binding affinity (EC_{50}) of about 0.117 nM to the human protein, as described in Example 11;

FIGURE 42 graphically illustrates a representative example of a binding experiment that was performed with mouse MASP-3 in which the M3-1 Fab (also referred to as 13B1) shows an apparent binding affinity (EC_{50}) of about 0.214 nM to the mouse protein, as described in Example 11;

FIGURE 43 graphically illustrates the level of complement factor Bb deposition on zymosan particles (determined by cytometric detection measured in MFI units) in the

presence of varying concentrations of mAb M3-1 (also referred to as 13B1) in CFD-depleted human serum, as described in Example 11;

FIGURE 44 graphically illustrates the level of C3 deposition on zymosan particles at various time points after a single dose of mAb M3-1 (13B1) (10 mg/kg i.v.) in wild-type mice, as described in Example 11;

FIGURE 45 graphically illustrates the percent survival of donor RBCs (WT or Crry-) over a period of 14 days in wild-type recipient mice treated with mAb M3-1 (13B1) (10 mg/kg on days -11, 04, -1 and +6), mAb BB5.1 treated, or vehicle treated mice, as described in Example 12;

FIGURE 46 graphically illustrates the percent survival of donor RBCs (WT or Crry-) over a period of 16 days in wild-type recipient mice treated with a single dose of mAb M3-1 (13B1) (20 mg/kg on day -6) or vehicle treated mice, as described in Example 12;

FIGURE 47 graphically illustrates the clinical scores of the mice treated with mAb M3-1 (13B1) (5 mg/kg or 20 mg/kg) or vehicle treated mice over a 14 day time course in a collagen-antibody induced arthritis model, as described in Example 13;

FIGURE 48 graphically illustrates the percent incidence of arthritis of the mice treated with mAb M3-1 (13B1) (5 mg/kg or 20 mg/kg) or vehicle treated mice over a 14 day time course in a collagen-antibody induced arthritis model, as described in Example 13;

FIGURE 49A shows the amino acid sequences of the VH regions of high affinity ($\leq$500 pM) anti-human MASP-3 inhibitory mAbs, as described in Example 15;

FIGURE 49B shows the amino acid sequences of the VL regions of high affinity ($\leq$500 pM) anti-human MASP-3 inhibitory mAbs, as described in Example 15;

FIGURE 50A is a dendrogram of the VH regions of high affinity anti-human MASP-3 inhibitory mAbs, as described in Example 15;

FIGURE 50B is a dendrogram of the VL regions of high affinity anti-human MASP-3 inhibitory mAbs, as described in Example 15;

FIGURE 51A graphically illustrates the results of a binding experiment in which representative purified recombinant anti-human MASP-3 inhibitory antibodies show an apparent binding avidity of less than 500 pM (e.g., from 240 pM to 23 pM) to the human MASP-3 protein, as described in Example 16;

FIGURE 51B graphically illustrates the results of a binding experiment in which representative purified recombinant anti-human MASP-3 inhibitory antibodies show an apparent binding avidity of less than 500 pM (e.g., from 91 pM to 58 pM) to the human MASP-3 protein, as described in Example 16;

FIGURE 51C graphically illustrates the results of a binding experiment in which representative purified recombinant high affinity anti-human MASP-3 inhibitory antibodies are shown to be selective for binding to MASP-3 and do not bind to human MASP-1, as described in Example 16;

FIGURE 51D graphically illustrates the results of a binding experiment in which representative purified recombinant high affinity anti-human MASP-3 inhibitory antibodies are shown to be selective for binding to MASP-3 and do not bind to human MASP-2, as described in Example 16;

FIGURE 52 graphically illustrates the results of a binding experiment in which representative purified recombinant anti-human MASP-3 inhibitory antibodies also show high binding avidity to the mouse MASP-3 protein, as described in Example 16;

FIGURE 53 graphically illustrates the results of an experiment measuring the ability of representative high affinity MASP-3 antibodies to inhibit fluorogenic tripeptide cleavage, as described in Example 16;

FIGURE 54 shows a Western blot demonstrating the ability of representative high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory mAbs to block recombinant MASP-3-mediated cleavage of pro-factor D to factor D in an *in vitro* assay, as described in Example 16;

FIGURE 55A graphically illustrates the level of complement factor Bb deposition on zymosan particles (determined by flow cytometric detection measured in MFI units) in the presence of varying concentrations of high affinity MASP-3 mAbs 1F3, 1G4, 2D7 and 4B6 in factor D-depleted human serum, as described in Example 16;

FIGURE 55B graphically illustrates the level of complement factor Bb deposition on zymosan particles (determined by flow cytometric detection measured in MFI units) in the presence of varying concentrations of high affinity MASP-3 mAbs 4D5, 10D12 and 13B1 in factor D-depleted human serum, as described in Example 16;

FIGURE 56A graphically illustrates the level of inhibition of rabbit erythrocyte lysis in the presence of varying concentrations of high affinity MASP-3 mAbs 1A10, 1F3, 4B6, 4D5and 2F2 as described in Example 16;

FIGURE 56B graphically illustrates the level of inhibition of rabbit erythrocyte lysis in the presence of varying concentrations of high affinity MASP-3 mAbs 1B11, 1E7, 1G4, 2D7 and 2F5 as described in Example 16;

FIGURE 57 shows a Western blot analyzing the level of pro-Factor D) and Factor D in 3MC patient serum (Patient B) in the presence of active recombinant MASP-3 (rMASP-3),

inactive rMASP-3, and active rMASP-3 plus high affinity MASP-3 mAb 4D5, as described in Example 16;

FIGURE 58 graphically illustrates the level of C3/C3b/iC3b deposition on zymosan particles at various time points after a single dose of high affinity MASP-3 mAbs M3-1 (13B1, 10 mg/kg) or 10D12 (10 mg/kg) in wild-type mice, as described in Example 17;

FIGURE 59 shows a Western blot analyzing the status of the Factor Ba fragment of Factor B in mice treated with high affinity MASP-3 mAb 10D12 (10mg/kg) or vehicle control treated mice, as described in Example 17;

FIGURE 60 graphically illustrates the level of inhibition of hemolysis by 20% serum from mice treated with high affinity MASP-3 mAb 10D12 (10 mg/kg or 25 mg/kg), as described in Example 17;

FIGURE 61A graphically illustrates the results of competition binding analysis to identify high affinity MASP-3 mAbs that block the interaction between high affinity MASP-3 mAb 4D5 and human MASP-3, as described in Example 18;

FIGURE 61B graphically illustrates the results of competition binding analysis to identify high affinity MASP-3 mAbs that block the interaction between high affinity MASP-3 mAb 10D12 and human MASP-3, as described in Example 18;

FIGURE 61C graphically illustrates the results of competition binding analysis to identify high affinity MASP-3 mAbs that block the interaction between high affinity MASP-3 mAb 13B1 and human MASP-3, as described in Example 18;

FIGURE 61D graphically illustrates the results of competition binding analysis to identify high affinity MASP-3 mAbs that block the interaction between high affinity MASP-3 mAb 1F3 and human MASP-3, as described in Example 18;

FIGURE 61E graphically illustrates the results of competition binding analysis to identify high affinity MASP-3 mAbs that block the interaction between high affinity MASP-3 mAb 1G4 and human MASP-3, as described in Example 18;

FIGURE 62 provides a schematic diagram showing the regions of contact on human MASP-3 by the high affinity MASP-3 mAbs, as determined by Pepscan analysis, as described in Example 18;

FIGURE 63A shows the regions of contact between human MASP-3 and high affinity MASP-3 mAbs 1F3, 4D5 and 1A10, including amino acid residues 498-509 (SEQ ID NO:9), amino acid residues 544-558 (SEQ ID NO:11), amino acid residues 639 to 649 (SEQ ID NO:13) and amino acid residues 704 to 713 (SEQ ID NO:14) of MASP-3, as described in Example 18;

FIGURE 63B shows the regions of contact between human MASP-3 and high affinity MASP-3 mAb 10D12, including amino acid residues 498 to 509 (SEQ ID NO:9) of MASP-3, as described in Example 18;

FIGURE 64 shows the regions of contact between human MASP-3 and high affinity MASP-3 mAb 13B1, including amino acid residues 494 to 508 (SEQ ID NO:10) and amino acid residues 626 to 638 (SEQ ID NO: 12) of MASP-3, as described in Example 18;

FIGURE 65 shows the regions of contact between human MASP-3 and high affinity MASP-3 mAb 1B11, including amino acid residues 435 to 447 (SEQ ID NO:16), amino acid residues 454 to 464 (SEQ ID NO:17), amino acid residues 583 to 589 (SEQ ID NO:21) and amino acid residues 614 to 623 (SEQ ID NO:22) of MASP-3, as described in Example 18;

FIGURE 66 shows the regions of contact between human MASP-3 and high affinity MASP-3 mAbs 1E7, 1G4 and 2D7, including amino acid residues 454 to 464 (SEQ ID NO:17), amino acid residues 514 to 523 (SEQ ID NO:19) and amino acid residues 667 to 678 (SEQ ID NO:23) of MASP-3, as described in Example 18;

FIGURE 67 shows the regions of contact between human MASP-3 and high affinity MASP-3 mAbs 15D9 and 2F5, including amino acid residues 454 to 464 (SEQ ID NO:17), amino acid residues 479 to 493 (SEQ ID NO:18), amino acid residues 562 to 571 (SEQ ID NO:20), and amino acid residues 667 to 678 (SEQ ID NO:23) of MASP-3, as described in Example 18;

FIGURE 68 graphically illustrates the results of the Experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis (EAE) model in mice treated with either high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory mAb 13B1 (10 mg/kg), Factor B mAb 1379 (30 mg/kg) or isotype control mAb (10 mg/kg), as described in Example 20;

FIGURE 69 graphically illustrates APC activity, as determined by the average MFI in a flow cytometric assay detecting complement factor Bb on the surface of zymosan particles, in serum samples obtained from a group of three cynomolgus monkeys over time after treatment with high affinity MASP-3 mAb h13B1X, either in the presence or absence of anti-factor D antibody spiked into the serum sample, as described in Example 21;

FIGURE 70 graphically illustrates APC activity, as determined by Bb deposition on zymosan, in serum samples obtained from groups of cynomolgus monkeys (3 animals per group) treated with a single 5 mg/kg intravenous dose of high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory mAbs h4D5X, h10D12X or h13B1X, as described in Example 21;

FIGURE 71A graphically illustrates APC activity, as determined by fluid-phase Ba in serum samples obtained from groups of cynomolgus monkeys (3 animals per group) over

time after treatment with a single 5 mg/kg intravenous dose of mAbs h4D5X, h10D12X, and h13B1X, as described in Example 21;

FIGURE 71B graphically illustrates APC activity, as determined by fluid-phase Bb in serum samples obtained from groups of cynomolgus monkeys (3 animals per group) over time after treatment with a single 5 mg/kg intravenous dose of mAbs h4D5X, h10D12X, and h13B1X, as described in Example 21;

FIGURE 71C graphically illustrates APC activity, as determined by fluid-phase C3a in serum samples obtained from groups of cynomolgus monkeys (3 animals per group) over time after treatment with a single 5 mg/kg intravenous dose of mAbs h4D5X, h10D12X, and h13B1X, as described in Example 21;

FIGURE 72A graphically illustrates the molar ratio of target (MASP-3) to the high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory antibody h4D5X at the timepoints of complete APC inhibition, as measured by fluid-phase Ba, as described in Example 21;

FIGURE 72B graphically illustrates the molar ratio of target (MASP-3) to the high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory antibody h10D12X at the timepoints of complete APC inhibition, as measured by fluid-phase Ba, as described in Example 21;

FIGURE 72C graphically illustrates the molar ratio of target (MASP-3) to the high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory antibody h13B1X at the timepoints of complete APC inhibition, as measured by fluid-phase Ba, as described in Example 21; and

FIGURE 73 shows a Western blot analyzing the level of pro-Factor D and Factor D in serum from a cynomolgus monkey over time (hours) after treatment with a single 5 mg/kg intravenous dose of mAb h13B1X, as described in Example 21.

DESCRIPTION OF SEQUENCE LISTING

SEQ ID NO:1 human MASP-3 cDNA

SEQ ID NO:2 human MASP-3 protein (with leader)

SEQ ID NO:3 mouse MASP-3 protein (with leader)

SEQ ID NO:4 rat MASP-3 protein

SEQ ID NO:5 chicken MASP-3 protein

SEQ ID NO:6 rabbit MASP-3 protein

SEQ ID NO:7 Cynomolgus monkey MASP-3 protein

SEQ ID NO:8 human MASP-1 protein (with leader)

Human MASP-3 SP domain peptide fragments:

SEQ ID NO:9 (aa 498-509 of human MASP-3 w/leader)

SEQ ID NO:10 (aa 494-508 of human MASP-3 w/leader)

SEQ ID NO:11 (aa 544-558 of human MASP-3 w/leader)

SEQ ID NO:12 (aa 626-638 of human MASP-3 w/leader)

SEQ ID NO:13 (aa 639-649 of human MASP-3 w/leader)

SEQ ID NO:14 (aa 704-713 of human MASP-3 w/leader)

SEQ ID NO:15 (aa 498-508 of human MASP-3 w/leader)

SEQ ID NO:16 (aa 435-447 of human MASP-3 w/leader)

SEQ ID NO:17 (aa 454-464 of human MASP-3 w/leader)

SEQ ID NO:18 (aa 479-493 of human MASP-3 w/leader)

SEQ ID NO:19 (aa 514-523 of human MASP-3 w/leader)

SEQ ID NO:20 (aa 562-571 of human MASP-3 w/leader)

SEQ ID NO:21 (aa 583-589 of human MASP-3 w/leader)

SEQ ID NO:22 (aa 614-623 of human MASP-3 w/leader)

SEQ ID NO:23 (aa 667-678 of human MASP-3 w/leader)

SEQ ID NO:24-39: Heavy chain variable regions- mouse parental

SEQ ID NO:24 4D5_VH

SEQ ID NO:25 1F3_VH

SEQ ID NO:26 4B6_VH

SEQ ID NO:27 1A10_VH

SEQ ID NO:28 10D12_VH

SEQ ID NO:29 35C1_VH

SEQ ID NO:30 13B1_VH

SEQ ID NO:31 1G4_VH

SEQ ID NO:32 1E7_VH

SEQ ID NO:33 2D7_VH

SEQ ID NO:34 49C11_VH

SEQ ID NO:35 15D9_VH

SEQ ID NO:36 2F5_VH

SEQ ID NO:37 1B11_VH

SEQ ID NO:38 2F2_VH

SEQ ID NO:39 11B6_VH

SEQ ID NO:40-54: Light chain variable regions- mouse parental

SEQ ID NO:40 4D5_VL

SEQ ID NO:41 1F3_VL

SEQ ID NO:42 4B6/1A10_VL

SEQ ID NO:43 10D12_VL

SEQ ID NO:44 35C1_VL

SEQ ID NO:45 13B1_VL

SEQ ID NO:46 1G4_VL

SEQ ID NO:47 1E7_VL

SEQ ID NO:48 2D7_VL

SEQ ID NO:49 49C11_VL

SEQ ID NO:50 15D9_VL

SEQ ID NO:51 2F5_VL

SEQ ID NO:52 1B11_VL

SEQ ID NO:53 2F2_VL

SEQ ID NO:54 11B6_VL

SEQ ID NO:55-140: heavy chain framework regions (FR) and complementarity-determining regions (CDRs) from mouse parental MASP-3 mAbs

SEQ ID NO:141-208: light chain FR and CDRs from mouse parental MASP-3 mAbs

SEQ ID NO:209-216: CDR consensus sequences

SEQ ID NO:217-232: DNA encoding heavy chain variable regions (mouse parental)

SEQ ID NO:233-247: DNA encoding light chain variable regions (mouse parental)

SEQ ID NO:248: humanized 4D5_VH-14 (h4D5_VH-14) heavy chain variable region

SEQ ID NO:249: humanized 4D5_VH-19 (h4D5_VH-19) heavy chain variable region

SEQ ID NO:250: humanized 4D5_VL-1 (h4D5_VL-1) light chain variable region

SEQ ID NO:251: humanized 10D12_VH-45 (h10D12_VH-45) heavy chain variable region

SEQ ID NO:252: humanized 10D12_VH-49 (h10D12_VH-49) heavy chain variable region

SEQ ID NO:253: humanized 10D12_VL-21 (h10D12-VL-21) light chain variable region

SEQ ID NO:254: humanized 13B1_VH-9 (h13B1-VH-9) heavy chain variable region

SEQ ID NO:255: humanized 13B1_VH-10 (h13B1-VH-10) heavy chain variable region

SEQ ID NO:256: humanized 13B1-VL-1 (h13B1-VL-1) light chain variable region

SEQ ID NO:257: 4D5 and 13B1 LC-CDR1-NQ

SEQ ID NO:258: 4D5 and 13B1 LC-CDR1-NA

SEQ ID NO:259: 4D5 and 13B1 LC-CDR1-ST

SEQ ID NO:260: consensus LC-CDR1 for 4D5, 13B1 parental and variants

SEQ ID NO:261: 10D12 LC-CDR1-DE

SEQ ID NO:262: 10D12 LC-CDR1-DA

SEQ ID NO:263: 10D12 LC-CDR1-GA

SEQ ID NO:264-277: HC FR and CDRs for humanized 4D5, 10D12 and 13B1

SEQ ID NO:278: h4D5_VL-1-NA

SEQ ID NO:279: h10D12_VL-21-GA

SEQ ID NO:280: h13B1_VL-1-NA

SEQ ID NO:281-287 LC FR and CDRs for humanized 4D5, 10D12 and 13B1

SEQ ID NO:288-293: DNA encoding humanized 4D5, 10D12, 13B1 heavy chain variable region and variants

SEQ ID NO:294-299: DNA encoding humanized 4D5, 10D12, 13B1 light chain variable region and variants

SEQ ID NO:300: parent DTLacO heavy chain variable region (VH) polypeptide

SEQ ID NO:301: MASP-3 specific clone M3J5 heavy chain variable region (VH) polypeptide

SEQ ID NO:302: MASP-3 specific clone M3M1 heavy chain variable region (VH) polypeptide

SEQ ID NO:303: parent DTLacO light chain variable region (VL) polypeptide

SEQ ID NO:304: MASP-3 specific clone M3J5 light chain variable region (VL) polypeptide

SEQ ID NO:305: MASP-3 specific clone M3M1 light chain variable region (VL) polypeptide

SEQ ID NO:306: MASP-3 clone D14 heavy chain variable region (VH) polypeptide

SEQ ID NO:307: MASP-3 clone D14 light chain variable region (VL) polypeptide

SEQ ID NO:308: MASP-1 clone 1E10 heavy chain variable region (VH) polypeptide

SEQ ID NO:309: MASP-1 clone 1E10 light chain variable region (VL) polypeptide

SEQ ID NO:310: human IgG4 constant region

SEQ ID NO:311: human IgG4 constant region with S228P mutation

SEQ ID NO:312: human IgG4 constant region with S228P mutation_X

SEQ ID NO:313: human IgK constant region

DETAILED DESCRIPTION

I. DEFINITIONS

Unless specifically defined herein, all terms used herein have the same meaning as would be understood by those of ordinary skill in the art of the present invention. The following definitions are provided in order to provide clarity with respect to the terms as they are used in the specification and claims to describe the present invention.

As used herein, the lectin pathway effector arm 1 ("LEA-1") refers to lectin-dependent activation of factor B and factor D by MASP-3.

As used herein, the lectin pathway effector arm 2 ("LEA-2") refers to MASP-2-dependent complement activation.

As used herein, the term "MASP-3-dependent complement activation" comprises two components: (i) lectin MASP-3-dependent activation of factor B and factor D, encompassed in LEA-1-mediated complement activation, occurs in the presence of Ca^{++}, commonly leading to the conversion of C3bB to C3bBb and of pro-factor D to factor D; and (ii) lectin-independent conversion of factor B and factor D, which can occur in the absence of Ca^{++}, commonly leading to the conversion of C3bB to C3bBb and of pro-factor D to factor D. LEA-1-mediated complement activation and lectin-independent conversion of factor B and factor D have been determined to cause opsonization and/or lysis. While not wishing to be bound by any particular theory, it is believed that only when multiple C3b molecules associate and bind in close proximity, the C3bBb C3 convertase changes its substrate specificity and cleaves C5 as the alternative pathway C5 convertase termed C3bBb(C3b)n.

As used herein, the term "MASP-2-dependent complement activation", also referred to herein as LEA-2-mediated complement activation, comprises MASP-2 lectin-dependent activation, which occurs in the presence of Ca^{++}, leading to the formation of the lectin pathway C3 convertase C4b2a and upon accumulation of the C3 cleavage product C3b subsequently to the C5 convertase C4b2a(C3b)n, which has been determined to cause opsonization and/or lysis.

As used herein, the term "traditional understanding of the alternative pathway" also referred to as the "traditional alternative pathway" refers to the alternative pathway prior to the instant discovery described herein, *i.e.*, complement activation that is triggered, for example, by zymosan from fungal and yeast cell walls, lipopolysaccharide (LPS) from Gram negative outer membranes, and rabbit erythrocytes, as well as from many pure polysaccharides, viruses, bacteria, animal tumor cells, parasites and damaged cells, and which has traditionally been thought to arise from spontaneous proteolytic generation of C3b from complement factor C3. As used herein, activation of the "traditional alternative pathway", also referred to herein as the "alternative pathway", is measured in Mg^{++}/EGTA buffer (*i.e.*, in the absence of Ca^{++}).

As used herein, the term "lectin pathway" refers to complement activation that occurs via the specific binding of serum and non-serum carbohydrate-binding proteins including mannan-binding lectin (MBL), CL-11 and the ficolins (H-ficolin, M-ficolin, or L-ficolin). As

described herein, the inventors have discovered that the lectin pathway is driven by the two effector arms, lectin pathway effector arm 1 (LEA-1), which is now known to be MASP-3-dependent, and lectin pathway effector arm 2 (LEA-2), which is MASP-2-dependent. As used herein, activation of the lectin pathways are assessed using Ca^{++} containing buffers.

As used herein, the term "classical pathway" refers to complement activation that is triggered by antibody bound to a foreign particle and requires binding of the recognition molecule C1q.

As used herein, the term “HTRA-1” refers to the serine peptidase High-temperature requirement serine protease A1.

As used herein, the term “MASP-3 inhibitory agent” refers to any agent that directly inhibits MASP-3-dependent complement activation, including agents that bind to or directly interact with MASP-3, including MASP-3 antibodies and MASP-3 binding fragments thereof, natural and synthetic peptides, competitive substrates, small-molecules, expression inhibitors and isolated natural inhibitors, and also encompasses peptides that compete with MASP-3 for binding to another recognition molecule (e.g., MBL, CL-11, H-ficolin, M-ficolin, or L-ficolin) in the lectin pathway. In one embodiment, the MASP-3 inhibitory agent is specific to MASP-3, and does not bind to MASP-1 or MASP-2. An inhibitory agent that directly inhibits MASP-3 can be referred to as a direct MASP-3 inhibitory agent (e.g., a MASP-3 antibody), while an inhibitory agent that indirectly inhibits MASP-3 can be referred to as an indirect MASP-3 inhibitory agent (e.g., a MASP-1 antibody that inhibits MASP-3 activation). An example of a direct MASP-3 inhibitory agent is a MASP-3 specific inhibitory agent, such as a MASP-3 inhibitory agent that specifically binds to a portion of human MASP-3 (SEQ ID NO:2) with a binding affinity of at least 10 times greater than to other components in the complement system. Another example of a direct MASP-3 inhibitory agent is a high affinity MASP-3 antibody that specifically binds to the serine protease domain of human MASP-3 (SEQ ID NO:2), with an affinity of less than 500 pM and does not bind to human MASP-1 (SEQ ID NO:8). In one embodiment, a MASP-3 inhibitory agent indirectly inhibits MASP-3 activity, such as, for example, an inhibitor of MASP-3 activation, including an inhibitor of MASP-1-mediated MASP-3 activation (e.g., a MASP-1 antibody or MASP-1 binding fragments thereof, natural and synthetic peptides, small-molecules, expression inhibitors and isolated natural inhibitors, and also encompasses peptides that compete with MASP-1 for binding to MASP-3). In a preferred embodiment, a MASP-3 inhibitory agent, such as an antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof or antigen binding peptide inhibits MASP-3-mediated maturation of factor D. In another embodiment, a MASP-3 inhibitory

agent inhibits MASP-3-mediated activation of factor B. MASP-3 inhibitory agents useful in the method of the invention may reduce MASP-3-dependent complement activation by greater than 10%, such as greater than 20%, greater than 50%, or greater than 90%. In one embodiment, the MASP-3 inhibitory agent reduces MASP-3-dependent complement activation by greater than 90% (i.e., resulting in MASP-3 complement activation of only 10% or less). It is expected that MASP-3 inhibition will block, in full or in part, both LEA-1-related lysis and opsonization and lectin-independent conversion of factor B and factor D-related lysis and opsonization.

In one embodiment, a high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory antibody binds to the serine protease domain of MASP-3 (amino acid residues 450 to 728 of SEQ ID NO:2) with an affinity of less than 500 pM (e.g., less than 250 pM, less than 100 pM, less than 50 pM, or less than 10 pM) and inhibit the alternative pathway of complement activation in the blood of a mammalian subject by at least 50% (e.g., at least 60%, or at least 70%, or at least 80%, or at least 90%, or at least 95% or greater).

An “antibody” is an immunoglobulin molecule capable of specific binding to a target, such as a polypeptide, through at least one epitope recognition site located in the variable region (also referred to herein as the variable domain) of the immunoglobulin molecule.

As used herein, the term "antibody" encompasses antibodies and antibody fragments thereof, derived from any antibody-producing mammal (e.g., mouse, rat, rabbit, and primate including human), or from a hybridoma, phage selection, recombinant expression or transgenic animals (or other methods of producing antibodies or antibody fragments”), that specifically bind to a target polypeptide, such as, for example, MASP-1, MASP-2 or MASP-3 polypeptides or portions thereof. It is not intended that the term “antibody” is limited as regards to the source of the antibody or the manner in which it is made (e.g., by hybridoma, phage selection, recombinant expression, transgenic animal, peptide synthesis, etc). Exemplary antibodies include polyclonal, monoclonal and recombinant antibodies; pan-specific, multispecific antibodies (e.g., bispecific antibodies, trispecific antibodies); humanized antibodies; murine antibodies; chimeric, mouse-human, mouse-primate, primate-human monoclonal antibodies; and anti-idiotype antibodies, and may be any intact antibody or fragment thereof. As used herein, the term “antibody” encompasses not only intact polyclonal or monoclonal antibodies, but also fragments thereof,such as a single variable region antibody (dAb), or other known antibody fragments such as Fab, Fab', $F(ab')_2$, Fv and the like, single chain (ScFv), synthetic variants thereof, naturally occurring variants, fusion proteins comprising an antibody portion with an antigen-binding fragment of the

required specificity, humanized antibodies, chimeric antibodies, bi-specific antibodies, and any other modified configuration of the immunoglobulin molecule that comprises an antigen-binding site or fragment (epitope recognition site) of the required specificity.

A “monoclonal antibody" refers to a homogeneous antibody population wherein the monoclonal antibody is comprised of amino acids (naturally occurring and non-naturally occurring) that are involved in the selective binding of an epitope. Monoclonal antibodies are highly specific for the target antigen. The term "monoclonal antibody" encompasses not only intact monoclonal antibodies and full-length monoclonal antibodies, but also fragments thereof (such as Fab, Fab', $F(ab')_2$, Fv), single chain (ScFv), variants thereof, fusion proteins comprising an antigen-binding portion, humanized monoclonal antibodies, chimeric monoclonal antibodies, and any other modified configuration of the immunoglobulin molecule that comprises an antigen-binding fragment (epitope recognition site) of the required specificity and the ability to bind to an epitope. It is not intended to be limited as regards the source of the antibody or the manner in which it is made (*e.g.*, by hybridoma, phage selection, recombinant expression, transgenic animals, etc.). The term includes whole immunoglobulins as well as the fragments etc. described above under the definition of "antibody".

As used herein, the term "antibody fragment" refers to a portion derived from or related to a full-length antibody, such as, for example, a MASP-1, MASP-2 or MASP-3 antibody, generally including the antigen binding or variable region thereof. Illustrative examples of antibody fragments include Fab, Fab', $F(ab)_2$, $F(ab')_2$ and Fv fragments, scFv fragments, diabodies, linear antibodies, single-chain antibody molecules and multispecific antibodies formed from antibody fragments.

In certain embodiments, antibodies and antigen-binding fragments thereof as described herein include a heavy chain (VH) and a light chain (VL) complementarity-determining region (“CDR”) set, respectively interposed between a heavy chain and a light chain framework region (FR) set which provide support to the CDRs and define the spatial relationship of the CDRs relative to each other. As used herein, the term “CDR set” refers to the three hypervariable regions of a heavy or light chain V region. Proceeding from the N-terminus of a heavy or light chain, these regions are denoted as “CDR1,” “CDR2,” and “CDR3” respectively. An antigen-binidng site, therefore, includes six CDRs, comprising the CDR set from each of a heavy and a light chain V region.

As used herein, the term “FR set” refers to the four flanking amino acid sequences which frame the CDRs of a CDR set of a heavy or light chain V region. Some FR residues may contact bound antigen; however, FRs are primarily responsible for folding the V region into the antigen-binding site, particularly the FR residues directly adjacent to the CDRs. Within FRs, certain amino acid residues and certain structural features are very highly conserved. In this regard, all V region sequences contain an internal disulfide loop of around 90 amino acid residues. With the V regions fold into a binding-site, the CDRs are displayed as projecting loop motifs which form an antigen-binding surface. It is generally recognized that there are conserved structural regions of FRs which influence the folded shape of the CDR loops into certain “canonical” structures- regardless of the precise CDR amino acid sequence.

The structures and locations of immunoglobulin variable regions may be determined by reference to Kabat, E.A., et al., Sequences of Proteins of Immunological Interest, 4th Edition, US Department of Health and Human Services, 1987, and updates thereof, now available on the Internet (immuno.bme.nwu.edu.).

As used herein, a "single-chain Fv" or "scFv" antibody fragment comprises the V_H and V_L domains of an antibody, wherein these domains are present in a single polypeptide chain. Generally, the Fv polypeptide further comprises a polypeptide linker between the V_H and V_L domains, which enables the scFv to form the desired structure for antigen binding.

As used herein, a "chimeric antibody" is a recombinant protein that contains the variable domains and complementarity-determining regions derived from a non-human species (e.g., rodent) antibody, while the remainder of the antibody molecule is derived from a human antibody. In some embodiments, a chimeric antibody is comprised of an antigen-binding fragment of a MASP-3 inhibitory antibody operably linked or otherwise fused to a heterologous Fc portion of a different antibody. In some embodiments, the heterologous Fc domain may be from a different Ig class from the parent antibody, including IgA (including subclasses IgA1 and IgA2), IgD, IgE, IgG (including subclasses IgG1, IgG2, IgG3 and IgG4) and IgM.

As used herein, a “humanized antibody” is a chimeric molecule, generally prepared using recombinant techniques, having an antigen-binding site derived from an immunoglobulin from a non-human species and the remaining immunoglobulin structure of the molecule based upon the structure and/or sequence of a human immunoglobulin. The antigen-binding site may comprise either complete variable regions fused onto constant

domains or only the CDRs grafted onto appropriate framework regions in the variable domains. Epitope binding sites may be wild type or may be modified by one or more amino acid substitutions. Another approach focuses not only on providing human-derived constant regions, but also on modifying the variable regions as well so as to reshape them as closely as possible to human form. In some embodiments, humanized antibodies preserve all CDR sequences (for example, a humanized mouse antibody which contains all six CDRs from the mouse antibodies). In other embodiments, humanized antibodies have one or more CDRs (one, two, three, four, five, six) which are altered with respect to the original antibody, which are also termed one or more CDRs "derived from" one or more CDRs from the original antibody.

An antibody "specifically binds" to a target if it binds with greater affinity and/or avidity that it binds to other substances. In one embodiment, the antibody, or antigen-binding fragment thereof, specifically binds to the serine protease domain of human MASP-3 (amino acid residues 450 to 728 of SEQ ID NO:2). In one embodiment, the antibody, or antigen-binding fragment thereof, specifically binds to one or more of the epitopes described in TABLE 4, TABLE 28 or shown in FIGURE 62.

As used herein, the term "mannan-binding lectin" ("MBL") is equivalent to mannan-binding protein ("MBP").

As used herein, the "membrane attack complex" ("MAC") refers to a complex of the terminal five complement components (C5b combined with C6, C7, C8 and C9) that inserts into and disrupts membranes (also referred to as C5b-9).

As used herein, "a subject" includes all mammals, including without limitation humans, non-human primates, dogs, cats, horses, sheep, goats, cows, rabbits, pigs and rodents.

As used herein, the amino acid residues are abbreviated as follows: alanine (Ala;A), asparagine (Asn;N), aspartic acid (Asp;D), arginine (Arg;R), cysteine (Cys;C), glutamic acid (Glu;E), glutamine (Gln;Q), glycine (Gly;G), histidine (His;H), isoleucine (Ile;I), leucine (Leu;L), lysine (Lys;K), methionine (Met;M), phenylalanine (Phe;F), proline (Pro;P), serine (Ser;S), threonine (Thr;T), tryptophan (Trp;W), tyrosine (Tyr;Y), and valine (Val;V).

In the broadest sense, the naturally occurring amino acids can be divided into groups based upon the chemical characteristic of the side chain of the respective amino acids. By "hydrophobic" amino acid is meant either Ile, Leu, Met, Phe, Trp, Tyr, Val, Ala, Cys or Pro. By "hydrophilic" amino acid is meant either Gly, Asn, Gln, Ser, Thr, Asp, Glu, Lys, Arg or His. This grouping of amino acids can be further subclassed as follows. By "uncharged

hydrophilic" amino acid is meant either Ser, Thr, Asn or Gln. By "acidic" amino acid is meant either Glu or Asp. By "basic" amino acid is meant either Lys, Arg or His.

As used herein the term "conservative amino acid substitution" is illustrated by a substitution among amino acids within each of the following groups: (1) glycine, alanine, valine, leucine, and isoleucine, (2) phenylalanine, tyrosine, and tryptophan, (3) serine and threonine, (4) aspartate and glutamate, (5) glutamine and asparagine, and (6) lysine, arginine and histidine.

The term "oligonucleotide" as used herein refers to an oligomer or polymer of ribonucleic acid (RNA) or deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) or mimetics thereof. This term also covers those oligonucleobases composed of naturally-occurring nucleotides, sugars and covalent internucleoside (backbone) linkages as well as oligonucleotides having non-naturally-occurring modifications.

As used herein, an "epitope" refers to the site on a protein (e.g., a human MASP-3 protein) that is bound by an antibody. "Overlapping epitopes" include at least one (e.g., two, three, four, five, or six) common amino acid residue(s), including linear and non-linear epitopes.

As used herein, the terms "polypeptide," "peptide," and "protein" are used interchangeably and mean any peptide-linked chain of amino acids, regardless of length or post-translational modification. The MASP-3 proteins described herein can contain or be wild-type proteins or can be variants that have not more than 50 (e.g., not more than one, two, three, four, five, six, seven, eight, nine, ten, 12, 15, 20, 25, 30, 35, 40, or 50) conservative amino acid substitutions. Conservative substitutions typically include substitutions within the following groups: glycine and alanine; valine, isoleucine, and leucine; aspartic acid and glutamic acid; asparagine, glutamine, serine and threonine; lysine, histidine and arginine; and phenylalanine and tyrosine.

In some embodiments, the human MASP-3 protein can have an amino acid sequence that is, or is greater than, 70 (e.g., 71, 72, 73, 74, 75, 76, 77, 78, 79, 80, 81, 82, 83, 84, 85, 86, 87, 88, 89, 90, 91, 92, 93, 94, 95, 96, 97, 98, 99, or 100) % identical to the human MASP-3 protein having the amino acid sequence set forth in SEQ ID NO: 2.

In some embodiments, peptide fragments can be at least 6 (e.g., at least 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 29, 30, 31, 32, 33, 34, 35, 36, 37, 38, 39, 40, 41, 42, 43, 44, 45, 46, 47, 48, 49, 50, 55, 60, 65, 70, 75, 80, 85, 90, 95, 100, 110, 120, 130, 140, 150, 160, 170, 180, 190, 200, 250, 300, 350, 400, 450, 500, or 600 or more) amino acid residues in length (e.g., at least 6 contiguous amino acid residues in SEQ

ID NO:2). In some embodiments, an antigenic peptide fragment of a human MASP-3 protein is fewer than 500 (e.g., fewer than 450, 400, 350, 325, 300, 275, 250, 225, 200, 190, 180, 170, 160, 150, 140, 130, 120, 110, 100, 95, 90, 85, 80, 75, 70, 65, 60, 55, 50, 49, 48, 47, 46, 45, 44, 43, 42, 41, 40, 39, 38, 37, 36, 35, 34, 33, 32, 31, 30, 29, 28, 27, 26, 25, 24, 23, 22, 21, 20, 19, 18, 17, 16, 15, 14, 13, 12, 11, 10, 9, 8, 7, or 6) amino acid residues in length (e.g., fewer than 500 contiguous amino acid residues in SEQ ID NO:2.

In some embodiments, in the context of generating an antibody that binds MASP-3, the peptide fragments are antigenic and retain at least 10% (e.g., at least 10%, at least 15%, at least 20%, at least 25%, at least 30%, at least 35%, at least 40%, at least 50%, at least 55%, at least 60%, at least 70%, at least 80%, at least 90%, at least 95%, at least 98%, at least 99%, at least 99.5%, or 100% or more) of the ability of the full-length protein to induce an antigenic response in a mammal (see below under "Methods for Producing an Antibody").

Percent (%) amino acid sequence identity is defined as the percentage of amino acids in a candidate sequence that are identical to the amino acids in a reference sequence, after aligning the sequences and introducing gaps, if necessary, to achieve the maximum percent sequence identity. Alignment for purposes of determining percent sequence identity can be achieved in various ways that are within the skill in the art, for instance, using publicly available computer software such as BLAST, BLAST-2, ALIGN, ALIGN-2 or Megalign (DNASTAR) software. Appropriate parameters for measuring alignment, including any algorithms needed to achieve maximal alignment over the full-length of the sequences being compared can be determined by known methods.

In representative embodiments, the human MASP-3 protein (SEQ ID NO:2) is encoded by the cDNA sequence set forth as SEQ ID NO:1. Those skilled in the art will recognize that the cDNA sequence disclosed in SEQ ID NO:1 represents a single allele of human MASP-3, and that allelic variation and alternative splicing are expected to occur. Allelic variants of the nucleotide sequences shown in SEQ ID NO:1, including those containing silent mutations and those in which mutations result in amino acid sequence changes, are within the scope of the present invention. Allelic variants of the MASP-3 sequence can be cloned by probing cDNA or genomic libraries from different individuals according to standard procedures, or may be identified by homology comparison search (e.g., BLAST searching) of databases containing such information.

As used herein, an "isolated nucleic acid molecule" is a nucleic acid molecule (e.g., a polynucleotide) that is not integrated in the genomic DNA of an organism. For example, a DNA molecule that encodes a growth factor that has been separated from the genomic DNA

of a cell is an isolated DNA molecule. Another example of an isolated nucleic acid molecule is a chemically-synthesized nucleic acid molecule that is not integrated in the genome of an organism. A nucleic acid molecule that has been isolated from a particular species is smaller than the complete DNA molecule of a chromosome from that species.

As used herein, a "nucleic acid molecule construct" is a nucleic acid molecule, either single- or double-stranded, that has been modified through human intervention to contain segments of nucleic acid combined and juxtaposed in an arrangement not existing in nature.

As used herein, an "expression vector" is a nucleic acid molecule encoding a gene that is expressed in a host cell. Typically, an expression vector comprises a transcription promoter, a gene, and a transcription terminator. Gene expression is usually placed under the control of a promoter, and such a gene is said to be "operably linked to" the promoter. Similarly, a regulatory element and a core promoter are operably linked if the regulatory element modulates the activity of the core promoter.

As used herein, the term “about” as used herein is meant to specify that the specific value provided may vary to a certain extent, such as a variation in the range of ±10%, preferably ±5%, most preferably ±2% are included in the given value. Where ranges are stated, the endpoints

Where ranges are stated, the endpoints are included within the range unless otherwise stated or otherwise evident from the context.

As used herein the singular forms "a", "an" and "the" include plural aspects unless the context clearly dictates otherwise. Thus, for example, reference to "an excipient" includes a plurality of such excipients and equivalents thereof known to those skilled in the art, reference to "an agent" includes one agent, as well as two or more agents; reference to "an antibody" includes a plurality of such antibodies and reference to "a framework region" includes reference to one or more framework regions and equivalents thereof known to those skilled in the art, and so forth.

Each embodiment in this specification is to be applied *mutatis mutandis* to every other embodiment unless expressly stated otherwise. It is contemplated that any embodiment discussed in this specification can be implemented with respect to any method, kit, reagent, or composition of the invention, and vice versa. Furthermore, compositions of the invention can be used to achieve methods of the invention.

II. THE LECTIN PATHWAY: A NEW UNDERSTANDING

i. Overview: the Lectin pathway has been redefined

As described herein, the inventors have made the surprising discovery that the lectin pathway of complement has two effector arms to activate complement, both driven by lectin pathway activation complexes formed of carbohydrate recognition components (MBL, CL-11 and ficolins): i) the effector arm formed by the lectin pathway-associated serine proteases MASP-1 and MASP-3, referred to herein as "lectin pathway effector arm 1" or "LEA-1"; and (ii) the MASP-2 driven activation effector arm, referred to herein as "lectin pathway effector arm 2", or "LEA-2". Both LEA-1 and LEA-2 can effect lysis and/or opsonization.

It has also been determined that lectin-independent conversion of factor B by MASP-3 and lectin-independent conversion of factor D by HTRA-1, MASP-1 and MASP-3, which both can occur in the absence of Ca^{++}, commonly lead to the conversion of C3bB to C3bBb and of pro-factor D to factor D. Therefore, inhibiting MASP-3 can inhibit both LEA-1 and the lectin-independent activation of factor B and/or factor D, which can result in the inhibition of lysis and/or opsonization.

FIGURE 1 illustrates this new understanding of the pathways of complement activation. As shown in **FIGURE 1**, LEA-1 is driven by lectin-bound MASP-3, which can activate the zymogen of factor D to its active form and/or cleave the C3b- or C3b(H_20)-bound factor B, leading to conversion of the C3bB zymogen complex into its enzymatically active form C3bBb. Activated factor D, generated by MASP-3, can also convert the C3bB or C3b(H_20) zymogen complexes into their enzymatically active form. MASP-1 is capable of rapid self-activation, whereas MASP-3 is not. In many cases, MASP-1 is the activator of MASP-3.

While in many examples lectins (i.e., MBL, CL-11 or ficolins) can direct activity to cellular surfaces, **FIGURE 1** also outlines the lectin-independent functions of MASP-3, MASP-1, and HTRA-1 in factor B activation and/or factor D maturation. As with the lectin-associated form of MASP-3 in LEA-1, the lectin-independent form of MASP-3 is capable of mediating conversion of C3bB or C3b(H_20) to C3bBb (see also **FIGURES 29** and **30**) and pro-factor D to factor D (see **FIGURE 32**). MASP-1 (see also **FIGURE 32**) and the non-MASP-related protein HTRA-1 can also activate factor D (Stanton et al., *Evidence That the HTRA1 Interactome Influences Susceptibility to Age-Related Macular Degeneration*, presented at The Association for Research in Vision and Ophthalmology 2011 conference on May 4, 2011) in a manner in which no lectin component is required.

Thus, MASP-1 (via LEA-1 and lectin-independent forms), MASP-3 (via LEA-1 and lectin-independent forms), and HTRA-1 (lectin-independent only) are capable of either direct or indirect activation at one or more points along a MASP-3 - factor D - factor B axis. In

doing so, they generate C3bBb, the C3 convertase of the alternative pathway, and they stimulate the production and deposition of C3b on microbial surfaces. C3b deposition plays a critical role in opsonization, labeling the surfaces of microbes for destruction by host phagocytic cells, such as macrophages. As an example herein (**FIGURES 28A and 28B**), MASP-3 is critical for opsonization of *S. aureus*. C3b deposition occurs rapidly on *S. aureus* exposed to human serum in a MASP-3-dependent fashion (**FIGURES 28A and 28B**).

The contributions of LEA-1 and the lectin-independent functions of MASP-3, MASP-1, or HTRA-1 are not limited to opsonization, however. As diagrammed in **FIGURE 1**, these three components can also cause cell lysis by indirect or direct activation of factor B, and the production of C3b. These components form complexes that generate the alternative pathway C5 convertase, $C3bBb(C3b)_n$. As described further herein, the requirement for MASP-3 and MBL, but not MASP-2 (and, therefore, not LEA-2 in this example), in the lysis of *N. meningitidis* (see **FIGURES 11**, **12** and **13**) demonstrates a role for LEA-1 in lysis. In summary, the opsonization results obtained from the *S. aureus* studies and the lysis results observed in the *N. meningitidis* studies support the role of LEA-1 in both processes (as diagrammed in **FIGURE 1**). Furthermore, these studies demonstrate that both opsonization and lysis can result from the conversion of C3bB or $C3b(H_20)$ and/or of pro-factor D to factor D; therefore, both processes can be outcomes of the lectin-independent roles of MASP-3, MASP-1, or HTRA-1. Thus, the model developed by the inventors in **FIGURE 1** supports the use of inhibitors of principally MASP-3, but also MASP-1 and/or HTRA-1, to block opsonization and/or lysis and to treat pathologies caused by dysregulation of these processes.

1. Lectin Pathway Effector Arm (LEA-1)

The first effector arm of the lectin pathway, LEA-1, is formed by the lectin pathway-associated serine proteases MASP-1 and MASP-3. As described herein, the inventors have now shown that, in the absence of MASP-3 and in the presence of MASP-1, the alternative pathway is not effectively activated on surface structures. These results demonstrate that MASP-3 plays a previously undisclosed role in initiating the alternative pathway, and this is confirmed using the MASP-3-deficient 3MC serum obtained from patients with the rare 3MC autosomal recessive disorder (Rooryck C, et al., Nat Genet. 43(3):197-203 (2011)) with mutations that render the serine protease domain of MASP-3 dysfunctional. Based on these novel findings, it is expected that complement activation involving the alternative pathway, as conventionally defined, is MASP-3-dependent. In fact, MASP-3, and its activation of LEA-1, may represent the hitherto elusive initiator of the alternative pathway.

As further described in Examples 1-4 herein, in MASP-2-deficient sera, the inventors

observed a higher activity of lectin-dependent alternative pathway activation resulting in a higher bactericidal activity (*i.e.*, lytic activity) against *N. meningitidis*. While not wishing to be bound by any particular theory, it is believed that in absence of MASP-2, MASP-1-bearing carbohydrate recognition complexes are more likely to bind close to MASP-3-bearing carbohydrate recognition complexes to activate MASP-3. It is known that, in many instances, activation of MASP-3 is dependent on MASP-1 activity, as MASP-3 is not an auto-activating enzyme and very often requires the activity of MASP-1 to be converted from its zymogen form into its enzymatically active form. MASP-1 (like MASP-2) is an auto-activating enzyme, while MASP-3 does not auto-activate and, in many instances, needs the enzymatic activity of MASP-1 to be converted into its enzymatically active form. *See*, Zundel S, et al., *J Immunol.*, 172(7):4342-50 (2004). In absence of MASP-2, all lectin pathway recognition complexes are either loaded with MASP-1 or MASP-3. Therefore, the absence of MASP-2 facilitates the MASP-1-mediated conversion of MASP-3 into its enzymatically active form. Once MASP-3 is activated, activated MASP-3 initiates alternative pathway activation, now referred to as "LEA-1" activation, through a MASP-3-mediated conversion of C3bB to C3bBb and/or conversion of pro-factor D to factor D. C3bBb, also referred to as the alternative pathway C3 convertase, cleaves additional C3 molecules yielding deposition of opsonic C3b molecules. If several C3b fragments bind in close proximity to the C3bBb convertase complex, this results in the formation of the alternative pathway C5 convertase C3bBb(C3b)n, which promotes formation of MAC. Additionally, C3b molecules deposited on the surface form new sites for factor B binding, which can now be cleaved by factor D and/or MASP-3 to form additional sites where alternative pathway C3 and C5 convertase complexes can be formed. This latter process is needed for effective lysis and does not require lectins once the initial C3b deposition has occurred. A recent publication (Iwaki D. et al., *J Immunol* 187(7):3751-8 (2011)) as well as data generated from the inventors (**FIGURE 30**) demonstrate that the alternative pathway C3 convertase zymogen complex C3bB is converted into its enzymatically active form by activated MASP-3. The inventors now have discovered that the MASP-3-mediated cleavage of factor B represents a subcomponent of the newly described LEA-1, which promotes lectin-dependent formation of the alternative pathway C3 convertase C3bBb.

2. Lectin Pathway Effector Arm (LEA-2)

The second effector arm of the lectin pathway, LEA-2, is formed by the lectin pathway-associated serine protease MASP-2. MASP-2 is activated upon binding of the recognition components to their respective pattern, and may also be activated by MASP-1, and

subsequently cleaves the complement component C4 into C4a and C4b. After the binding of the cleavage product C4b to plasma C2, C4b-bound C2 becomes substrate of a second MASP-2-mediated cleavage step which converts C4b-bound C2 into the enzymatically active complex C4bC2a and a small C2b cleavage fragment. C4b2a is the C3-converting C3 convertase of the lectin pathway, converting the abundant plasma component C3 into C3a and C3b. C3b binds to any surface in close proximity via a thioester bond. If several C3b fragments bind in close proximity to the C3 convertase complex C4b2a, this convertase alters its specificity to convert C5 into C5b and C5a, forming the C5 convertase complex C4b2a(C3b)n. While this C5 convertase can initiate formation of MAC, this process is thought to be insufficiently effective to promote lysis on its own. Rather, the initial C3b opsonins produced by LEA-2 form the nucleus for the formation of new alternative pathway C3 convertase and C5 convertase sites, which ultimately lead to abundant MAC formation and lysis. This latter event is mediated by factor D activation of factor B associated with LEA-2-formed C3b, and hence is dependent on LEA-1 by virtue of the essential role for MASP-1 in the maturation of factor D. There is also a MASP-2-dependent C4-bypass activation route to activate C3 in the absence of C4, which plays an important role in the pathophysiology of ischemia-reperfusion injury, since C4-deficient mice are not protected from ischemia-reperfusion injury while MASP-2-deficient mice are (Schwaeble et al., *PNAS*, 2011 *supra*). LEA-2 is also tied to the coagulation pathway, involving the cleavage of prothrombin to thrombin (common pathway) and also the cleavage of factor XII (Hageman factor) to convert into its enzymatically active form XIIa. Factor XIIa in turn cleaves factor XI to XIa (intrinsic pathway). The intrinsic pathway activation of the clotting cascade leads to fibrin formation, which is of critical importance for thrombus formation.

FIGURE 1 illustrates the new understanding of the lectin pathway and alternative pathway based on the results provided herein. **FIGURE 1** delineates the role of LEA-2 in both opsonization and lysis. While MASP-2 is the initiator of "downstream" C3b deposition (and resultant opsonization) in multiple lectin-dependent settings physiologically (**FIGURES 18A**, **18B**, **18C**), it also plays a role in lysis of serum-sensitive bacteria. As illustrated in **FIGURE 1**, the proposed molecular mechanism responsible for the increased bactericidal activity of MASP-2-deficient or MASP-2-depleted serum/plasma for serum-sensitive pathogens such as *N. meningitidis* is that, for the lysis of bacteria, lectin pathway recognition complexes associated with MASP-1 and MASP-3 have to bind in close proximity to each other on the bacterial surface, thereby allowing MASP-1 to cleave MASP-3. In contrast to

MASP-1 and MASP-2, MASP-3 is not an auto-activating enzyme, but, in many instances, requires activation/cleavage by MASP-1 to be converted into its enzymatically active form.

As further shown in **FIGURE 1**, activated MASP-3 can then cleave C3b-bound factor B on the pathogen surface to initiate the alternative activation cascade by formation of the enzymatically active alternative pathway C3 and C5 convertases C3bBb and C3bBb(C3b)n, respectively. MASP-2-bearing lectin-pathway activation complexes have no part in the activation of MASP-3 and, in the absence of or after depletion of MASP-2, all-lectin pathway activation complexes will either be loaded with MASP-1 or MASP-3. Therefore, in the absence of MASP-2, the likelihood is markedly increased that on the microbial surface MASP-1- and MASP-3-bearing lectin-pathway activation complexes will come to sit in close proximity to each other, leading to more MASP-3 being activated and thereby leading to a higher rate of MASP-3-mediated cleavage of C3b-bound factor B to form the alternative pathway C3 and C5 convertases C3bBb and C3bBb(C3b)n on the microbial surface. This leads to the activation of the terminal activation cascades C5b-C9 that forms the Membrane Attack Complex, composed of surface-bound C5b associated with C6, C5bC6 associated with C7, C5bC6C7 associated with C8, and C5bC6C7C8, leading to the polymerization of C9 that inserts into the bacterial surface structure and forms a pore in the bacterial wall, which will lead to osmolytic killing of the complement-targeted bacterium.

The core of this novel concept is that the data provided herein clearly show that the lectin pathway activation complexes drive the following two distinct activation routes, as illustrated in **FIGURE 1**:

i) LEA-1: A MASP-3-dependent activation route that initiates and drives activation of complement by generating the alternative pathway convertase C3bBb through initial cleavage and activation of factor B on activator surfaces, which will then catalyze C3b deposition and formation of the alternative pathway convertase C3bBb. The MASP-3-driven activation route plays an essential role in the opsonization and lysis of microbes and drives the alternative pathway on the surface of bacteria, leading to optimal rates of activation to generate membrane attack complexes; and

ii) LEA-2: A MASP-2-dependent activation route leading to the formation of the lectin pathway C3 convertase C4b2a and, upon accumulation of the C3 cleavage product C3b, subsequently to the C5 convertase C4b2a(C3b)n. In the absence of complement C4, MASP-2 can form an alternative C3 convertase complex which involves C2 and clotting factor XI.

In addition to its role in lysis, the MASP-2-driven activation route plays an important role in bacterial opsonization leading to microbes being coated with covalently bound C3b and cleavage products thereof (i.e., iC3b and C3dg), which will be targeted for the uptake and killing by C3 receptor-bearing phagocytes, such as granulocytes, macrophages, monocytes, microglia cells and the reticuloendothelial system. This is the most effective route of clearance of bacteria and microorganisms that are resistant to complement lysis. These include most of the gram-positive bacteria.

In addition to LEA-1 and LEA-2, there is the potential for lectin-independent activation of factor D by MASP-3, MASP-1 and/or HTRA-1, and there is also the potential for lectin-independent activation of factor B by MASP-3.

While not wishing to be bound by any particular theory, it is believed that each of (i) LEA-1, (ii) LEA-2 and (iii) lectin-independent activation of factor B and/or factor D lead to opsonization and/or the formation of MAC with resultant lysis.

ii. Background of MASP-1, MASP-2 and MASP-3

Three mannan-binding lectin-associated serine proteases (MASP-1, MASP-2 and MASP-3) are presently known to be associated in human serum with the mannan-binding lectin (MBL). Mannan-binding lectin is also called 'mannose-binding protein' or 'mannose-binding lectin' in the recent literature. The MBL–MASP complex plays an important role in innate immunity by virtue of the binding of MBL to carbohydrate structures present on a wide variety of microorganisms. The interaction of MBL with specific arrays of carbohydrate structures brings about the activation of the MASP proenzymes which, in turn, activate complement by cleaving the complement components C4 and C2 to form the C3 convertase C4b2b (Kawasaki *et al.*, *J. Biochem* 106:483-489 (1989); Matsushita & Fujita, *J. Exp Med.* 176:1497-1502 (1992); Ji *et al.*, *J. Immunol* 150:571-578 (1993)).

The MBL-MASP proenzyme complex was, until recently, considered to contain only one type of protease (MASP-1), but it is now clear that there are two other distinct proteases (i.e., MASP-2 and MASP-3) associated with MBL (Thiel *et al.*, *Nature* 386:506-510 (1997); Dahl *et al.*, *Immunity* 15:127-135 (2001)), as well as an additional serum protein of 19 kDa, referred to as "MAp19" or "sMAP" (Stover *et al.*, *J. Immunol* 162:3481-3490 (1999); Stover *et al.*, *J. Immunol* 163:6848-6859 (1999); Takahashi *et al.*, *Int. Immunol* 11:859-63 (1999)).

MAp19 is an alternatively spliced gene product of the structural gene for MASP-2 and lacks the four C-terminal domains of MASP-2, including the serine endopeptidase domain. The abundantly expressed truncated mRNA transcript encoding MAp19 is generated by an alternative splicing/polyadenylation event of the MASP-2 gene. By a similar mechanism, the

MASP-1/3 gene gives rise to three major gene products, the two serine proteases MASP-1 and MASP-3 and a truncated gene product of 44 kDa referred to as "MAp44" (Degn *et al.*, *J. Immunol* 183(11):7371-8 (2009); Skjoedt *et al.*, *J Biol Chem* 285:8234-43 (2010)).

MASP-1 was first described as the P-100 protease component of the serum Ra-reactive factor, which is now recognized as being a complex composed of MBL plus MASP (Matsushita *et al.*, *Collectins and Innate Immunity*, (1996); Ji *et al.*, *J Immunol* 150:571-578 (1993). The ability of an MBL-associated endopeptidase within the MBL-MASPs complex to act on the complement components C4 and C2 in a manner apparently identical to that of the C1s enzyme within the C1q–$(C1r)_2$–$(C1s)_2$ complex of the classical pathway of complement suggests that there is a MBL–MASPs complex which is functionally analogous to the C1q–$(C1r)_2$–$(C1s)_2$ complex. The C1q–$(C1r)_2$–$(C1s)_2$ complex is activated by the interaction of C1q with the Fc regions of antibody IgG or IgM present in immune complexes. This brings about the autoactivation of the C1r proenzyme which, in turn, activates the C1s proenzyme which then acts on complement components C4 and C2.

The stoichiometry of the MBL-MASPs complex differs from the one found for the C1q–$(C1r)_2$–$(C1s)_2$ complex in that different MBL oligomers appear to associate with different proportions of MASP-1/MAp19 or MASP-2/MASP-3 (Dahl *et al.*, Immunity 15:127-135 (2001). The majority of MASPs and MAp19 found in serum are not complexed with MBL (Thiel *et al.*, *J Immunol* 165:878-887 (2000)) and may associate in part with ficolins, a recently described group of lectins having a fibrinogen-like domain able to bind to N-acetylglucosamine residues on microbial surfaces (Le *et al.*, *FEBS Lett* 425:367 (1998); Sugimoto *et al.*, *J. Biol Chem* 273:20721 (1998)). Among these, human L-ficolin, H-ficolin and M-ficolin associate with MASPs as well as with MAp19 and may activate the lectin pathway upon binding to the specific carbohydrate structures recognized by ficolins (Matsushita *et al.*, *J Immunol* 164:2281-2284 (2000); Matsushita *et al.*, *J Immunol* 168:3502-3506 (2002)). In addition to the ficolins and MBL, an MBL-like lectin collectin, called CL-11, has been identified as a lectin pathway recognition molecule (Hansen et al. *J Immunol* 185:6096-6104 (2010); Schwaeble et al. *PNAS* 108:7523-7528 (2011)). There is overwhelming evidence underlining the physiological importance of these alternative carbohydrate recognition molecules and it is therefore important to understand that MBL is not the only recognition component of the lectin activation pathway and that MBL deficiency is not to be mistaken for lectin-pathway deficiency. The existence of possibly an array of alternative carbohydrate-recognition complexes structurally related to MBL may broaden the

spectrum of microbial structures that initiate a direct response of the innate immune system via activation of complement.

All lectin pathway recognition molecules are characterized by a specific MASPs-binding motif within their collagen-homologous stalk region (Wallis et al. *J. Biol Chem* 279:14065-14073 (2004)). The MASP-binding site in MBLs, CL-11 and ficolins is characterized by a distinct motif within this domain: Hyp-Gly-Lys-Xaa-Gly-Pro, where Hyp is hydroxyproline and Xaa is generally an aliphatic residue. Point mutations in this sequence disrupt MASP binding.

1. Respective structures, sequences, chromosomal localization and splice variants of MASP-1 and MASP-3

FIGURE 2 is a schematic diagram illustrating the domain structure of the human MASP-1 polypeptide (SEQ ID NO:8), human MASP-3 polypeptide (SEQ ID NO:2) and human MAp44 polypeptide and the exons encoding the same. As shown in **FIGURE 2**, the serine proteases MASP-1 and MASP-3 consist of six distinct domains arranged as found in C1r and C1s; *i.e.*, (I) an N-terminal C1r/C1s/sea urchin VEGF/bone morphogenic protein (or CUBI) domain; (II) an epidermal growth factor (EGF)-like domain; (III) a second CUB domain (CUBII); (IV and V) two complement control protein (CCP1 and CCP2) domains; and (VI) a serine protease (SP) domain.

The cDNA-derived amino acid sequences of human and mouse MASP-1 (Sato *et al.*, *Int Immunol* 6:665-669 (1994); Takada *et al.*, *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 196:1003-1009 (1993); Takayama *et al.*, *J. Immunol* 152:2308-2316 (1994)), human, mouse, and rat MASP-2 (Thiel *et al.*, *Nature* 386:506-510 (1997); Endo *et al.*, *J Immunol* 161:4924-30 (1998); Stover *et al.*, *J. Immunol* 162:3481-3490 (1999); Stover *et al.*, *J. Immunol* 163:6848-6859 (1999)), as well as human MASP-3 (Dahl *et al.*, *Immunity* 15:127-135 (2001)) indicate that these proteases are serine peptidases having the characteristic triad of His, Asp and Ser residues within their putative catalytic domains (Genbank Accession numbers: human MASP-1: BAA04477.1 (SEQ ID NO:8); mouse MASP-1: BAA03944; rat MASP-1: AJ457084; Human MASP-3:AAK84071 (SEQ ID NO:2); mouse MASP-3: AB049755, as accessed on Genbank on 2/15/2012 (SEQ ID NO:3); rat MASP-3 (SEQ ID NO:4); chicken MASP-3 (SEQ ID NO:5); rabbit MASP-3 (SEQ ID NO:6); and Cynomolgus monkey (SEQ ID NO:7).

As further shown in **FIGURE 2**, upon conversion of the zymogen to the active form, the heavy chain (alpha, or A chain) and light chain (beta, or B chain) are split to yield a disulphide-linked A-chain and a smaller B-chain representing the serine protease domain. The single-chain proenzyme MASP-1 is activated (like proenzyme C1r and C1s) by cleavage

of an Arg-Ile bond located between the second CCP domain (domain V) and the serine protease domain (domain VI). Proenzymes MASP-2 and MASP-3 are considered to be activated in a similar fashion to that of MASP-1. Each MASP protein forms homodimers and is individually associated with MBL and the ficolins in a Ca^{++}-dependent manner.

The human MASP-1 polypeptide (SEQ ID NO:8) and MASP-3 polypeptide (SEQ ID NO:2) arise from one structural gene (Dahl *et al.*, *Immunity* 15:127-135 (2001), which has been mapped to the 3q27–28 region of the long arm of chromosome 3 (Takada *et al.*, *Genomics* 25:757-759 (1995)). The MASP-3 and MASP-1 mRNA transcripts are generated from the primary transcript by an alternative splicing/polyadenylation process. The MASP-3 translation product is composed of an alpha chain, which is common to both MASP-1 and MASP-3, and a beta chain (the serine protease domain), which is unique to MASP-3. As shown in **FIGURE 2**, the human MASP-1 gene encompasses 18 exons. The human MASP-1 cDNA is encoded by exons 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 10, 11, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17 and 18. As further shown in **FIGURE 2**, the human MASP 3 gene encompasses twelve exons. The human MASP-3 cDNA (set forth as SEQ ID NO:1) is encoded by exons 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 10, 11 and 12. An alternative splice results in a protein termed MBL-associated protein 44 ("MAp44)," arising from exons 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8 and 9.

The human MASP-1 polypeptide (SEQ ID NO: 8 from Genbank BAA04477.1) has 699 amino acid residues, which includes a leader peptide of 19 residues. When the leader peptide is omitted, the calculated molecular mass of MASP-1 is 76,976 Da. As shown in **FIGURE 2**, the MASP-1 amino acid sequence contains four N-linked glycosylation sites. The domains of the human MASP-1 protein (with reference to SEQ ID NO:8) are shown in **FIGURE 2** and include an N-terminal C1r/C1s/sea urchin VEFG/bone morphogenic protein (CUBI) domain (aa 25-137 of SEQ ID NO:8), an epidermal growth factor-like domain (aa 139-181 of SEQ ID NO:8), a second CUB domain (CUBII) (aa 185-296 of SEQ ID NO:8), as well as a tandem of complement control protein (CCP1 aa 301-363 and CCP2 aa 367-432 of SEQ ID NO:8) domains and a serine protease domain (aa 449-694 of SEQ ID NO:8).

The human MASP-3 polypeptide (SEQ ID NO:2, from Genbank AAK84071) has 728 amino acid residues (as shown in FIGURE 3), which includes a leader peptide of 19 residues (shown as the underlined amino acid residues in FIGURE 3).

When the leader peptides are omitted, the calculated molecular mass of MASP-3 is 81,873 Da. As shown in **FIGURE 2**, there are seven N -linked glycosylation sites in MASP-3. The domains of the human MASP-3 protein (with reference to SEQ ID NO:2) are shown in

FIGURE 2 and include an N-terminal C1r/C1s/sea urchin VEGF/bone morphogenic protein (CUBI) domain (aa 25-137 of SEQ ID NO:2), an epidermal growth factor-like domain (aa 139-181 of SEQ ID NO:2), a second CUB domain (CUBII) (aa 185-296 of SEQ ID NO:2), as well as a tandem of complement control protein (CCP1 aa 299-363 and CCP2 aa 367-432 of SEQ ID NO:2) domains and a serine protease domain (aa 450-728 of SEQ ID NO:2).

The MASP-3 translation product is composed of an alpha chain (heavy chain), containing the CUB-1-EGF-CUB-2-CCP-1-CCP-2 domains (alpha chain: aa 1-448 of SEQ ID NO:2) which is common to both MASP-1 and MASP-3, and a light chain (beta chain: aa 449-728 of SEQ ID NO:2), containing the serine protease domain, which is unique to MASP-3.

2. Comparison of MASP-3 amino acid sequences from various species

FIGURE 4 provides a multi-species alignment of MASP-3 showing a comparison of full-length MASP-3 protein from human (SEQ ID NO:2), cynomolgus monkey (SEQ ID NO:7), rat (SEQ ID NO:4), murine (SEQ ID NO:3), chicken (SEQ ID NO:5) and rabbit (SEQ ID NO:6). FIGURE 5 provides a multi-species alignment of the serine protease (SP) domain from human (aa 450-728 of SEQ ID NO:2); rabbit (aa 450-728 of SEQ ID NO:6); murine (aa aa455-733 of SEQ ID NO:3); rat (aa 455-733 of SEQ ID NO:4) and chicken (aa aa448-730 of SEQ ID NO:5).

As shown in FIGURE 4, there is a high level of amino acid sequence conservation of MASP-3 polypeptide amongst different species, particularly in the SP domain (FIGURE 5). As further shown in FIGURE 5, the catalytic triad (H at residue 497; D at residue 553 and S at residue 664 with reference to full length human MASP-3 (SEQ ID NO:2) is conserved across species. TABLE 1 summarizes the percent identity of the MASP-3 SP domain across species.

TABLE 1: Percent Identity of the MASP-3 SP domain Across Species

	Cyno	Rabbit	Rat	Mouse	chicken
Human	95%	94%	92%	91%	79%
Cyno		94%	90%	90%	79%
Rabbit			92%	92%	81%
Rat				97%	78%
mouse					78%

MASP-3 has no proteolytic activity towards C4, C2 or C3 substrates. Conversely, MASP-3 was initially reported to act as an inhibitor of the lectin pathway (Dahl et al., *Immunity* 15:127-135 (2001)). This conclusion may have come about because in contrast to MASP-1 and MASP-2, MASP-3 is not an autoactivating enzyme (Zundel S. et al., *J Immunol* 172:4342-4350 (2004); Megyeri et al., *J. Biol. Chem.* 288:8922–8934 (2013).

Recently, evidence for possible physiological functions of MASP-1 and MASP-3 emerged from transgenic mouse studies using a mouse strain with a combined MASP-1 and MASP-3 deficiency. While MASP-1/3-knockout mice have a functional lectin pathway (Schwaeble et al., *PNAS* 108:7523-7528 (2011)), they appear to lack alternative pathway activity (Takahashi et al., *JEM* 207(1):29-37 (2010)). Lack of alternative pathway activity appears to be due to a processing defect of complement factor D, which is necessary for alternative pathway activity. In MASP-1/3 knockout mice, all factor D is circulating as a proteolytically inactive pro-form, whereas in the serum of normal mice, substantially all of factor D is in the active form. Biochemical analysis suggested that MASP-1 may be able to convert complement factor D from its zymogen form into its enzymatically active form (**FIGURE 32**; Takahashi et al., *JEM* 207(1):29-37 (2010)). MASP-3 also cleaves pro-factor D zymogen and produce active factor D *in vitro* (**FIGURE 32**; Takahashi et al., *JEM* 207(1):29-37 (2010)). Factor D is present as an active enzyme in circulation in normal individuals, and MASP-1 and MASP-3, as well as HTRA-1, may be responsible for this activation. Furthermore, mice with combined MBL and ficolin deficiencies still produce normal levels of factor D and have a fully functional alternative pathway. Thus, these physiological functions of MASP-1 and MASP-3 do not necessarily involve lectins, and are thus unrelated to the lectin pathway. Recombinant mouse and human MASP-3 also appear to cleave factor B and support C3 deposition on *S. aureus in vitro* (**FIGURE 29**; Iwaki D. et al., *J Immunol* 187(7):3751-8 (2011)).

An unexpected physiological role for MASP-3 has emerged from recent studies of patients with 3MC syndrome (previously designated the Carnevale, Mingarelli, Malpuech, and Michels syndrome; OMIM # 257920). These patients display severe developmental abnormalities, including cleft palate, cleft lip, cranial malformations and mental retardation. Genetic analysis identified 3MC patients that were homozygous for a dysfunctional MASP-3 gene (Rooryck et al., *Nat Genet.* 43(3):197-203 (2011)). Another group of 3MC patients was found to be homozygous for a mutation in the MASP-1 gene that leads to the absence of functional MASP-1 and MASP-3 proteins. Yet another group of 3MC patients lacked a functional CL-11 gene. (Rooryck et al., *Nat Genet.* 43(3):197-203 (2011)). Thus, the CL-11

MASP-3 axis appears to play a role during embryonic development. The molecular mechanisms of this developmental pathway are unclear. It is unlikely, however, to be mediated by a conventional complement-driven process since individuals with deficiencies of common complement components C3 do not develop this syndrome. Thus, prior to the discovery of the instant inventors, as described herein, a functional role for MASP-3 in lectin-dependent complement activation was previously not established.

The structures of the catalytic fragment of MASP-1 and MASP-2 have been determined by X-ray crystallography. Structural comparison of MASP-1 protease domain with those of other complement proteases revealed the basis of its relaxed substrate specificity (Dobó et al., *J. Immunol* 183:1207-1214 (2009)). While the accessibility of the substrate binding groove of MASP-2 is restricted by surface loops (Harmat et al., *J Mol Biol* 342:1533-1546 (2004)), MASP-1 has an open substrate binding pocket which resembles that of trypsin rather than other complement proteases. A thrombin-like property of the MASP-1 structure is the unusually large 60 amino acid loop (loop B) which may interact with substrates. Another interesting feature of the MASP-1 structure is the internal salt bridge between the S1 Asp189 and Arg224. A similar salt bridge can be found in the substrate binding pocket of factor D, which can regulate its protease activity. C1s and MASP-2 have almost identical substrate specificities. Surprisingly, some of the eight surface loops of MASP-2, which determine the substrate specificities, have quite different conformations compared to those of C1s. This means that the two functionally related enzymes interact with the same substrates in a different manner. The structure of zymogen MASP-2 shows an inactive protease domain with disrupted oxyanion hole and substrate binding pocket (Gál et al., *J Biol Chem* 280:33435-33444 (2005)). Surprisingly, zymogen MASP-2 shows considerable activity on a large protein substrate, C4. It is likely that the structure of zymogen MASP-2 is quite flexible, enabling the transition between the inactive and the active forms. This flexibility, which is reflected in the structure, may play a role in the autoactivation process.

Northern blot analysis indicates that liver is the major source of MASP-1 and MASP-2 mRNA. Using a 5' specific cDNA probe for MASP-1, major MASP-1 transcript was seen at 4.8 kb and a minor one at approximately 3.4 kb, both present in human and mouse liver (Stover et al., *Genes Immunity* 4:374-84 (2003)). MASP-2 mRNA (2.6 kb) and MAp19 mRNA (1.0 kb) are abundantly expressed in liver tissue. MASP-3 is expressed in the liver, and also in many other tissues, including neuronal tissue (Lynch N. J. et al., *J Immunol* 174:4998-5006 (2005)).

A patient with a history of infections and chronic inflammatory disease was found to have a mutated form of MASP-2 that fails to form an active MBL–MASP complex (Stengaard-Pedersen et al., *N Engl J Med* 349:554-560 (2003)). Some investigators have determined that deficiency of MBL leads to a tendency to frequent infections in childhood (Super *et al.*, *Lancet* 2:1236-1239 (1989); Garred *et al.*, *Lancet* 346:941-943 (1995) and a decreased resistance to HIV infection (Nielsen *et al.*, *Clin Exp Immunol* 100:219-222 (1995); Garred *et al.*, *Mol Immunol* 33 (suppl 1):8 (1996)). However, other studies have not demonstrated a significant correlation of low MBL levels with increased infections (Egli et al., PLoS One. 8(1):e51983 (2013); Ruskamp et al., J Infect Dis. 198(11):1707-13 (2008); Israëls et al., Arch Dis Child Fetal Neonatal Ed. 95(6):F452-61 (2010)). While the literature is mixed, deficiency, or non-utilization, of MASP may have an adverse effect on an individual's ability to mount immediate, non-antibody-dependent defense against certain pathogens.

Supporting data for the new understanding, underscoring traditional assay conditions that are devoid of Ca^{++} and results obtained using a more physiological set of conditions that include Ca^{++}.

Several independent lines of strong experimental evidence are provided herein pointing to the conclusion that the lectin pathway activation route of complement activates complement via two independent effector mechanisms: i) LEA-2: a MASP-2-driven path that mediates complement-driven opsonisation, chemotaxis (Schwaeble et al., *PNAS* 108:7523-7528 (2011)), and cell lysis, and ii) LEA-1: a novel MASP-3-dependent activation route that initiates complement activation by generating the alternative pathway convertase C3bBb through cleavage and activation of factor B on activator surfaces, which will then catalyze C3b deposition and formation of the alternative pathway convertase C3bBb, which can result in cell lysis as well as microbial opsonization. In addition, as described herein, separate lectin-independent activation of factor B and/or factor D by MASP-1, MASP-3, or HTRA-1, or a combination of any the three, can also lead to complement activation via the alternative pathway.

A lectin pathway-dependent MASP-3-driven activation of the alternative pathway appears to contribute to the well-established factor D-mediated cleavage of C3b-bound factor B to achieve optimal activation rates for complement-dependent lysis through the terminal activation cascade to lyse bacterial cells through the formation of C5b-9 membrane attack complexes (MAC) on the cellular surface (**FIGURES 12-13**). This rate-limited event appears to require optimal coordination as it is defective in the absence of MASP-3 functional

activity as well as in the absence of factor D functional activity. As described in Examples 1-4 herein, the inventors discovered this MASP-3-dependent lectin pathway function when studying the phenotype of MASP-2 deficiency and MASP-2 inhibition in experimental mouse models of *N. menigitidis* infection. Gene-targeted, MASP-2-deficient mice and wild-type mice treated with antibody-based MASP-2 inhibitors were highly resistant to experimental *N. meningitidis* infection (see **FIGURES 6-10**). When the infectious dose was adjusted to give approximately 60% mortality in the wild-type littermates, all of the MASP-2-deficient or MASP-2-depleted mice cleared the infection and survived (see **FIGURE 6** and **FIGURE 10**). This extremely high degree of resistance was reflected in a significant increase of serum bactericidal activity in MASP-2-deficient or MASP-2-depleted mouse serum. Further experiments showed that this bactericidal activity was dependent on alternative pathway-driven bacterial lysis. Mouse sera deficient of factor B, or factor D, or C3 showed no bactericidal activity towards *N. meningitidis*, indicating that the alternative pathway is essential for driving the terminal activation cascade. A surprising result was that mouse sera deficient of MBL-A and MBL-C (both being the lectin-pathway recognition molecules that recognize *N. meningitidis*) as well as mouse sera deficient of the lectin pathway-associated serine proteases MASP-1 and MASP-3 had lost all bacteriolytic activity towards *N. meningitidis* (**FIGURE 13**). A recent paper (Takahashi M. et al., *JEM* 207: 29-37 (2010)) and work presented herein (**FIGURE 32**) demonstrate that MASP-1 can convert the zymogen form of factor D into its enzymatically active form and may in part explain the loss of lytic activity through the absence of enzymatically active factor D in these sera. This does not explain the lack of bactericidal activity in MBL-deficient mice since these mice have normal enzymatically active factor D (Banda et al., *Mol Imunol* 49(1-2):281-9 (2011)). Remarkably, when testing human sera from patients with the rare 3MC autosomal recessive disorder (Rooryck C, et al., *Nat Genet.* 43(3):197-203) with mutations that render the serine protease domain of MASP-3 dysfunctional, no bactericidal activity against *N. meningitidis* was detectable (n.b.: these sera have MASP-1 and factor D, but no MASP-3).

The hypothesis that human serum requires lectin pathway-mediated MASP-3-dependent activity to develop bactericidal activity is further supported by the observation that MBL-deficient human sera also fail to lyse *N. meningitidis* (**FIGURES 11-12**). MBL is the only human lectin-pathway recognition molecule that binds to this pathogen. Since MASP-3 does not auto-activate, the inventors hypothesize that the higher bacteriolytic activity in MASP-2-deficient sera could be explained by a favored activation of MASP-3 through MASP-1 since, in the absence of MASP-2, all lectin-pathway activation complexes that bind

to the bacterial surface will be loaded with either MASP-1 or MASP-3. Since activated MASP-3 cleaves both factor D **(FIGURE 32)** and factor B to generate their respective enzymatically active forms *in vitro* (**FIGURE 30** and Iwaki D., et al., *J. Immunol.*187(7):3751-3758 (2011)), the most likely function of MASP-3 is to facilitate the formation of the alternative pathway C3 convertase (i.e., C3bBb).

While the data for the lectin-dependent role are compelling, multiple experiments suggest that MASP-3 and MASP-1 are not necessarily obligated to function in a complex with lectin molecules. Experiments such as that shown in **FIGURE 28B** demonstrate the ability of MASP-3 to activate the alternative pathway (as demonstrated by C3b deposition on *S. aureus*) under conditions (i.e., the presence of EGTA) in which complexes with lectin would not be present. **FIGURE 28A** demonstrates that deposition under these conditions is dependent upon factor B, factor D, and factor P, all critical components of the alternative pathway. Addtionally, factor D activation by MASP-3 and MASP-1 (**FIGURE 32**), and factor B activation by MASP-3 (**FIGURE 30**) can occur *in vitro* in the absence of lectin. Finally, hemolysis studies of mouse erythrocytes in the presence of human serum demonstrate a clear role for both MBL and MASP-3 for cell lysis. However, the deficiency of MBL does not completely reproduce the severity of the deficiency of MASP-3, in contrast to what would be expected if all functional MASP-3 were complexed with MBL. Thus, the inventors do not wish to be constrained by the notion that all of the roles for MASP-3 (and MASP-1) demonstrated herein can be attributed solely to function associated with lectin.

The identification of the two effector arms of the lectin pathway, as well as the possible lectin-independent functions of MASP-1, MASP-3, and HTRA-1, represent novel opportunities for therapeutic interventions to effectively treat defined human pathologies caused by excessive complement activation in the presence of microbial pathogens or altered host cells or metabolic deposits. As described herein, the inventors have now discovered that in the absence of MASP-3 and in the presence of MASP-1, the alternative pathway is not activated on surface structures (see **FIGURES 15-16**, **28B**, **34-35A,B**, **38-39**). Since the alternative pathway is important in driving the rate-limiting events leading to bacterial lysis as well as cell lysis (Mathieson PW, et al., *J Exp Med* 177(6):1827-3 (1993)), our results demonstrate that activated MASP-3 plays an important role in the lytic activity of complement. As shown in **FIGURES 12-13**, **19-21**, **36-37**, and **39-40**, in serum of 3MC patients lacking MASP-3 but not MASP-1, the lytic terminal activation cascade of complement is defective. The data shown in **FIGURES 12** and **13** demonstrate a loss of bacteriolytic activity in absence of MASP-3 and/or MASP-1/MASP-3 functional activity.

Likewise, the loss of hemolytic activity in MASP-3-deficient human serum (**FIGURES 19-21**, **36-37** and **39-40**), coupled with the ability to reconstitute hemolysis by adding recombinant MASP-3 (**FIGURES 39-40**), strongly supports the conclusion that activation of the alternative pathway on target surfaces (which is essential to drive complement-mediated lysis) depends on the presence of activated MASP-3. Based on the new understanding of the lectin pathway detailed above, alternative pathway activation of target surfaces is thus dependent upon LEA-1, and/or lectin-independent activation of factor B and/or factor D, which is also mediated by MASP-3, and therefore, agents that block MASP-3-dependent complement activation will prevent alternative pathway activation on target surfaces.

The disclosure of the essential role of MASP-3-dependent initiation of alternative pathway activation implies that the alternative pathway is not an independent, stand-alone pathway of complement activation as described in essentially all current medical textbooks and recent review articles on complement. The current and widely held scientific view is that the alternative pathway is activated on the surface of certain particulate targets (microbes, zymosan, and rabbit erythrocytes) through the amplification of spontaneous "tick-over" C3 activation. However, the absence of any alternative pathway activation in sera of MASP-1 and MASP-3 double-deficient mice and human 3MC patient serum on both zymosan-coated plates and two different bacteria (*N. meningitidis* and *S. aureus*), and the reduction of hemolysis of erythrocytes in MASP-3-deficient sera from human and mouse indicate that initiation of alternative pathway activation on these surfaces requires functional MASP-3. The required role for MASP-3 may be either lectin-dependent or –independent, and leads to formation of the alternative pathway C3 convertase and C5 convertase complexes, i.e. C3bBb and C3bBb(C3b)n, respectively. Thus, the inventors here disclose the existence of a previously elusive initiation routes for the alternative pathway. This initiation route is dependent upon (i) LEA-1, a newly discovered activation arm of the lectin pathway, and/or (ii) lectin-independent roles of the proteins MASP-3, MASP-1, and HTRA-1.

3. <u>The use of MASP-3 inhibitory agents for the Treatment of Alternative Pathway-related Diseases and Conditions.</u>

As described herein, high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory antibodies (e.g., with a binding affinity of less than 500 pM) which have been shown to completely inhibit the alternative pathway in mammalian subjects such as rodents and non-primates at molar concentrations less than the concentration of the MASP-3 target (e.g., at a molar ratio of from about 1:1 to

about 2.5:1 (MASP-3 target to mAb) (see in Examples 11-21). As described in Example 11, a single dose administration of a high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory antibody, mAb 13B1, to mice led to near-complete ablation of systemic alternative pathway complement activity for at least 14 days. As further described in Example 12, in a study conducted in a well-established animal model associated with PNH it was demonstrated that mAb 13B1 significantly improved the survival of PNH-like red blood cells and protected PNH-like red blood cells significantly better than did C5 inhibition. As described in Example 13, it was further demonstrated that mAb 13B1 reduced the incidence and severity of disease in a mouse model of arthritis. The results in this example demonstrate that representative high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory mAbs 13B1, 10D12 and 4D5 are highly effective at blocking the alternative pathway in primates. Single dose administration of mAb 13B1, 10D12 or 4D5 to cynomolgus monkeys resulted in sustained ablation of systemic alternative pathway activity lasting for approximately 16 days. The extent of alternative pathway ablation in cynomolgus monkeys treated with high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory antibodies was comparable to that achieved by factor D blockade *in vitro* and *in vivo*, indicating complete blockade of factor D conversion by the MASP-3 inhibitory antibodies. Therefore, high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory mAbs have therapeutic utility in the treatment of patients suffering from diseases related to alternative pathway hyperactivity

Accordingly, in one aspect the invention provides methods of inhibiting the alternative pathway in a mammalian subject in need thereof comprising administering to the subject a composition comprising an isolated monoclonal antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof that specifically binds to the serine protease domain of human MASP-3 (amino acid residues 450 to 728 of SEQ ID NO:2) with high affinity (having a K_D of less than 500 pM), in an amount effective to inhibits alternative pathway complement activation in the subject. In some embodiments, the subject is suffering from an alternative pathway-related disease or disorder, (i.e., a disease or disorder related to alternative pathway hyperactivity), such as for example, paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria (PNH), age-related macular degeneration (AMD, including wet and dry AMD), ischemia-reperfusion injury, arthritis, disseminated intravascular coagulation, thrombotic microangiopathy (including hemolytic uremic syndrome (HUS), atypical hemolytic uremic syndrome (aHUS),thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura (TTP) or transplant-associated TMA), asthma, dense deposit disease, pauci-immune necrotizing crescentic glomerulonephritis, traumatic brain injury, aspiration pneumonia, endophthalmitis, neuromyelitis optica, Behcet's disease, multiple sclerosis, Guillain Barre Syndrome, Alzheimer's disease, Amylotrophic lateral

sclerosis (ALS), lupus nephritis, systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE), Diabetic retinopathy, Uveitis, Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD), C3 glomerulopathy, transplant rejection, Graft-versus-host disease (GVHD), hemodialysis, sepsis, Systemic inflammatory response syndrome (SIRS), Acute Respiratory Distress Syndrome (ARDS), ANCA vasculitis, Anti-phospholipid syndrome, Atherosclerosis, IgA Nephropathy and Myasthenia Gravis, as further described below.

A. THE ROLE OF MASP-3 IN PAROXYSMAL NOCTURNAL HEMOGLOBINURIA AND THERAPEUTIC METHODS USING MASP-3 INHIBITORY ANTIBODIES, OPTIONALLY IN COMBINATION with MASP-2 INHIBITORY AGENTS

Overview of PNH

Paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria (PNH), sometimes also referred to as Marchiafava-Micheli syndrome, is an acquired, potentially life-threatening disease of the blood. PNH may develop on its own, referred to as "primary PNH" or in the context of other bone marrow disorders such as aplastic anemia, referred to as "secondary PNH." The majority of cases are primary PNH. PNH is characterized by complement-induced destruction of red blood cells (hemolysis), low red blood cell counts (anemia), thrombosis and bone marrow failure. Laboratory findings in PNH show changes consistent with intravascular hemolytic anemia: low hemoglobin, raised lactate dehydrogenase, raised reticulocyte counts (immature red cells released by the bone marrow to replace the destroyed cells), raised bilirubin (a breakdown product of hemoglobin), in the absence of autoreactive RBC-binding antibodies as a possible cause.

The hallmark of PNH is the chronic complement-mediated hemolysis caused by the unregulated activation of terminal complement components, including the membrane attack complex, on the surface of circulating RBCs. PNH RBCs are subject to uncontrolled complement activation and hemolysis due to the absence of the complement regulators CD55 and CD59 on their surface (Lindorfer, M.A., et al., *Blood* 115(11):2283-91 (2010), Risitano, et al., Mini-Reviews in Medicinal Chemistry, 11:528-535 (2011)). CD55 and CD59 are abundantly expressed on normal RBCs and control complement activation. CD55 acts as a negative regulator of the alternative pathway, inhibiting the assembly of the alternative pathway C3 convertase (C3bBb) complex and accelerating the decay of preformed convertase, thus blocking the formation of the membrane attack complex (MAC). CD59 inhibits the complement membrane attack complex directly by binding the C5b678 complex and preventing C9 from binding and polymerizing.

While hemolysis and anemia are the dominant clinical features of PNH, the disease is a complex hematologic disorder that further includes thrombosis and bone marrow failure as part of the clinical findings (Risitano et al, Mini Reviews in Med Chem, 11:528-535 (2011)). At the molecular level, PNH is caused by the abnormal clonal expansion of hematopoietic stem cells lacking a functional PIG A gene. PIG A is an X-linked gene encoding a glycosyl-phosphatidyl inositol transferase required for the stable surface expression of GPI-anchored class A glycoproteins, including CD55 and CD59. For reasons that are presently under investigation, hematopoietic stem cells with a dysfunctional PIG A gene that arise as the result of spontaneous somatic mutations can undergo clonal expansion to the point where their progeny constitute a significant portion of the peripheral hematopoietic cell pool. While both erythrocyte and lymphocyte progeny of the mutant stem cell clone lack CD55 and CD59, only the RBCs undergo overt lysis after they enter the circulation.

Current treatment for PNH includes blood transfusion for anemia, anticoagulation for thrombosis and the use of the monoclonal antibody eculizumab (Soliris®), which protects blood cells against immune destruction by inhibiting the complement system (Hillmen P. et al., *N. Engl. J. Med.* 350(6):552-559 (2004)). Eculizumab (Soliris®) is a humanized monoclonal antibody that targets the complement component C5, blocking its cleavage by C5 convertases, thereby preventing the production of C5a and the assembly of MAC. Treatment of PNH patients with eculizumab has resulted in a reduction of intravascular hemolysis, as measured by lactate dehydrogenase (LDH), leading to hemoglobin stabilization and transfusion independence in about half of the patients (Risitano et al, Mini-Reviews in Medicinal Chemistry, 11(6) (2011)). While nearly all patients undergoing therapy with eculizumab achieve normal or almost normal LDH levels (due to control of intravascular hemolysis), only about one third of the patients reach a hemoglobin value about 11gr/dL, and the remaining patients on eculizumab continue to exhibit moderate to severe (i.e., transfusion-dependent) anemia, in about equal proportions (Risitano A.M. et al., *Blood* 113:4094-100 (2009)). As described in Risitano et al., Mini-Reviews in Medicinal Chemistry 11:528-535 (2011), it was demonstrated that PNH patients on eculizumab contained large amounts of C3 fragments bound to their PNH erythrocytes (while untreated patients did not). This finding lead to the recognition that in Soliris treated PNH patients, PNH RBCs that are no longer hemolyzed due to C5 blockade now can accumulate copious amounts of membrane-bound C3 fragments, which operate as opsonins, resulting in their entrapment in the reticuloendothelial cells through specific C3 receptors and subsequent extravascular hemolysis. Thus, while preventing intravascular hemolysis and the resulting sequelae,

eculizumab therapy simply diverts the disposition of these RBCs from intravascular to extravascular hemolysis, resulting in substantial residual untreated anemia in many patients (Risitano A.M. et al., *Blood* 113:4094-100 (2009)). Therefore, therapeutic strategies in addition to the use of eculizumab are needed for those patients developing C3-fragment-mediated extravascular hemolysis, because they continue to require red cell transfusions. Such C3 fragment targeting approaches have demonstrated utility in experimental systems (Lindorfer et al., *Blood* 115:2283-91, 2010).

Complement-initiating mechanisms in PNH

The causal link between defective surface expression of the negative complement regulators CD55 and CD59 in PNH, combined with the effectiveness of eculizumab in preventing intravascular hemolysis, clearly define PNH as a condition mediated by the complement system. While this paradigm is widely accepted, the nature of the events initiating complement activation, and the complement activation pathway(s) involved remain unresolved. Because CD55 and CD59 negatively regulate the terminal amplification steps in the complement cascade common to all complement initiation pathways, deficiency of these molecules will lead to exaggerated formation and membrane integration of membrane attack complexes, regardless of whether complement activation is initiated by the lectin pathway, by the classical pathway or by spontaneous turnover of the alternative pathway. Thus, in PNH patients, any complement activation events that lead to C3b deposition on the RBC surface can trigger subsequent amplification and pathological hemolysis (intravascular and/or extravascular) and precipitate a hemolytic crisis. A clear mechanistic understanding of the molecular events triggering hemolytic crisis in PNH patients has remained elusive. Because no complement initiating event is overtly evident in PNH patients undergoing a hemolytic crisis, the prevailing view is that complement activation in PNH may occur spontaneously owing to low level "tick-over" activation of the alternative pathway, which is subsequently magnified by inappropriate control of terminal complement activation due to lack of CD55 and CD59.

However, it is important to note that in its natural history, PNH usually develops or is exacerbated after certain events, such as an infection or an injury (Risitano, *Biologics* 2:205-222 (2008)), which have been shown to trigger complement activation. This complement activation response is not dependent on prior immunity of the host towards the inciting pathogen, and hence likely does not involve the classical pathway. Rather, it appears that this complement activation response is initiated by lectin binding to foreign or "altered self" carbohydrate patterns expressed on the surface of microbial agents or damaged host tissue.

Thus, the events precipitating hemolytic crisis in PNH are tightly linked to complement activation initiated via lectins. This makes it very likely that lectin activation pathways provide the initiating trigger that ultimately leads to hemolysis in PNH patients.

Using well-defined pathogens that activate complement via lectins as experimental models to dissect the activation cascades at the molecular level, we demonstrate that, depending on the inciting microbe, complement activation can be initiated by either LEA-2 or LEA-1, leading to opsonization and/or lysis. This same principle of dual responses (i.e., opsonization and/or lysis) to lectin initiation events will likely also apply to other types of infectious agents, or to complement activation by lectins following tissue injury to the host, or other lectin-driven complement activation events that may precipitate PNH. On the basis of this duality in the lectin pathway, we infer that LEA-2- and/or LEA-1-initiated complement activation in PNH patients promotes opsonization and/or lysis of RBCs with C3b and subsequent extravascular and intravascular hemolysis. Therefore, in the setting of PNH, inhibition of both LEA-1 and LEA-2 would be expected to address both intravascular and extravascular hemolysis, providing a significant advantage over the C5 inhibitor eculizumab.

It has been determined that exposure to S. pneumoniae preferentially triggers lectin-dependent activation of LEA-2, which leads to opsonization of this microbe with C3b. Since S. pneumonia is resistant to MAC-mediated lysis, its clearance from circulation occurs through opsonisation with C3b. This opsonization and subsequent removal from circulation is LEA-2-dependent, as indicated by compromised bacterial control in MASP-2-deficient mice and in mice treated with MASP-2 monoclonal antibodies (*PLOS Pathog.*, 8: e1002793. (2012)).

In exploring the role of LEA-2 in the innate host responses to microbial agents, we tested additional pathogens. A dramatically different outcome was observed when Neisseria meningitidis was studied as a model organism. N. meningitidis also activates complement via lectins, and complement activation is required for containment of N. meningitidis infections in the naïve host. However, LEA-2 plays no host protective functional role in this response: As shown in FIGURES 6 and 7, blockade of LEA-2 through genetic ablation of MASP-2 does not reduce survival following infection with N. meningitidis. To the contrary, LEA-2 blockade by MASP-2 ablation significantly improved survival (FIGURES 6 and 7) as well as illness scores (FIGURE 9) in these studies. LEA-2 blockade by administration of MASP-2 antibody yielded the same result (FIGURE 10), eliminating secondary or compensatory effects in the knockout-mouse strain as a possible cause. These favorable

outcomes in LEA-2-ablated animals were associated with a more rapid elimination of N. meningitidis from the blood (FIGURE 8). Also, as described herein, incubation of N. meningitidis with normal human serum killed N. meningitidis (FIGURE 11). Addition of a functional monoclonal antibody specific for human MASP-2 that blocks LEA-2, but not administration of an isotype control monoclonal antibody, may enhance this killing response. Yet, this process depends on lectins and at least a partially functional complement system, as MBL-deficient human serum or heat-inactivated human serum was unable to kill N. meningitidis (FIGURE 11). Collectively, these novel findings suggest that N. meningitidis infections in the presence of a functional complement system are controlled by a lectin-dependent but LEA-2-independent pathway of complement activation.

The hypothesis that LEA-1 may be the complement pathway responsible for lectin-dependent killing of N. meningitidis was tested using a serum specimen from a 3MC patient. This patient was homozygous for a nonsense mutation in exon 12 of the MASP-1/3 gene. As a result, this patient lacked a functional MASP-3 protein, but was otherwise complement sufficient (exon 12 is specific for the MASP-3 transcript; the mutation has no effect on MASP-1 function or expression levels) (see *Nat Genet* 43(3):197-203 (2011)). Normal human serum efficiently kills N. meningitidis, but heat-inactivated serum deficient in MBL (one of the recognition molecules for the Lectin pathway) and MASP-3-deficient serum were unable to kill N. meningitidis (FIGURE 12). Thus, LEA-1 appears to mediate N. meningitidis killing. This finding was confirmed using serum samples from knockout mouse strains. While complement containing normal mouse serum readily killed N. meningitidis, MBL-deficient or MASP-1/3-deficient mouse serum was as ineffective as heat-inactivated serum that lacks functional complement (FIGURE 13). Conversely, MASP-2-deficient serum exhibited efficient killing of N. meningitidis.

These findings provide evidence for a hitherto unknown duality in the lectin pathway by revealing the existence of separate LEA-2 and LEA-1 pathways of lectin-dependent complement activation. In the examples detailed above, LEA-2 and LEA-1 are non-redundant and mediate distinct, functional outcomes. The data suggest that certain types of lectin pathway activators (including, but not limited to S. pneumonia) preferentially initiate complement activation via LEA-2 leading to opsonization, while others (exemplified by N. meningitidis) preferentially initiate complement activation via LEA-1 and promote cytolytic processes. The data do not, however, necessarily limit LEA-2 to opsonization and LEA-1 to cytolytic processes, as both pathways in other settings can mediate opsonization and/or lysis.

In the context of lectin-dependent complement activation by N. meningitidis, LEA-2 and LEA-1 arms appear to compete with each other, as blockade of LEA-2 enhanced LEA-1-dependent lytic destruction of the organism in vitro (FIGURE 13). As detailed above, this finding can be explained by the increased likelihood of lectin MASP-1 complexes residing in close proximity to lectin MASP-3 complexes in the absence of MASP-2, which will enhance LEA-1 activation and thus promote more effective lysis of N. meningitides. Because lysis of N. meningitidis is the main protective mechanism in the naïve host, blockade of LEA-2 in vivo increases N. meningitidis clearance and leads to enhanced killing.

While the examples discussed above illustrate opposing effects of LEA-2 and LEA-1 with respect to outcomes following infection with N. meningitidis, there may be other settings where both LEA-2 and LEA-1 may synergize to produce a certain outcome. As detailed below, in other situations of pathological complement activation via lectins such as those present in PNH, LEA-2- and LEA-1-driven complement activation may cooperate in a synergistic manner to contribute to the overall pathology of PNH. In addition, as described herein, MASP-3 also contributes to the lectin-independent conversion of factor B and factor D, which can occur in the absence of Ca++, commonly leading to the conversion of C3bB to C3bBb and of pro-factor D to factor D, which may further contribute to the pathology of PNH.

Biology and expected functional activity in PNH

This section describes the inhibitory effects of LEA-2 and LEA-1 blockade on hemolysis in an *in vitro* model of PNH. The findings support the utility of LEA-2-blocking agents (including, but not limited to, antibodies that bind to and block the function of MASP-2) and LEA-1-blocking agents (including, but not limited to, antibodies that bind to and block the function of MASP-1-mediated activation of MASP-3, MASP-3, or both) to treat subjects suffering from one or more aspects of PNH, and also the use of inhibitors of LEA-2 and/or LEA-1, and/or MASP-3-dependent, lectin-independent complement activation (including MASP-2 inhibitors, MASP-3 inhibitors, and dual- or bispecific MASP-2/MASP-3 or MASP-1/MASP-2 inhibitors, and pan-specific MASP-1/MASP-2/MASP-3 inhibitors) to ameliorate the effects of C3-fragment-mediated extravascular hemolysis in PNH patients undergoing therapy with a C5-inhibitor such as eculizumab.

MASP-2 inhibitors to block opsonization and extravascular hemolysis of PNH RBCs through the reticuloendothelial system

As detailed above, PNH patients become anemic owing to two distinct mechanisms of RBC clearance from circulation: intravascular hemolysis via activation of the membrane

attack complex (MAC), and extravascular hemolysis following opsonization with C3b and subsequent clearance following complement receptor binding and uptake by the reticuloendothelial system. The intravascular hemolysis is largely prevented when a patient is treated with eculizumab. Because eculizumab blocks the terminal lytic effector mechanism that occurs downstream of both the complement-initiating activation event as well as the ensuing opsonization, eculizumab does not block extravascular hemolysis (Risitano A.M. et al., *Blood* 113:4094-100 (2009)). Instead, RBCs that would have undergone hemolysis in untreated PNH patients now can accumulate activated C3b proteins on their surface, which augments uptake by the reticuloendothelial system and enhances their extravascular hemolysis. Thus, eculizumab treatment effectively diverts RBC disposition from intravascular hemolysis to potential extravascular hemolysis. As a result, some eculizumab-treated PNH patients remain anemic. It follows that agents that block complement activation upstream and prevent the opsonization of PNH RBCs may be particularly suitable to block the extravascular hemolysis occasionally seen with eculizumab.

The microbial data presented here suggest that LEA-2 is often the dominant route for lectin-dependent opsonization. Furthermore, when lectin-dependent opsonization (measured as C3b deposition) was assessed on three prototypic lectin activation surfaces (mannan, FIGURE 17A; zymosan, FIGURE 17B, and S. pneumonia; FIGURE 17C), LEA-2 appears to be the dominant route for lectin-dependent opsonization under physiologic conditions (i.e., in the presence of Ca^{++} wherein all complement pathways are operational). Under these experimental conditions, MASP-2-deficient serum (which lacks LEA-2) is substantially less effective in opsonizing the test surfaces than WT serum. MASP-1/3-deficient serum (which lacks LEA-1) is also compromised, though this effect is much less pronounced as compared to serum lacking LEA-2. The relative magnitude of the contributions of LEA-2 and LEA-1 to lectin-driven opsonization is further illustrated in FIGURES 18A–18C. While the alternative pathway of complement has been reported to support opsonization of lectin activating surfaces in the absence of lectin pathway or classical pathway (Selander et al., *J Clin Invest* 116(5):1425-1434 (2006)), the alternative pathway in isolation (measured under Ca^{++}-free assay conditions) appears substantially less effective than the LEA-2- and LEA-1-initiated processes described herein. By extrapolation, these data suggest that opsonization of PNH RBCs may also be preferentially initiated by LEA-2 and, to a lesser extent, by LEA-1 (possibly amplified by the alternative pathway amplification loop), rather than the result of lectin-independent alternative pathway activation. Therefore, LEA-2 inhibitors may be expected to be most effective at limiting opsonization and preventing extravascular hemolysis

in PNH. However, recognition of the fact that lectins other than MBL, such as ficolins, bind to non-carbohydrate structures such as acetylated proteins, and that MASP-3 preferentially associates with H-ficolin (Skjoedt et al., *Immunobiol.* 215:921-931, 2010), leaves open the possibility of a significant role for LEA-1 in PNH-associated RBC opsonization as well. Therefore, LEA-1 inhibitors are expected to have additional anti-opsonization effects, and the combination of LEA-1 and LEA-2 inhibitors is expected to be optimal and mediate the most robust treatment benefit in limiting opsonization and extravascular hemolysis in PNH patients. Thus, LEA-2 and LEA-1 act additively or synergistically to promote opsonization, and a crossreactive or bispecific LEA-1/LEA-2 inhibitor is expected to be most effective at blocking opsonization and extravascular hemolysis in PNH.

Role of MASP-3 inhibitors in PNH

Using an *in vitro* model of PNH, we demonstrated that complement activation and the resulting hemolysis in PNH are indeed initiated by LEA-2 and/or LEA-1 activation, and that it is not an independent function of the alternative pathway. These studies used mannan-sensitized RBCs of various mouse stains, including RBCs from Crry-deficient mice (an important negative regulator of the terminal complement pathway in mice) as well as RBCs from CD55/CD59-deficient mice, which lack the same complement regulators that are absent in PNH patients). When mannan-sensitized Crry-deficient RBCs were exposed to complement-sufficient human serum, the RBCs effectively hemolysed at a serum concentration of 3% (FIGURE 19 and 20) while complement-deficient serum (HI: heat-inactivated) was not hemolytic. Remarkably, complement-sufficient serum where LEA-2 was blocked by addition of MASP-2 antibody had reduced hemolytic activity, and 6% serum was needed for effective hemolysis. Similar observations were made when CD55/CD59-deficient RBCs were tested (FIGURE 22). Complement-sufficient human serum supplemented with MASP-2 monoclonal antibody (i.e., serum where LEA-2 is suppressed) was about two-fold less effective than untreated serum in supporting hemolysis. Furthermore, higher concentrations of LEA-2-blocked serum (i.e., treated with antiMASP-2 monoclonal antibody) were needed to promote effective hemolysis of untreated WT RBCs compared to untreated serum (FIGURE 21).

Even more surprisingly, serum from a 3MC patient homozygous for a dysfunctional MASP-3 protein (and hence lacking LEA-1) was completely unable to hemolyze mannan-sensitized Crry-deficient RBCs (FIGURE 20 and FIGURE 21). A similar outcome was observed when unsensitized normal RBCs were used: As shown in FIGURE 21, LEA-1-defective serum isolated from a 3MC patient was completely ineffective at mediating

hemolysis. Collectively, these data indicate that whereas LEA-2 contributes significantly to the intravascular hemolysis response, LEA-1 is the predominant complement-initiating pathway leading to hemolysis. Thus, while LEA-2 blocking agents are expected to significantly reduce intravascular hemolysis of RBCs in PNH patients, LEA-1 blocking agents are expected to have a more profound effect and largely eliminate complement-driven hemolysis.

It should be noted that the serum of the LEA-1-deficient 3MC patient used in this study possessed a diminished but functional alternative pathway when tested under conventional alternative pathway assay conditions (FIGURE 15). This finding suggests that LEA-1 makes a greater contribution to hemolysis than alternative pathway activity as conventionally defined in this experimental setting of PNH. By inference, it is implied that LEA-1-blocking agents will be at least as effective as agents blocking other aspects of the alternative pathway in preventing or treating intravascular hemolysis in PNH patients.

Role of MASP-2 inhibitors in PNH

The data presented herein suggest the following pathogenic mechanisms for anemia in PNH: intravascular hemolysis due to unregulated activation of terminal complement components and lysis of RBC by formation of MAC, which is initiated predominantly, though not exclusively, by LEA-1, and extravascular hemolysis caused by opsonization of RBCs by C3b, which appears to be initiated predominately by LEA-2. While a discernible role for LEA-2 in initiating complement activation and promoting MAC formation and hemolysis is apparent, this process appears substantially less effective than LEA-1-initiated complement activation leading to hemolysis. Thus, LEA-2-blocking agents are expected to significantly reduce intravascular hemolysis in PNH patients, though this therapeutic activity is expected to be only partial. By comparison, a more substantial reduction in intravascular hemolysis in PNH patients is expected for LEA-1-blocking agents.

Extravascular hemolysis, a less dramatic, yet equally important mechanism of RBC destruction that leads to anemia in PNH, is primarily the result of opsonization by C3b, which appears to be predominantly mediated by LEA-2. Thus, LEA-2-blocking agents may be expected to preferentially block RBC opsonization and the ensuing extravascular hemolysis in PNH. This unique therapeutic activity of LEA-2-blocking agents is expected to provide a significant treatment benefit to all PNH patients as no treatment currently exists for those PNH patients who experience this pathogenic process.

LEA-2 inhibitors as adjunct treatment to LEA-1 inhibitors or terminal complement blocking agents

The data presented herein detail two pathogenic mechanisms for RBC clearance and anemia in PNH which can be targeted, separately or in combination, by distinct classes of therapeutic agents: the intravascular hemolysis initiated predominantly, though not exclusively, by LEA-1 and thus expected to be effectively prevented by a LEA-1-blocking agent, and extravascular hemolysis due to C3b opsonization driven predominantly by LEA-2, and thus effectively prevented by a LEA-2-blocking agent.

It is well documented that both intravascular and extravascular mechanisms of hemolysis lead to anemia in PNH patients (Risitano et al., *Blood* 113:4094-4100 (2009)). Therefore, it is expected that a LEA-1-blocking agent that prevents intravascular hemolysis in combination with a LEA-2 blocking agent that primarily prevents extravascular hemolysis will be more effective than either agent alone in preventing the anemia that develops in PNH patients. In fact, the combination of LEA-1- and LEA-2-blocking agents is expected to prevent all relevant mechanisms of complement initiation in PNH and thus block all symptoms of anemia in PNH.

It is also known that C5-blocking agents (such as eculizumab) effectively block intravascular hemolysis but do not interfere with opsonization. This leaves some anti-C5-treated PNH patients with substantial residual anemia due to extravascular hemolysis mediated by LEA-2 that remains untreated. Therefore, it is expected that a C5-blocking agent (such as eculizumab) that prevents intravascular hemolysis in combination with a LEA-2 blocking agent that reduces extravascular hemolysis will be more effective than either agent alone in preventing the anemia that develops in PNH patients.

Other agents that block the terminal amplification loop of the complement system leading to C5 activation and MAC deposition (including, but not limited to agents that block properdin, factor B or factor D or enhance the inhibitory activity of factor I, factor H or other complement inhibitory factors) are also expected to inhibit intravascular hemolysis. However, these agents are not expected to interfere with LEA-2-mediated opsonization in PNH patients. This leaves some PNH patients treated with such agents with substantial residual anemia due to extravascular hemolysis mediated by LEA-2 that remains untreated. Therefore, it is expected that treatment with such agents that prevent intravascular hemolysis in combination with a LEA-2-blocking agent that minimizes extravascular hemolysis will be more effective than either agent alone in preventing the anemia that develops in PNH patients. In fact, the combination of such agents and a LEA-2 blocking agent is expected to prevent all relevant mechanisms of RBC destruction in PNH and thus block all symptoms of anemia in PNH.

Use of LEA-1 and LEA-2 multiple, bispecific or pan-specific antibodies to treat PNH

As detailed above, the use of a combination of pharmacologic agents that individually block LEA-1 and LEA-2, and thus in combination block all complement activation events that mediate the intravascular as well as the extravascular hemolysis, is expected to provide the best clinical outcome for PNH patients. This outcome can be achieved for example, by co-administration of an antibody that has LEA-1-blocking activity together with an antibody that has LEA-2-blocking activity. In some embodiments, LEA-1- and LEA-2-blocking activities are combined into a single molecular entity, and that such entity with combined LEA-1- and LEA-2-blocking activity will effectively block intravascular as well as the extravascular hemolysis and prevent anemia in PNH. Such an entity may comprise or consist of a bispecific antibody where one antigen-combining site specifically recognizes MASP-1 and blocks LEA-1 and diminishes LEA-2 and the second antigen-combining site specifically recognizes MASP-2 and further blocks LEA-2. Alternatively, such an entity may consist of a bispecific monoclonal antibody where one antigen-combining site specifically recognizes MASP-3 and thus blocks LEA-1 and the second antigen-combining site specifically recognizes MASP-2 and blocks LEA-2. Such an entity may optimally consist of a bispecific monoclonal antibody where one antigen-combining site specifically recognizes both MASP-1 and MASP-3 and thus blocks LEA-1 and diminishes LEA-2 while the second antigen-combining site specifically recognized MASP-2 and further blocks LEA-2. Based on the similarities in the overall protein sequence and architecture, it can also be envisioned that a conventional antibody with two identical binding sites can be developed that specifically binds to MASP-1 and to MASP-2 and to MASP-3 in a functional manner, thus achieving functional blockade of LEA-1 and LEA-2. Such an antibody with pan-MASP inhibitory activity is expected to block both the intravascular as well as the extravascular hemolysis and thus effectively treat the anemia in PNH patients.

As described in Examples 11-21 herein, high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory antibodies have been generated which have therapeutic utility for inhibition of the alternative pathway in AP-related diseases or conditions, such as PNH.

Accordingly, in one embodiment, the present invention provides a method for treating a subject suffering from, or at risk for developing PNH comprising an effective amount of a high affinity monoclonal antibody or antigen binding fragment thereof as disclosed herein that binds to human MASP-3 and inhibits alternative pathway complement activation to treat or reduce the risk of PNH in the subject.

In one embodiment, the present invention provides a method for treating a subject suffering from, or at risk for developing paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria (PNH), comprising administering to the subject a pharmaceutical composition comprising an effective amount of a monoclonal antibody or antigen binding fragment thereof as disclosed herein that binds to human MASP-3 and inhibits alternative pathway complement activation to treat or reduce the risk of PNH in the subject, such as, wherein said antibody or antigen binding fragment thereof comprises (a) a heavy chain variable region comprising (i) VHCDR1 comprising SEQ ID NO:84, (ii) VHCDR2 comprising SEQ ID NO:86 or SEQ ID NO:275 and (iii) VHCDR3 comprising SEQ ID NO:88; and (b) a light chain variable region comprising (i) VLCDR1 comprising SEQ ID NO:142, SEQ ID NO:257, SEQ ID NO:258 or SEQ ID NO:259, (ii) VLCDR2 comprising SEQ ID NO:144 and (iii) VLCDR3 comprising SEQ ID NO:161. In some embodiments, the pharmaceutical composition increases the survival of red blood cells in the subject suffering from PNH. In some embodiments, wherein the subject suffering from or at risk for developing PNH exhibits one or more symptoms selected from the group consisting of (i) below normal levels of hemoglobin, (ii) below normal levels of platelets; (iii) above normal levels of reticulocytes, and (iv) above normal levels of bilirubin. In some embodiments, the pharmaceutical composition is administered systemically (e.g., subcutaneously, intra-muscularly, intravenously, intra-arterially or as an inhalant) to a subject suffering from, or at risk for developing PNH. In some embodiments, the subject suffering from or at risk for PNH has previously undergone, or is currently undergoing treatment with a terminal complement inhibitor that inhibits cleavage of complement protein C5. In some embodiments, the method further comprises administering to the subject a terminal complement inhibitor that inhibits cleavage of complement protein C5. In some embodiments, the terminal complement inhibitor is a humanized anti-C5 antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof. In some embodiments, the terminal complement inhibitor is eculizumab.

B. THE ROLE OF MASP-3 IN AGE-RELATED MACULAR DEGENERATION AND THERAPEUTIC METHODS USING MASP-3 INHIBITORY ANTIBODIES, OPTIONALLY IN COMBINATION WITH AND MASP-2 INHIBITORY AGENTS

Age related macular degeneration (AMD) is the leading cause of visual impairment and blindness in the elderly and accounts for up to 50% of cases of blindness in developed

countries. The prevalence of AMD is around 3% in adults and increases with age such that almost two-thirds of the population over 80 years of age will have some signs. It is estimated that over 1.75 million individuals in the United States have advanced AMD and the prevalence is increasing as the population ages and is expected to reach almost 3 million by 2020 (Friedman, D.S., et al., Arch. Ophthalmol. 122:564-572, 2004). AMD is an abnormality of the retinal pigment epithelium (RPE) that results in degeneration of the photoreceptors of the overlying central retina, or macula, and loss of central vision. Early and intermediate forms of AMD are characterized by progressive deposits of drusen, a yellowish material containing lipid, protein, lipoprotein, and cellular debris, in the subretinal space adjacent to the RPE, along with pigmentary irregularities in the retina. Advanced AMD consists of two clinical subtypes: non-neovascular geographic atrophic ('dry') AMD and neovascular exudative ('wet') AMD. Although dry AMD accounts for 80-90% of advanced AMD, the majority of sudden and severe vision loss occurs in patients with wet AMD. It is not known whether the two types of AMD represent differing phenotypes arising from similar pathologies or two distinct conditions. Currently no therapy has been approved by the United States Food and Drug Administration (FDA) to treat dry AMD. FDA-approved treatment options for wet AMD include intravitreal injections of anti-angiogenic drugs (ranibizumab, pegaptanib sodium, aflibercept), laser therapy, photodynamic laser therapy, and implantable telescope.

The etiology and pathophysiology of AMD are complex and incompletely understood. Several lines of evidence support the role of dysregulation of the complement system in the pathogenesis of AMD. Gene association studies have identified multiple genetic loci associated with AMD, including genes coding for a range of complement proteins, factors, and regulators. The strongest association is with polymorphisms in the complement factor H (CFH) gene, with the Y402H variant homozygotes having approximately 6-fold and heterozygotes approximately 2.5-fold increased risk for developing AMD compared to the non-risk genotype (Khandhadia, S., et al., *Immunobiol.* 217:127-146, 2012). Mutations in other complement pathway encoding genes have also been associated with increased or decreased risk of AMD, including complement factor B (CFB), C2, C3, factor I, and CFH-related proteins 1 and 3 (Khandhadia et al.). Immunohistochemical and proteomic studies in donor eyes from AMD patients showed that proteins of the complement cascade to be increased and localized in drusen (Issa, P.C., et al., Graefes. *Arch. Clin. Exp. Ophthalmol.* 249:163-174, 2011). Furthermore, AMD patients have increased systemic complement activation as measured in peripheral blood (Issa et al., 2011, supra).

The alternative pathway of complement appears to be more relevant than the classical pathway in the pathogenesis of AMD. C1q, the essential recognition component for activation of the classical pathway, was not detected in drusen by immunohistochemical analyses (Mullins et al., *FASEB J.* 14:835 846, 2000; Johnson et al., *Exp. Eye Res.* 70:441 449, 2000). Genetic association studies have implicated CFH and CFB genes. These proteins are involved in the alternative pathway amplification loop, with CFH being a fluid phase inhibitor and CFB being an activating protease component of the alternative pathway. The Y402H variant of CFH affects interaction with ligand binding, including binding with C-reactive protein, heparin, M protein, and glycosaminoglycans. This altered binding to ligands may reduce binding to cell surfaces, which in turn may lead to reduced factor I mediated degradation of C3b activation fragment and impaired regulation of the alternative C3 convertase, resulting in over activation of the alternative pathway (Khandhadia et al., 2012, *supra*). Variations in the CFB gene are associated with a protective effect for the development of AMD. A functional variant fB32Q had 4 times less binding affinity to C3b than the risk variant fB32R, resulting in a reduction in C3 convertase formation (Montes, T. et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci.* U.S.A. 106:4366-4371, 2009).

Complement-initiating mechanisms in AMD

The human genetic linkage studies discussed above suggest an important role for the complement system in AMD pathogenesis. Furthermore, complement activation products are abundantly present in drusen (Issa, P.C., et al., Graefes. *Arch. Clin. Exp. Ophthalmol.* 249:163-174, 2011), a hallmark pathologic lesion in both wet and dry AMD. However, the nature of the events initiating complement activation, and the complement activation pathway(s) involved remain incompletely understood.

It is important to note that drusen deposits are composed of cellular debris and oxidative waste products originating from the retina that accumulate beneath the RPE as the eye ages. In addition, oxidative stress appears to play an important role (Cai et al; *Front Biosci.*, 17:1976-95, 2012), and has been shown to cause complement activation in RPE (*J Biol Chem.*, 284(25):16939-47, 2009). It is widely appreciated that both oxidative stress and cellular or tissue injury activate the complement system lectins. For example, Collard et al. have demonstrated that endothelial cells exposed to oxidative stress trigger abundant complement deposition mediated by lectins (Collard CD et al., *Mol Immunol.*, 36(13-14):941-8, 1999; Collard C.D. et al., *Am J Pathol.*, 156(5):1549-56, 2000), and that blockade of lectin binding and lectin-dependent complement activation improves outcomes in experimental models of oxidative stress injury (Collard C.D. et al., *Am J Pathol.*,156(5):1549-56, 2000).

Thus, it appears likely that oxidative waste products present in drusen also activate complement via the lectins. By inference, lectin-dependent complement activation may play a pivotal role in AMD pathogenesis.

The role of the complement system has been evaluated in mouse models of AMD. In the light-damage mouse model, an experimental model for oxidative stress-mediated photoreceptor degeneration, knockout mice with an elimination of the classical pathway (C1qα-/- on a C57BL/6 background) had the same sensitivity to light damage compared to wild-type littermates, whereas elimination of complement factor D of the alternative pathway (CFD-/-) resulted in protection from light damage (Rohrer, B. et al., *Invest. Ophthalmol. Vis. Sci.* 48:5282-5289, 2007). In a mouse model of choroidal neovascularization (CNV) induced by laser photocoagulation of the Bruch membrane, knockout mice without complement Factor B (CFB-/-) were protected against CNV compared with wild-type mice (Rohrer, B. et al., *Invest. Ophthalmol. Vis. Sci.* 50:3056-3064, 2009). In the same model, intravenous administration of a recombinant form of complement Factor H targeted to sites of complement activation (CR2-fH) reduced the extent of CNV. This protective effect was observed whether CR2-fH was administered at the time of laser injury or therapeutically (after laser injury). A human therapeutic version of CR2-fH (TT30) was also efficacious in the murine CNV model (Rohrer, B. et al. *J. Ocul. Pharmacol. Ther.*,28:402-409, 2012). Because fB is activated by LEA-1, and because MASP-1 and MASP-3 contribute to the maturation of factor D, these findings imply that LEA-1 inhibitors may have therapeutic benefit in AMD patients. In addition, recent results reported from a Phase 2 study have shown that monthly intravitreal injection with Lampalizumab (previously referred to as FCFD4514S and anti-factor D, which is an antigen-binding fragment of a humanized monoclonal antibody directed against Factor D) reduced geographic atrophy area progression in patients with geographic atrophy secondary to AMD (Yaspan B.L. et al., *Sci Transl. Med.* 9, Issue 395, June 21, 2017).

Initial experimental studies in a rodent model of AMD using MBL-deficient mice did not support a critical role for the lectin pathway in pathogenic complement activation (Rohrer et al., *Mol Immunol.* 48:e1-8, 2011). However, MBL is only one of several lectins, and lectins other than MBL may trigger complement activation in AMD. Indeed, our previous work has shown that MASP-2, the rate-limiting serine protease that is critically required for lectin pathway function, plays a critical role in AMD. As described in US Patent No. 7,919,094 (assigned to Omeros Corporation), incorporated herein by reference, MASP-2-deficient mice and mice treated with MASP-2 antibody were protected in a mouse model of

laser-induced CNV, a validated preclinical model of wet AMD (Ryan et al., *Tr Am Opth Soc LXXVII*:707-745, 1979). Thus, inhibitors of LEA-2 are expected to effectively prevent CNV and improve outcomes in AMD patients.

Thus, in view of the above, LEA-1 and LEA-2 inhibitors are expected to have independent therapeutic benefit in AMD. In addition, LEA-1 and LEA-2 inhibitors used together may achieve additional treatment benefit compared to either agent alone, or may provide effective treatment for a wider spectrum of patient subsets. Combined LEA-1 and LEA-2 inhibition may be accomplished by co-administration of a LEA-1-blocking agent and a LEA-2-blocking agent. Optimally, LEA-1 and LEA-2 inhibitory function may be encompassed in a single molecular entity, such as a bispecific antibody composed of MASP-1/3 and a MASP-2-specific binding site, or a dual specificity antibody where each binding site can bind to and block MASP-1/3 or MASP-2.

In accordance with the foregoing, an aspect of the invention thus provides a method for inhibiting LEA-1 dependent complement activation to treat age-related macular degeneration (wet and dry forms) by administering a composition comprising a therapeutically effective amount of a MASP 1 inhibitory agent, a MASP 3 inhibitory agent, or a combination of a MASP 1/3 inhibitory agent, in a pharmaceutical carrier to a subject suffering from such a condition. The MASP 1, MASP 3, or MASP 1/3 inhibitory composition may be administered locally to the eye, such as by irrigation, intravitreal administration, or application of the composition in the form of a gel, salve or drops. Alternately, the MASP 1, MASP 3, or MASP 1/3 inhibitory agent may be administered to the subject systemically, such as by intra arterial, intravenous, intramuscular, inhalational, nasal, subcutaneous or other parenteral administration, or potentially by oral administration for non peptidergic agents. Administration may be repeated as determined by a physician until the condition has been resolved or is controlled.

In one embodiment, the method according to this aspect of the invention further comprises inhibiting LEA-2-dependent complement activation in a subject suffering from age-related macular degeneration, comprising administering a therapeutically effective amount of a MASP-2 inhibitory agent and a MASP-1, MASP-3 or MASP1/3 inhibitory agent to the subject in need thereof. As detailed above, the use of a combination of pharmacologic agents that individually block LEA-1 and LEA-2 is expected to provide an improved therapeutic outcome in AMD patients as compared to the inhibition of LEA-1 alone. This outcome can be achieved for example, by co-administration of an antibody that has LEA-1-blocking activity together with an antibody that has LEA-2-blocking activity. In some

embodiments, LEA-1- and LEA-2-blocking activities are combined into a single molecular entity, and that such entity with combined LEA-1- and LEA-2-blocking activity. Such an entity may comprise or consist of a bispecific antibody where one antigen-combining site specifically recognizes MASP-1 and blocks LEA-1 and the second antigen-combining site specifically recognizes MASP-2 and blocks LEA-2. Alternatively, such an entity may consist of a bispecific monoclonal antibody where one antigen-combining site specifically recognizes MASP-3 and thus blocks LEA-1 and the second antigen-combining site specifically recognizes MASP-2 and blocks LEA-2. Such an entity may optimally consist of a bispecific monoclonal antibody where one antigen-combining site specifically recognizes both MASP-1 and MASP-3 and thus blocks LEA-1 while the second antigen-combining site specifically recognized MASP-2 and blocks LEA-2.

The MASP 2 inhibitory composition may be administered locally to the eye, such as by irrigation, intravitreal injection or topical application of the composition in the form of a gel, salve or drops. Alternately, the MASP 2 inhibitory agent may be administered to the subject systemically, such as by intra arterial, intravenous, intramuscular, inhalational, nasal, subcutaneous or other parenteral administration, or potentially by oral administration for non peptidergic agents. Administration may be repeated as determined by a physician until the condition has been resolved or is controlled.

Application of the MASP-3 inhibitory compositions and optional MASP 2 inhibitory compositions of the present invention may be carried out by a single administration of the composition (e.g., a single composition comprising MASP-2 and MASP-3 inhibitory agents, or bispecific or dual inhibitory agents, or co-administration of separate compositions), or a limited sequence of administrations, for treatment of AMD. Alternatively, the composition may be administered at periodic intervals such as daily, biweekly, weekly, every other week, monthly or bimonthly over an extended period of time for treatment of AMD.

As described in Examples 11-21 herein, high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory antibodies have been generated which have therapeutic utility for inhibition of the alternative pathway in AP-related diseases or conditions, such as AMD.

Accordingly, in one embodiment, the present invention provides a method for treating a subject suffering from, or at risk for developing AMD comprising an effective amount of a high affinity monoclonal antibody or antigen binding fragment thereof as disclosed herein that binds to human MASP-3 and inhibits alternative pathway complement activation to treat or reduce the risk of AMD in the subject. In one embodiment, the present invention provides a method for treating a subject suffering from, or at risk for developing AMD comprising

administering to the subject a pharmaceutical composition comprising an effective amount of a monoclonal antibody or antigen binding fragment thereof as disclosed herein that binds to human MASP-3 and inhibits alternative pathway complement activation to treat or reduce the risk of AMD in the subject, such as, for example, wherein said antibody or antigen binding fragment thereof comprises (a) a heavy chain variable region comprising (i) VHCDR1 comprising SEQ ID NO:84, (ii) VHCDR2 comprising SEQ ID NO:86 or SEQ ID NO:275 and (iii) VHCDR3 comprising SEQ ID NO:88; and (b) a light chain variable region comprising (i) VLCDR1 comprising SEQ ID NO:142, SEQ ID NO:257, SEQ ID NO:258 or SEQ ID NO:259, (ii) VLCDR2 comprising SEQ ID NO:144 and (iii) VLCDR3 comprising SEQ ID NO:161.

C. THE ROLE OF MASP-3 IN ISCHEMIA REPERFUSION INJURY AND THERAPEUTIC METHODS USING MASP-3 INHIBITORY ANTIBODIES, OPTIONALLY IN COMBINATION WITH MASP-2 INHIBITORY AGENTS

Tissue ischemia is the basis for a wide spectrum of clinical disorders. Although timely restoration of blood flow is essential to preservation of ischemic tissue, it has long been recognized that reperfusion, which can occur either spontaneously or through therapeutic intervention, may lead to additional tissue injury, a phenomenon that has been termed ischemia reperfusion (I/R) injury (Eltzschig, H.K. and Tobias, E., *Nat. Med.* 17:1391-1401, 2011). I/R injury may affect single organs, such as the heart (acute coronary syndrome), kidney (acute kidney injury), intestine (intestinal I/R), and brain (stroke). I/R injury may also affect multiple organs, such as following major trauma and resuscitation (multiple organ failure), circulatory arrest (hypoxic brain injury, acute kidney injury), peripheral vascular disease, and sickle cell disease (acute chest syndrome, acute kidney injury). Major surgery may be associated with I/R injury, including cardiac surgery (acute heart failure after cardiopulmonary bypass), thoracic surgery (acute lung injury), peripheral vascular surgery (compartment syndrome), vascular surgery (acute kidney injury), and solid organ transplantation (acute graft failure). Currently there are no specific therapies that target I/R injury and there is a need for effective treatments in order to maximize the salvage of tissue in the ischemic zone and improve functional outcome in these common settings.

The pathophysiology of I/R injury is complex and characterized by a robust inflammatory response following reperfusion. Activation of the complement system has been implicated as an important component of I/R injury and inhibition of complement activity has

been efficacious in a variety of animal models (Diepenhorst, G.M.P. et al., *Ann. Surg.* 249:889-899, 2009). The relative importance of the classical, lectin, and alternative pathways in I/R injury is largely unsettled and may differ depending on the organs affected. Recently the availability of knockout mice deficient in specific complement proteins and pathway-specific inhibitors has generated data that implicate the lectin and alternative pathways in I/R injury.

The role of the alternative pathway in gastrointestinal I/R injury was investigated using factor D-deficient (-/-) and heterozygotus (+/-) mice (Stahl, G.L., et al. *Am. J. Pathol.* 162:449-455, 2003). Following transient gastrointestinal ischemia, intestinal and pulmonary injury were reduced but not prevented in factor D-deficient mice compared with heterozygotus mice, and addition of human factor D to Factor D (-/-) mice restored I/R injury. The same model was evaluated in C1q-deficient and MBL-A/C-deficient mice and the results showed that gastrointestinal I/R injury was independent of C1q and classical pathway activation, but that MBL and lectin pathway activation was required for intestinal injury (Hart, M.L., et al. *J. Immunol.* 174:6373-6380, 2005). Conversely, the C1q recognition molecule of the classical pathway was responsible for pulmonary injury after intestinal I/R (Hart, M.L., et al. *J. Immunol.* 174:6373-6380, 2005). One hypothesis is that activation of complement during I/R injury occurs through natural IgM binding to self-antigens present on the surface of ischemic (but not normal) tissue, for example non-muscle myosin heavy chains type II. In a mouse gastrointestinal I/R injury model, immunocomplexes from gut tissue were evaluated for the presence of initiating factors in the classical (C1q), lectin (MBL), or alternative (Factor B) pathways (Lee, H., et al., *Mol. Immunol.* 47:972-981, 2010). The results showed that C1q and MBL were detected whereas Factor B was not detected in these immunocomplexes, indicating involvement of the classical and lectin pathways but not the alternative pathway. In the same model, Factor B-deficient mice were not protected from local tissue injury, providing additional support for the lack of involvement of the alternative pathway. The role of the lectin pathway in gastrointestinal I/R injury was directly evaluated in MASP-2-deficient mice and the results showed that gastrointestinal injury was reduced in these mice compared with wide-type controls; treatment with MASP-2 monoclonal antibody was similarly protective (Schwaeble, W.J., et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci.* 108:7523-7528, 2011). Taken together, these results provide support for the involvement of the lectin pathway in gastrointestinal I/R injury, with conflicting data regarding involvement of the alternative pathway.

In a mouse myocardial I/R injury model, a pathogenic role was demonstrated for the lectin pathway as MBL-deficient mice were protected from myocardial injury whereas C1q-deficient and C2/fB-deficient mice were not (Walsh, M.C. et al., *J. Immunol.* 175:541-546, 2005). Protection from myocardial I/R injury was also observed in MASP-2-deficient mice (Schwaeble, W.J., et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci.* 108:7523-7528, 2011). Treatment of rats in a myocardial I/R model with monoclonal antibodies against rat MBL resulted in reduced post-ischemic reperfusion injury (Jordan, J.E., et al., *Circulation* 104:1413 18, 2001). In a study of myocardial infarction patients treated with angioplasty, MBL deficiency was associated with reduced 90-day mortality compared to MBL-sufficient counterparts (M Trendelenburg et al., *Eur Heart J.* 31:1181, 2010). Furthermore, myocardial infarction patients that develop cardiac dysfunction after angioplasty have approximately ~ three-fold higher MBL levels compared to patients with functional recovery (Haahr-Pedersen S., et al., *J Inv Cardiology*, 21:13, 2009). MBL antibodies also reduced complement deposition on endothelial cells in vitro after oxidative stress indicating a role for the lectin pathway in myocardial I/R injury (Collard, C.D., et al., *Am. J. Pathol.* 156:1549 56, 2000). In a mouse heterotopic isograft heart transplant model of I/R injury, the role of the alternative pathway was investigated using the pathway-specific fusion protein CR2-fH (Atkinson, C., et al., *J. Immunol.* 185:7007-7013, 2010). Systemic administration of CR2-fH immediately posttransplantation resulted in a reduction in myocardial I/R injury to an extent comparable to treatment with CR2-Crry, which inhibits all complement pathways, indicating that the alternative pathway is of key importance in this model.

In a mouse model of renal I/R injury, the alternative pathway was implicated as factor B-deficient mice were protected from a decline in renal function and tubular injury, compared with wild-type mice (Thurman, J.M., et al., *J. Immunol.* 170:1517-1523, 2003). Treatment with an inhibitory monoclonal antibody to factor B prevented complement activation and reduced murine renal I/R injury (Thurman, J.M., et al., *J. Am. Soc. Nephrol.* 17:707-715, 2006). In a bilateral renal I/R injury model, MBL-A/C-deficient mice were protected from kidney damage compared with wild-type mice and recombinant human MBL reversed the protective effect in MBL-A/C-deficient mice, implicating a role for MBL in this model (Moller-Kristensen, M., et al., *Scand. J. Immunol.* 61:426-434, 2005). In a rat unilateral renal I/R injury model, inhibition of MBL with a monoclonal antibody to MBL-A preserved renal function after I/R (van der Pol, P., et al., *Am. J. Transplant.* 12:877-887, 2010). Interestingly, the role of MBL in this model did not appear to involve activation of the terminal complement components, as treatment with a C5 antibody was ineffective in preventing renal

injury. Rather, MBL appeared to have a direct toxic effect on tubular cells, as human proximal tubular cells incubated with MBL *in vitro* internalized MBL with subsequent cellular apoptosis. In a swine model of renal I/R, Castellano G. et al., (*Am J Pathol,* 176(4):1648-59, 2010), tested a C1 inhibitor, which irreversibly inactivates C1r and C1s proteases in the classical pathway and also MASP-1 and MASP-2 proteases in MBL complexes of the lectin pathway, and found that C1 inhibitor reduced complement deposition in peritubular capillaries and glomerulus and reduced tubular damage.

The alternative pathway appears to be involved in experimental traumatic brain injury as factor B-deficient mice had reduced systemic complement activation as measured by serum C5a levels and reduced posttraumatic neuronal cell death compared with wide-type mice (Leinhase, I., et al., *BMC Neurosci.* 7:55-67, 2006). In human stroke, complement components C1q, C3c, and C4d were detected by immunohistochemical staining in ischemic lesions, suggesting activation via the classical pathway (Pedersen, E.D., et al., *Scand. J. Immunol.* 69:555-562, 2009). Targeting of the classical pathway in animal models of cerebral ischemia has yielded mixed results, with some studies demonstrating protection while others showing no benefit (Arumugam, T.V., et al., *Neuroscience* 158:1074-1089, 2009). Experimental and clinical studies have provided strong evidence for lectin pathway involvement. In experimental stroke models, deficiency of either MBL or MASP-2 results in reduced infarct sizes compared to wild-type mice (Cervera A, et al.; *PLoS One* 3;5(2):e8433, 2010; Osthoff M. et al., *PLoS One*, 6(6):e21338, 2011). Furthermore, stroke patients with low levels of MBL have a better prognosis compared to their MBL-sufficient counterpart (Osthoff M. et al., *PLoS One*, 6(6):e21338, 2011).

In a baboon model of cardiopulmonary bypass, treatment with a factor D monoclonal antibody inhibited systemic inflammation as measured by plasma levels of C3a, sC5b-9, and IL-6, and reduced myocardial tissue injury, indicating involvement of the alternative pathway in this model (Undar, A., et al., *Ann. Thorac. Surg.* 74:355-362, 2002).

Thus, depending on the organ affected by I/R, all three pathways of complement can contribute to pathogenesis and adverse outcomes. Based on the experimental and clinical findings detailed above, LEA-2 inhibitors are expected to be protective in most settings of I/R. Lectin-dependent activation of LEA-1 may cause complement activation via the alternative pathway at least in some settings. In addition, LEA-2-initiated complement activation may be further amplified by the alternative pathway amplification loop and thus exacerbate I/R-related tissue injury. Thus, LEA-1 inhibitors are expected to provide

additional or complementary treatment benefits in patients suffering from an ischemia-related condition.

In view of the above, LEA-1 and LEA-2 inhibitors are expected to have independent therapeutic benefits in treating, preventing or reducing the severity of ischemia-reperfusion related conditions. In addition, LEA-1 and LEA-2 inhibitors used together may achieve additional treatment benefits compared to either agent alone. An optimally effective treatment for an I/R-related condition therefore comprises active pharmaceutical ingredients that, alone or in combination, block both LEA-1 and LEA-2. Combined LEA-1 and LEA-2 inhibition may be accomplished by co-administration of a LEA-1 blocking agent and a LEA-2 blocking agent. Preferentially, LEA-1 and LEA-2 inhibitory function may be encompassed in a single molecular entity, such as a bispecific antibody composed of MASP-1/3 and a MASP-2-specific binding site, or a dual specificity antibody where each binding site can bind to and block MASP-1/3 or MASP-2.

In accordance with the foregoing, an aspect of the invention thus provides a method for inhibiting LEA-1 dependent complement activation for treating, preventing or reducing the severity of ischemia reperfusion injuries by administering a composition comprising a therapeutically effective amount of a LEA-1 inhibitory agent comprising a MASP 1 inhibitory agent, a MASP 3 inhibitory agent, or a combination of a MASP 1/3 inhibitory agent, in a pharmaceutical carrier to a subject experiencing ischemic reperfusion. The MASP 1, MASP 3, or MASP 1/3 inhibitory composition may be administered to the subject by intra arterial, intravenous, intracranial, intramuscular, subcutaneous, or other parenteral administration, and potentially orally for non peptidergic inhibitors, and most suitably by intra arterial or intravenous administration. Administration of the LEA-1 inhibitory compositions of the present invention suitably commences immediately after or as soon as possible after an ischemia reperfusion event. In instances where reperfusion occurs in a controlled environment (e.g., following an aortic aneurism repair, organ transplant or reattachment of severed or traumatized limbs or digits), the LEA-1 inhibitory agent may be administered prior to and/or during and/or after reperfusion. Administration may be repeated periodically as determined by a physician for optimal therapeutic effect.

In some embodiments, the methods are used to treat or prevent an ischemia-reperfusion injury associated with at least one of aortic aneurysm repair, cardiopulmonary bypass, vascular reanastomosis in connection with organ transplants and/or extremity/digit replantation, stroke, myocardial infarction, and hemodynamic resuscitation following shock and/or surgical procedures.

In some embodiments, the methods are used to treat or prevent an ischemia-reperfusion injury in a subject that is about to undergo, is undergoing, or has undergone an organ transplant. In some embodiments, the methods are used to treat or prevent an ischemica-reperfusion injury in a subject that is about to undergo, is undergoing, or has undergone an organ transplant, provided that the organ transplant is not a kidney transplant.

In one embodiment, the method according to this aspect of the invention further comprises inhibiting LEA-2-dependent complement activation in a subject experiencing ischemic reperfusion, comprising administering a therapeutically effective amount of a MASP-2 inhibitory agent and a MASP-1, MASP-3, or MASP-1/3 inhibitory agent to the subject. As detailed above, the use of a combination of pharmacologic agents that individually block LEA-1 and LEA-2, is expected to provide an improved therapeutic outcome in treating, preventing, or reducing the severity of ischemia reperfusion injuries as compared to the inhibition of LEA-1 alone. This outcome can be achieved for example, by co-administration of an antibody that has LEA-1-blocking activity together with an antibody that has LEA-2-blocking activity. In some embodiments, LEA-1- and LEA-2-blocking activities are combined into a single molecular entity, and that such entity with combined LEA-1- and LEA-2-blocking activity. Such an entity may comprise or consist of a bispecific antibody where one antigen-combining site specifically recognizes MASP-1 and blocks LEA-1 and the second antigen-combining site specifically recognizes MASP-2 and blocks LEA-2. Alternatively, such an entity may consist of a bispecific monoclonal antibody where one antigen-combining site specifically recognizes MASP-3 and thus blocks LEA-1 and the second antigen-combining site specifically recognizes MASP-2 and blocks LEA-2. Such an entity may optimally consist of a bispecific monoclonal antibody where one antigen-combining site specifically recognizes both MASP-1 and MASP-3 and thus blocks LEA-1 while the second antigen-combining site specifically recognized MASP-2 and blocks LEA-2.

The MASP 2 inhibitory composition may be administered to a subject in need thereof by intra arterial, intravenous, intracranial, intramuscular, subcutaneous, or other parenteral administration, and potentially orally for non peptidergic inhibitors, and most suitably by intra arterial or intravenous administration. Administration of the MASP-2 inhibitory compositions of the present invention suitably commences immediately after or as soon as possible after an ischemia reperfusion event. In instances where reperfusion occurs in a controlled environment (e.g., following an aortic aneurism repair, organ transplant or reattachment of severed or traumatized limbs or digits), the MASP-2 inhibitory agent may be

administered prior to and/or during and/or after reperfusion. Administration may be repeated periodically as determined by a physician for optimal therapeutic effect.

Application of the MASP-3 inhibitory compositions and optional MASP 2 inhibitory compositions of the present invention may be carried out by a single administration of the composition (e.g., a single composition comprising MASP-2 and MASP-3 inhibitory agents, or bispecific or dual inhibitory agents, or co-administration of separate compositions), or a limited sequence of administrations, for treatment or prevention of ischemia reperfusion injuries. Alternatively, the composition may be administered at periodic intervals such as daily, biweekly, weekly, every other week, monthly or bimonthly over an extended period of time for treatment of a subject experiencing ischemic reperfusion.

As described in Examples 11-21 herein, high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory antibodies have been generated which have therapeutic utility for inhibition of the alternative pathway in AP-related diseases or conditions, such in a subject experiencing ischemic reperfusion.

Accordingly, in one embodiment, the present invention provides a method for treating a subject suffering from, or at risk for developing ischemia-reperfusion comprising an effective amount of a high affinity monoclonal antibody or antigen binding fragment thereof as disclosed herein that binds to human MASP-3 and inhibits alternative pathway complement activation to treat or reduce the risk of tissue injury associated with ischemia-reperfusion in the subject.

D. THE ROLE OF MASP-3 IN INLAMMATORY AND NON-INFLAMMATORY ARTHRITIDES AND THERAPEUTIC METHODS USING MASP-3 INHIBITORY ANTIBODIES, OPTIONALLY IN COMBINATION WITH AND MASP-2 INHIBITORY AGENTS

Rheumatoid arthritis (RA) is a chronic inflammatory disease of synovial joints that may also have systemic manifestations. RA affects approximately 1% of the world population, with women being two to three times more likely to be afflicted. Joint inflammation manifests in swelling, pain, and stiffness. As the disease progresses there may be joint erosion and destruction, resulting in impaired range of motion and deformities. Treatment goals in RA include prevention or control of joint damage, prevention of loss of joint function and disease progression, relief of symptoms and improvement in quality of life, and achievement of drug-free remission. Pharmacological treatment of RA includes disease-modifying anti-rheumatic drugs (DMARDs), analgesics, and anti-inflammatory agents

(glucocorticoids and non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs). DMARDs are the most important treatment because they can induce durable remissions and delay or halt the progression of joint destruction, which is irreversible. Traditional DMARDs include small molecules such as methotrexate, sulfasalazine, hydroxychloroquine, gold salts, leflunomide, D-penicillamine, cyclosporine, and azathioprine. If traditional DMARDs are inadequate to control the disease then several biologic agents targeting inflammatory cells or mediators are available treatment options, such as tumor necrosis factor inhibitors (etanercept, infliximab, adalimumab, certolizumab pegol, and golimumab), cytokine antagonists (anakinra and tocilizumab), rituximab, and abatacept.

Although adaptive immunity is clearly central to RA pathogenesis as evidenced by genetic association with T-cell activation genes and the presence of autoantibodies, innate immune mechanisms have also been implicated (McInnes, I.B. and Schett, G. *New Engl. J. Med.* 365:2205-2219, 2011). In human RA, synovial fluid levels of the alternative pathway cleavage fragment Bb were several fold higher than samples from patients with crystal-induced arthritis or degenerative joint disease, implicating preferential activation of the alternative pathway in RA patients (Brodeur, J.P., et al., *Arthritis Rheum.* 34:1531-1537, 1991). In the experimental anti-type II collagen antibody-passive transfer model of arthritis, factor B-deficient mice had decreased inflammation and joint damage compared with wild-type mice, whereas C4-deficient mice had similar disease activity as wild-type mice, indicating the requirement for the alternative pathway and not the classical pathway in this model (Banda, N.K. et al., *J. Immunol.* 177:1904-1912, 2006). In the same experimental model of collagen antibody-induced arthritis (CAIA), mice with only classical pathway active or only lectin pathway active were not capable of developing arthritis (Banda, N.K. et al., *Clin. Exp. Immunol.* 159:100-108, 2010). Data from this study suggested that either the classical or lectin pathways were capable of activating low levels of C3 *in vitro*. However, in the absence of the alternative pathway amplification loop, the level of joint deposition of C3 was inadequate to produce clinical disease. A key step in the activation of the alternative pathway is conversion of the zymogen of factor D (pro-factor D) to mature factor D, which is mediated by MASP-1 and/or MASP-3 (Takahashi, M., et al., *J. Exp. Med.* 207:29-37, 2010) and/or HTRA1 (Stanton et al., Evidence That the HTRA1 Interactome Influences Susceptibility to Age-Related Macular Degeneration, presented at The Association for Research in Vision and Ophthalmology 2011 conference on May 4, 2011). The role of MASP-1/3 was evaluated in murine CAIA and the results showed that MASP-1/3 deficient mice were protected from arthritis compared with wild-type mice (Banda, N.K., et al., *J.*

Immunol. 185:5598-5606, 2010). In MASP-1/3-deficient mice, pro-factor D but not mature factor D was detected in serum during the evolution of CAIA, and the addition of human factor D *in vitro* reconstituted C3 activation and C5a generation using sera from these mice. In contrast, in a murine model of the effector phase of arthritis, C3-deficient mice developed very mild arthritis compared to WT mice while factor B-deficient mice still developed arthritis, indicating independent contribution of both the classical/lectin and alternative pathways (Hietala, M.A. et al., *Eur. J. Immunol.* 34:1208-1216, 2004). In the K/BxN T cell receptor transgenic mouse model of inflammatory arthritis, mice lacking C4 or C1q developed arthritis similar to wild-type mice whereas mice lacking factor B either did not develop arthritis or had mild arthritis, demonstrating the requirement for the alternative pathway and not the classical pathway in this model (Ji H. et al., *Immunity* 16:157-168, 2002). In the K/BxN model, mice lacking MBL-A were not protected from serum-induced arthritis, but as the role of MBL-C was not investigated, a potential role for the lectin pathway could not be eliminated (Ji et al., 2002, *supra*).

Two research groups have independently proposed that lectin-dependent complement activation promotes inflammation in RA patients via interaction of MBL with specific IgG glycoforms (Malhotra et al., *Nat. Med.* 1:237 243, 1995; Cuchacovich et al., *J. Rheumatol.* 23:44 51, 1996). It is noted that rheumatoid conditions are associated with a marked increase in IgG glycoforms that lack galactose (referred to as IgG0 glycoforms) in the Fc region of the molecule (Rudd et al., *Trends Biotechnology* 22:524 30, 2004). The percentage of IgG0 glycoforms increases with disease progression of rheumatoid conditions, and returns to normal when patients go into remission. In vivo, IgG0 is deposited on synovial tissue and MBL is present at increased levels in synovial fluid in individuals with RA. Aggregated agalactosyl IgG (IgG0) associated with RA can bind MBL and therefore can initiate lectin-dependent complement activation via LEA-1 and/or LEA-2. Furthermore, results from a clinical study looking at allelic variants of MBL in RA patients suggest that MBL may have an inflammatory enhancing role in the disease (Garred et al., *J. Rheumatol.* 27:26 34, 2000). Therefore, the lectin-dependent complement activation via LEA-1 and/or LEA-2 may play an important role in the pathogenesis of RA.

Complement activation also plays in important role in juvenile rheumatoid arthritis (Mollnes, T.E., et al., *Arthritis Rheum.* 29:1359 64, 1986). Similar to adult RA, in juvenile rheumatoid arthritis, elevated serum and synovial fluid levels of alternative pathway complement activation product Bb compared to C4d (a marker for classical or LEA-2 activation), indicate that complement activation is mediated predominantly by LEA-1 (El

Ghobarey, A.F. et al., *J. Rheumatology* 7:453 460, 1980; Agarwal, A., et al., *Rheumatology* 39:189 192, 2000).

Similarly, complement activation plays an important role in psoriatic arthritis. Patients with this condition have increased complement activation products in their circulation, and their red blood cells appear to have lower levels of the complement regulator CD59 (Triolo,. *Clin Exp Rheumatol*., 21(2):225-8, 2003). Complement levels are associated with disease activity, and have a high predictive value to determine treatment outcomes (Chimenti at al., *Clin Exp Rheumatol*., 30(1):23-30, 2012). In fact, recent studies suggest that the effect of anti-TNF therapy for this condition is attributable to complement modulation (Ballanti et al., *Autoimmun Rev*., 10(10):617-23, 2011). While the precise role of complement in psoriatic arthritis has not been determined, the presence of C4d and Bb complement activation products in the circulation of these patients suggests an important role in pathogenesis. On the basis of the products observed, it is believed that LEA-1, and possibly also LEA-2 are responsible for pathologic complement activation in these patients.

Osteoarthritis (OA) is the most common form of arthritis, affecting over 25 million people in the United States. OA is characterized by breakdown and eventual loss of joint cartilage, accompanied by new bone formation and synovial proliferation, leading to pain, stiffness, loss of joint function, and disability. Joints that are frequently affected by OA are hands, neck, lower back, knees and hips. The disease is progressive and current treatments are for symptomatic pain relief and do not alter the natural history of disease. The pathogenesis of OA is unclear, but a role for complement has been implicated. In a proteomic and transcriptomic analyses of synovial fluid from patients with OA, several components of complement were aberrantly expressed compared to samples from healthy individuals, including classical (C1s and C4A) and alternative (factor B) pathways, and also C3, C5, C7, and C9 (Wang, Q., et al., *Nat. Med.* 17:1674-1679, 2011). Moreover, in a mouse model of OA induced by medial meniscectomy, C5-deficient mice had less cartilage loss, osteophyte formation and synovitis than C5-positive mice, and treatment of wild-type mice with CR2-fH, a fusion protein that inhibits the alternative pathway, attenuated the development of OA (Wang et al., 2011 *supra*).

Ross River virus (RRV) and chikungunya virus (CHIKV) belong to a group of mosquito-borne viruses that can cause acute and persistent arthritis and myositis in humans. In addition to causing endemic disease, these viruses can cause epidemics that involve millions of infected individuals. The arthritis is believed to be initiated by viral replication and induction of host inflammatory response in the joint and the complement system has been

invoked as a key component in this process. Synovial fluid from humans with RRV-induced polyarthritis contains higher levels of C3a than synovial fluid from humans with OA (Morrison, T.E., et al., *J. Virol.* 81:5132-5143, 2007). In a mouse model of RRV infection, C3-deficient mice developed less severe arthritis compared with wild-type mice, implicating the role of complement (Morrison et al., 2007, *supra*). The specific complement pathway involved was investigated and mice with inactivated lectin pathway (MBL-A-/- and MBL-C-/-) had attenuated arthritis compared with wide-type mice. In contrast, mice with inactivated classical pathway (C1q-/-) or alternative pathway (factor B-/-) developed severe arthritis, indicating that the lectin pathway initiated by MBL had an essential role in this model (Gunn, B.M., et al., *PLoS Pathog.* 8:e1002586, 2012). Because arthritides involve damage to the joints, the initial joint damage caused by various etiologies may trigger a secondary wave of complement activation via LEA-2. In support of this concept, our previous work has demonstrated that MASP-2 KO mice have reduced joint injury compared to WT mice in the collagen-induced model of RA.

In view of the body of evidence detailed above, LEA-1 and LEA-2 inhibitors, alone or in combination, are expected to be therapeutically useful for the treatment of arthritides. An optimally effective treatment for arthritides may therefore comprise active pharmaceutical ingredients that, alone or in combination, can block both LEA-1 and LEA-2. Combined LEA-1 and LEA-2 inhibition may be accomplished by co-administration of an LEA-1 blocking agent and a LEA2 blocking agent. Preferentially, LEA-1 and LEA-2 inhibitory function may be encompassed in a single molecular entity, such as a bispecific antibody composed of MASP-1/3 and a MASP-2-specific binding site, or a dual specificity antibody where each binding site can bind to and block MASP-1/3 or MASP-2.In accordance with the foregoing, an aspect of the invention thus provides a method for inhibiting LEA-1 dependent complement activation for treating, preventing, or reducing the severity of inflammatory or non-inflammatory arthritides, including osteoarthritis, rheumatoid arthritis, juvenile rheumatoid arthritis and psoriatic arthritis, by administering a composition comprising a therapeutically effective amount of a LEA-1 inhibitory agent comprising a MASP-1 inhibitory agent, a MASP-3 inhibitory agent, or a combination of a MASP 1/3 inhibitory agent, in a pharmaceutical carrier to a subject suffering from, or at risk for developing, inflammatory or non-inflammatory arthritides. The MASP-1, MASP-3, or MASP 1/3 inhibitory composition may be administered to the subject systemically, such as by intra arterial, intravenous, intramuscular, subcutaneous, or other parenteral administration, or by oral administration. Alternatively, administration may be by local delivery, such as by intra-

articular injection. The LEA-1 inhibitory agent may be administered periodically over an extended period of time for treatment or control of a chronic condition, or may be by single or repeated administration in the period before, during and/or following acute trauma or injury, including surgical procedures performed on the joint.

In one embodiment, the method according to this aspect of the invention further comprises inhibiting LEA-2-dependent complement activation in a subject suffering from, or at risk for developing, inflammatory or non-inflammatory arthritides (including osteoarthritis, rheumatoid arthritis, juvenile rheumatoid arthritis and psoriatic arthritis), by administering a therapeutically effective amount of a MASP-2 inhibitory agent and a MASP-1, MASP-3, or MASP1/3 inhibitory agent to the subject. As detailed above, the use of a combination of pharmacologic agents that individually block LEA-1 and LEA-2, is expected to provide an improved therapeutic outcome in treating or preventing arthritides as compared to the inhibition of LEA-1 alone. This outcome can be achieved for example, by co-administration of an antibody that has LEA-1-blocking activity together with an antibody that has LEA-2-blocking activity. In some embodiments, LEA-1- and LEA-2-blocking activities are combined into a single molecular entity, and that such entity with combined LEA-1- and LEA-2-blocking activity. Such an entity may comprise or consist of a bispecific antibody where one antigen-combining site specifically recognizes MASP-1 and blocks LEA-1 and the second antigen-combining site specifically recognizes MASP-2 and blocks LEA-2. Alternatively, such an entity may consist of a bispecific monoclonal antibody where one antigen-combining site specifically recognizes MASP-3 and thus blocks LEA-1 and the second antigen-combining site specifically recognizes MASP-2 and blocks LEA-2. Such an entity may optimally consist of a bispecific monoclonal antibody where one antigen-combining site specifically recognizes both MASP-1 and MASP-3 and thus blocks LEA-1 while the second antigen-combining site specifically recognized MASP-2 and blocks LEA-2.

The MASP-2 inhibitory composition may be administered to the subject in need thereof systemically, such as by intra arterial, intravenous, intramuscular, subcutaneous, or other parenteral administration, or potentially by oral administration for non peptidergic inhibitors. Alternatively, administration may be by local delivery, such as by intra-articular injection. The MASP-2 inhibitory agent may be administered periodically over an extended period of time for treatment or control of a chronic condition, or may be by single or repeated administration in the period before, during and/or following acute trauma or injury, including surgical procedures performed on the joint.

Application of the MASP-3 inhibitory compositions and optional MASP 2 inhibitory compositions of the present invention may be carried out by a single administration of the composition (e.g., a single composition comprising MASP-2 and MASP-3 inhibitory agents, or bispecific or dual-inhibitory agents, or co-administration of separate compositions), or a limited sequence of administrations, for treating, preventing or reducing the severity of inflammatory or non-inflammatory arthritides. Alternatively, the composition may be administered at periodic intervals such as daily, biweekly, weekly, every other week, monthly or bimonthly over an extended period of time for treatment of a subject suffering from inflammatory or non-inflammatory arthritides.

As described in Examples 11-21 herein, high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory antibodies have been generated which have therapeutic utility for inhibition of the alternative pathway in AP-related diseases or conditions, such as arthritis.

Accordingly, in one embodiment, the present invention provides a method for treating a subject suffering from, or at risk for developing arthritis (inflammatory and non-inflammatory arthritides) comprising administering to the subject a pharmaceutical composition comprising an effective amount of a high affinity monoclonal antibody or antigen binding fragment thereof as disclosed herein that binds to human MASP-3 and inhibits alternative pathway complement activation to treat or reduce the risk of arthritis in the subject, such as, for example, wherein said antibody or antigen binding fragment thereof comprises (a) a heavy chain variable region comprising (i) VHCDR1 comprising SEQ ID NO:84, (ii) VHCDR2 comprising SEQ ID NO:86 or SEQ ID NO:275 and (iii) VHCDR3 comprising SEQ ID NO:88; and (b) a light chain variable region comprising (i) VLCDR1 comprising SEQ ID NO:142, SEQ ID NO:257, SEQ ID NO:258 or SEQ ID NO:259 (ii) VLCDR2 comprising SEQ ID NO:144 and (iii) VLCDR3 comprising SEQ ID NO:161. In some embodidments, the subject is suffering from arthritis selected fronm the group consisting of osteoarthritis, rheumatoid arthritis, juvenile rheumatoid arthritis, ankylosing spondylitis, Behcet's disease, infection-related arthritis and psoriatic arthritis. In some embodiments, the pharmaceutical composition is administered systemically (i.e., subcutaneously, intra-muscularly, intravenously, intra-arterially or as an inhalant). In some embodiments, the pharmaceutical composition is administered locally to a joint.

E.. THE ROLE OF MASP-3 IN DISSEMINATED INTRAVASCULAR COAGULATION (DIC) AND THERAPEUTIC METHODS USING MASP-3

INHIBITORY ANTIBODIES, OPTIONALLY IN COMBINATION WITH AND MASP-2 INHIBITORY AGENTS

Disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC) is a syndrome of pathologic overstimulation of the coagulation system that can manifest clinically as hemorrhage and/or thrombosis. DIC does not occur as a primary condition but rather in association with a variety of disease processes, including tissue damage (trauma, burns, heat stroke, transfusion reaction, acute transplant rejection), neoplasia, infections, obstetric conditions (placenta previa, amniotic fluid embolism, toxemia of pregnancy), and miscellaneous conditions such as cardiogenic shock, near drowning, fat embolism, aortic aneurysm. Thrombocytopenia is a frequent abnormality in patients in the intensive care unit, with an incidence of 35% to 44%, and DIC is the etiology in about 25% of these cases, i.e., DIC occurs in approximately 10% of critically ill patients (Levi, M. and Opal, S.M. *Crit. Care* 10:222-231, 2006). The pathophysiology of DIC is that the underlying disease process initiates a physiological coagulation response. However, the prothrombotic substances overwhelm the normal counterbalancing mechanisms such that there is the inappropriate deposition of fibrin and platelets in the microcirculation, leading to organ ischemia, hypofibrinogenemia, and thrombocytopenia. The diagnosis of DIC is based on the clinical presentation in the appropriate underlying illness or process, along with abnormalities in laboratory parameters (prothrombin time, partial thromboplastin time, fibrin degradation products, D-dimer, or platelet count). The primary treatment of DIC is to address the underlying condition that is the responsible trigger. Blood product support in the form of red blood cells, platelets, fresh frozen plasma, and cryoprecipitate may be necessary to treat or prevent clinical complications.

The role of the complement pathways in DIC has been investigated in several studies. Complement activation was evaluated in pediatric patients with meningococcal infection comparing the clinical course in relation to MBL genotype (Sprong, T. et al., *Clin. Infect. Dis*. 49:1380-1386, 2009). At admission to the hospital, patients with MBL deficiency had lower circulating levels of C3bc, terminal complement complex, C4bc, and C3bBbP than MBL-sufficient patients, indicating lower extent of common complement, terminal complement, and alternative pathway activation. Furthermore, extent of systemic complement activation correlated with disease severity and parameters of DIC and the MBL-deficient patients had a milder clinical course than MBL-sufficient patients. Therefore,

although MBL deficiency is a risk factor for susceptibility to infections, MBL deficiency during septic shock may be associated with lower disease severity.

As demonstrated in Examples 1-4 herein, experimental studies have highlighted the important contribution of MBL and MASP-1/3 in innate immune response to Neisseria menigitidis, the etiological agent of meningococcal infection. MBL-deficient sera from mice or humans, MASP-3 deficient human sera, or the MASP-1/3 knockout mouse are less effective at activating complement and lysing meningococci in vitro compared to wild-type sera. Similarly, naïve MASP-1/3 knockout mice are more susceptible to neisserial infection than their wild-type counterparts. Thus, in the absence of adaptive immunity, the LEA-1 pathway contributes to innate-host resistance to neisserial infection. Conversely, LEA-1 augments pathologic complement activation triggering a harmful host response, including DIC.

In a murine model of arterial thrombosis, MBL-null and MASP-1/-3 knockout mice had decreased FeCl3-induced thrombogenesis compared with wild-type or C2/factor B-null mice, and the defect was reconstituted with recombinant human MBL (La Bonte, L.R., et al., *J. Immunol.* 188:885-891, 2012). In vitro, MBL-null or MASP-1/-3 knockout mouse sera had decreased thrombin substrate cleavage compared with wild-type or C2/factor B-null mouse sera; addition of recombinant human MASP-1 restored thrombin substrate cleavage in MASP-1/-3 knockout mouse sera (La Bonte et al., 2012, *supra*). These results indicate that MBL/MASP complexes, in particular MASP-1, play a key role in thrombus formation. Thus, LEA-1 may play an important role in pathologic thrombosis, including DIC.

Experimental studies have established an equally important role for LEA-2 in pathologic thrombosis. In vitro studies further demonstrate that LEA-2 provides a molecular link between the complement system and the coagulation system. MASP-2 has factor Xa-like activity and activates prothrombin through cleavage to form thrombin, which can subsequently clear fibrinogen and promote fibrin clot formation (see also Krarup et al., *PLoS One*, 18:2(7):e623, 2007).

Separate studies have shown that lectin-MASP complexes can promote clot formation, fibrin deposition and fibrinopeptide release in a MASP-2 dependent process (Gulla et al., *Immunology,* 129(4):482-95, 2010). Thus, LEA-2 promotes simultaneous lectin-dependent activation of complement and the coagulation system.

In vitro studies have further shown that MASP-1 has thrombin-like activity (Presanis J.S., et al., *Mol Immunol*, 40(13):921-9, 2004), and cleaves fibrinogen and factor XIII (Gulla

K. C. et la., *Immunology*, 129(4):482-95, 2010), suggesting that LEA-1 may activate coagulation pathways independently or in concert with LEA-2.

The data detailed above suggest that LEA-1 and LEA-2 provide independent links between lectin-dependent complement activation and coagulation. Thus, in view of the above, LEA-1 and LEA-2 inhibitors are expected to have independent therapeutic benefits in treating a subject suffering from disseminated intravascular coagulation. In some embodiments, the subject is suffering from disseminated intravascular coagulation secondary to sepsis, trauma, infection (bacterial, viral, fungal, parasitic), malignancy, transplant rejection, transfusion reaction, obstetric complication, vascular aneurysm, hepatic failure, heat stroke, burn, radiation exposure, shock, or severe toxic reaction (e.g., snake bite, insect bite, transfusion reaction). In some embodiments, the trauma is a neurological trauma. In some embodiments, the infection is a bacterial infection, such as a Neisseria meningitidis infection.

In addition, LEA-1 and LEA-2 inhibitors used together may achieve additional treatment benefits compared to either agent alone. As both LEA-1 and LEA-2 are known to be activated by conditions that lead to DIC (for example infection or trauma), LEA-1- and LEA-2-blocking agents, either separately or in combination, are expected to have therapeutic utility in the treatment of DIC. LEA-1 and LEA-2 blocking agents may prevent different cross-talk mechanisms between complement and coagulation. LEA-1- and LEA-2-blocking agents may thus have complementary, additive or synergistic effects in preventing DIC and other thrombotic disorders.

In addition, LEA-1 and LEA-2 inhibitors used together may achieve additional treatment benefit compared to either agent alone, or may provide effective treatment for a wider spectrum of patient subsets. Combined LEA-1 and LEA-2 inhibition may be accomplished by co-administration of a LEA-1-blocking agent and a LEA-2-blocking agent. Optimally, LEA-1 and LEA-2 inhibitory function may be encompassed in a single molecular entity, such as a bispecific antibody composed of MASP-1/3 and a MASP-2-specific binding site, or a dual specificity antibody where each binding site and bind to and block MASP-1/3 or MASP-2.

In accordance with the foregoing, an aspect of the invention thus provides a method for inhibiting LEA-1 dependent complement activation for treating, preventing, or reducing the severity of disseminated intravascular coagulation in a subject in need thereof comprising administering a composition comprising a therapeutically effective amount of a LEA-1 inhibitory agent comprising a MASP-1 inhibitory agent, a MASP 3 inhibitory agent, or a

combination of a MASP-1/3 inhibitory agent, in a pharmaceutical carrier to a subject experiencing, or at risk for developing, disseminated intravascular coagulation. The MASP-1, MASP-3, or MASP-1/3 inhibitory composition may be administered to the subject systemically, such as by intra arterial, intravenous, intramuscular, inhalational, nasal, subcutaneous or other parenteral administration, or potentially by oral administration for non peptidergic agents. Administration may be repeated as determined by a physician until the condition has been resolved or is controlled. For treatment or prevention of DIC secondary to trauma or other acute event, the LEA-1 inhibitory composition may be administered immediately following the traumatic injury or prophylactically prior to, during, immediately following, or within one to seven days or longer, such as within 24 hours to 72 hours, after trauma-inducing injury or situations such as surgery in patients deemed at risk of DIC. In some embodiments, the LEA-1 inhibitory composition may suitably be administered in a fast acting dosage form, such as by intravenous or intra arterial delivery of a bolus of a solution containing the LEA-1 inhibitory agent composition.

In one embodiment, the method according to this aspect of the invention further comprises inhibiting LEA-2-dependent complement activation for treating, preventing, or reducing the severity of disseminated intravascular coagulation in a subject in need thereof, comprising administering a therapeutically effective amount of a MASP-2 inhibitory agent and a MASP-1, MASP-3, or MASP-1/3 inhibitory agent to the subject. As detailed above, the use of a combination of pharmacologic agents that individually block LEA-1 and LEA-2 is expected to provide an improved therapeutic outcome in treating or preventing disseminated intravascular coagulation as compared to the inhibition of LEA-1 alone. This outcome can be achieved for example, by co-administration of an antibody that has LEA-1-blocking activity together with an antibody that has LEA-2-blocking activity. In some embodiments, LEA-1- and LEA-2-blocking activities are combined into a single molecular entity, and that such entity with combined LEA-1- and LEA-2-blocking activity. Such an entity may comprise or consist of a bispecific antibody where one antigen-combining site specifically recognizes MASP-1 and blocks LEA-1 and the second antigen-combining site specifically recognizes MASP-2 and blocks LEA-2. Alternatively, such an entity may consist of a bispecific monoclonal antibody where one antigen-combining site specifically recognizes MASP-3 and thus blocks LEA-1 and the second antigen-combining site specifically recognizes MASP-2 and blocks LEA-2. Such an entity may optimally consist of a bispecific monoclonal antibody where one antigen-combining site specifically recognizes both MASP-1

and MASP-3 and thus blocks LEA-1 while the second antigen-combining site specifically recognized MASP-2 and blocks LEA-2.

The MASP-2 inhibitory agent may be administered to the subject in need thereof systemically, such as by intra arterial, intravenous, intramuscular, inhalational, nasal, subcutaneous or other parenteral administration, or potentially by oral administration for non peptidergic agents. Administration may be repeated as determined by a physician until the condition has been resolved or is controlled. For DIC secondary to trauma or other acute event, the MASP-2 inhibitory composition may be administered immediately following the traumatic injury or prophylactically prior to, during, immediately following, or within one to seven days or longer, such as within 24 hours to 72 hours, after trauma-inducing injury or situations such as surgery in patients deemed at risk of DIC. In some embodiments, the MASP-2 inhibitory composition may suitably be administered in a fast acting dosage form, such as by intravenous or intra arterial delivery of a bolus of a solution containing the MASP-2 inhibitory agent composition.

Application of the MASP-3 inhibitory compositions and optional MASP-2 inhibitory compositions of the present invention may be carried out by a single administration of the composition (e.g., a single composition comprising MASP-2 and MASP-3 inhibitory agents, or bispecific or dual-inhibitory agents, or co-administration of separate compositions), or a limited sequence of administrations, for treating, preventing, or reducing the severity of disseminated intravascular coagulation in subject in need thereof. Alternatively, the composition may be administered at periodic intervals such as daily, biweekly, weekly, every other week, monthly or bimonthly over an extended period of time for treatment of a subject experiencing, or at risk for developing disseminated intravascular coagulation.

As described in Examples 11-21 herein, high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory antibodies have been generated which have therapeutic utility for inhibition of the alternative pathway in AP-related diseases or conditions, such as disseminated intravascular coagulation.

Accordingly, in one embodiment, the present invention provides a method for treating a subject suffering from, or at risk for developing disseminated intravascular coagulation comprising an effective amount of a high affinity monoclonal antibody or antigen binding fragment thereof as disclosed herein that binds to human MASP-3 and inhibits alternative pathway complement activation to treat or reduce the risk of developing disseminated intravascular coagulation, such as, for example, wherein said antibody or antigen binding fragment thereof comprises (a) a heavy chain variable region comprising (i) VHCDR1 comprising SEQ ID NO:84, (ii) VHCDR2 comprising SEQ ID NO:86 or SEQ ID NO:275

and (iii) VHCDR3 comprising SEQ ID NO:88; and (b) a light chain variable region comprising (i) VLCDR1 comprising SEQ ID NO:142, SEQ ID NO:257, SEQ ID NO:258 or SEQ ID NO:259 (ii) VLCDR2 comprising SEQ ID NO:144 and (iii) VLCDR3 comprising SEQ ID NO:161.

F. THE ROLE OF MASP-3 IN THROMBOTIC MICROANGIOPATHY (TMA), INCLUDING HEMOLYTIC UREMIC SYNDROME (HUS), ATYPICAL HEMOLYTIC UREMIC SYNDROME (AHUS) AND THROMBOTIC THROMBOCYTOPENIC PURPURA (TTP) AND THERAPEUTIC METHODS USING MASP-3 INHIBITORY ANTIBODIES, OPTIONALLY IN COMBINATION WITH MASP-2 INHIBITORY AGENTS

Thrombotic microangiopathy (TMA) refers to a group of disorders characterized clinically by thrombocytopenia, microangiopathic hemolytic anemia, and variable organ ischemia. The characteristic pathological features of TMA are platelet activation and the formation of microthrombi in the small arterioles and venules. The classic TMAs are hemolytic uremic syndrome (HUS) and thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura (TTP). HUS is distinguished from TTP by the presence of acute renal failure. HUS occurs in two forms: diarrhea-associated (D+) or typical HUS, and diarrhea negative (D-) or atypical HUS (aHUS).

HUS

D+HUS is associated with a prodromal diarrheal illness usually caused by Escherichia coli O157 or another Shiga-toxin-producing strain of bacteria, accounts for over 90% of the HUS cases in children, and is the most common cause of acute renal failure in children. Although human infection with Escherichia coli O157 is relatively frequent, the percentages of bloody diarrhea that progresses to D+HUS ranged from 3% to 7% in sporadic cases and 20% to 30% in some outbreaks (Zheng, X.L. and Sadler, J.E., Annu. Rev. Pathol. 3:249-277, 2008). HUS usually occurs 4 to 6 days after the onset of diarrhea and approximately two-third of children require dialysis in the acute phase of the disease. Treatment of D+HUS is supportive as no specific treatments have been shown to be effective. The prognosis of D+HUS is favorable, with the majority of patients regaining renal function.

The pathogenesis of D+HUS involves bacteria-produced Shiga toxins that bind to membranes on microvascular endothelial cells, monocytes, and platelets. The microvasculature of the kidney is most often affected. Following binding, the toxin is

internalized, leading to release of proinflammatory mediators and eventual cell death. It is thought that endothelial cell damage triggers renal microvascular thrombosis by promoting the activation of the coagulation cascade. There is evidence for activation of the complement system in D+HUS. In children with D+HUS, plasma levels of Bb and SC5b-9 were increased at the time of hospitalization compared to normal controls and, at day 28 after hospital discharge, the plasma levels had normalized (Thurman, J.M. et al., *Clin. J. Am. Soc. Nephrol.* 4:1920-1924, 2009). Shiga toxin 2 (Stx2) was found to activate human complement in the fluid phase in vitro, predominantly via the alternative pathway as activation proceeded in the presence of ethylene glycol tetraacetic acid which blocks the classical pathway (Orth, D. et al., *J. Immunol.* 182:6394-6400, 2009). Furthermore, Stx2 bound factor H and not factor I, and delayed the cofactor activity of factor H on cell surfaces (Orth et al, 2009, *supra*). These results suggest that Shiga toxin may cause renal damage through multiple potential mechanisms, including a direct toxic effect, and indirectly through activation of complement or inhibition of complement regulators. Toxic effects on the vascular endothelium are expected to activate complement via LEA-2, as evidenced by the effectiveness of MASP-2 blockade in preventing complement-mediated reperfusion injury in various vascular beds as described in Schwaeble, W.J., et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci.* 108:7523-7528, 2011.

In a murine model of HUS induced by co-injection of Shiga toxin and lipopolysaccharide, factor B-deficient mice had less thrombocytopenia and were protected from renal impairment compared with wild-type mice, implicating LEA-1-dependent activation of the alternative pathway in microvascular thrombosis (Morigi, M. et al., *J. Immunol.* 187:172-180, 2011). As described herein, in the same model, administration of MASP-2 antibody was also effective and increased survival following STX challenge, implicating LEA-2-dependent complement pathway in microvascular thrombosis.

Based on the foregoing, LEA-1 and LEA-2 inhibitors are expected to have independent therapeutic benefit in the treatment or prevention of HUS. In addition, LEA-1 and LEA-2 inhibitors used together may achieve additional treatment benefit compared to either agent alone, or may provide effective treatment for a wider spectrum of patient subsets. Combined LEA-1 and LEA-2 inhibition may be accomplished by co-administration of a LEA-1-blocking agent and a LEA-2-blocking agent. Optimally, LEA-1 and LEA-2 inhibitory function may be encompassed in a single molecular entity, such as a bispecific antibody composed of MASP-1/3 and a MASP-2-specific binding site, or a dual-specificity antibody where each binding site can bind to and block MASP-1/3 or MASP-2.

aHUS

Atypical HUS is a rare disease, with an estimated incidence of 2 per million in the United States (Loirat, C. and Fremeaux-Bacchi, V. Orphanet *J. Rare Dis.* 6:60-90, 2011). Atypical HUS can develop at any age, although the majority of patients have an onset during childhood. Atypical HUS is heterogeneous: some cases are familial, some are recurring, and some are triggered by an infectious illness, typically upper respiratory tract or gastroenteritis. The onset of aHUS is usually sudden and most patients require dialysis at admission. Extra renal manifestations are present in about 20% of patients and may involve the central nervous system, myocardial infarction, distal ischemic gangrene, or multiorgan failure. Treatment of aHUS includes supportive care for organ dysfunction, plasma infusion or plasma exchange, and eculizumab, a humanized monoclonal antibody that targets C5 that was recently approved for use in the United States and European Union. The prognosis in aHUS is not as good as in D+HUS, with approximately 25% mortality during the acute stage and most survivors develop end-stage renal disease.

Atypical HUS has been characterized as a disease of complement dysregulation in that approximately 50% of patients have mutations in genes encoding complement regulatory proteins (Zheng and Sadler, 2008 *supra*). Most mutations are seen in factor H (FH); other mutations include membrane cofactor protein (MCP), factor I (FI), factor B, and C3. Functional studies showed that the mutations in FH, MCP, and FI lead to loss of function and therefore more complement activation, whereas mutations in factor B are gain of function. The effects of these mutations predominantly affect the alternative pathway. These genetic abnormalities are risk factors rather than the only cause of disease as approximately 50% of family members who carry the mutation do not present with the disease by age 45 (Loirat and Fremeaux-Bacchi, 2011 *supra*).

Factor H is a complement control protein that protects host tissue from alternative pathway complement attack. FH regulates the alternative pathway amplification loop in three ways: it is a cofactor for FI, which cleaves C3b, it inhibits the formation of the alternative pathway C3 convertase, C3bBb, and it binds to polyanions on cell surfaces and tissue matrices and blocks deposition of C3b (Atkinson, J.P. and Goodship, T.H.J., *J. Exp. Med.* 6:1245-1248, 2007). The majority of FH mutations in aHUS patients occur in the C-terminal short consensus repeat domains of the protein, which result in defective binding of FH to heparin, C3b, and endothelium, but do not alter plasma C3 regulation which resides among N-terminal domains (Pickering, M.C. et al., *J. Exp. Med.* 204:1249-1256, 2007). FH-deficient mice have uncontrolled plasma C3 activation and spontaneously develop

membranoproliferative glomerulonephritis type II, but not aHUS. However, FH-deficient mice that transgenically expressed a mouse FH protein functionally equivalent to aHUS-associated human FH mutants spontaneously develop a HUS but not membranoproliferative glomerulonephritis type II, providing in vivo evidence that defective control of alternative pathway activation in renal endothelium is a key event in the pathogenesis of FH-associated aHUS (Pickering et al., 2007 *supra*). Another form of FH-associated aHUS occurs in patients who have anti-FH autoantibodies resulting in a loss of FH functional activity; most of these patients have deletions in genes encoding five FH-related proteins (Loirat and Fremeaux-Bacchi, 2011, *supra*).

Similar to FH, MCP inhibits complement activation by regulating C3b deposition on target cells. MCP mutations result in proteins with low C3b-binding and cofactor activity, thus allowing for dysregulated alternative pathway activation. FI is a serine protease that cleaves C3b and C4b in the presence of cofactors, such as FH and MCP, and thereby prevents the formation of C3 and C5 convertases and inhibits both the alternative and the classical complement pathways. Most of the FI-associated aHUS mutations result in reduced FI activity for the degradation of C3b and C4b (Zheng and Stadler, 2008, *supra*). FB is a zymogen that carries the catalytic sites of the alternative pathway convertase C3bBb. Functional analysis showed that the aHUS associated FB mutations result in increased alternative pathway activation (Loirat and Fremeaux-Bacchi, 2011, *supra*). Heterozygous mutations in C3 are associated with aHUS. Most C3 mutations induce a defect of C3 to bind MCP, leading to an increased capacity of FB to bind C3b and increased formation of C3 convertase (Loirat and Fremeaux-Bacchi, 2011, *supra*). Thus, aHUS is a disease closely associated with mutations in the complement genes that lead to inadequate control of the alternative pathway amplification loop. Since the alternative pathway amplification loop is dependent on factor B proteolytic activity, and since LEA-1 is required for factor B activation (either by MASP-3 dependent cleavage or by factor D-mediated cleavage wherein the MASP-1 contributes to the maturation of factor D), LEA-1-blocking agents are expected to prevent uncontrolled complement activation in susceptible individuals. As a result, it is expected that LEA-1 blocking agents will effectively treat aHUS.

While the central role of a deregulated alternative pathway amplification loop in aHUS is widely accepted, the triggers initiating complement activation and the molecular pathways involved are unresolved. Not all individuals carrying the above-described mutations develop aHUS. In fact, familial studies have suggested that the penetrance of aHUS is only ~50% (Sullivan M. et al., *Ann Hum Genet* 74:17-26 2010). The natural history

of the disease suggests that aHUS most often develops after an initiating event such as an infectious episode or an injury. Infectious agents are well known to activate the complement system. In the absence of pre-existing adaptive immunity, complement activation by infectious agents may be primarily initiated via LEA-1 or LEA-2. Thus, lectin-dependent complement activation triggered by an infection may represent the initiating trigger for subsequent pathological amplification of complement activation in aHUS-predisposed individuals, which may ultimately lead to disease progression. Accordingly, another aspect of the present invention comprises treating a patient suffering with aHUS secondary to an infection by administering an effective amount of a LEA-1- or a LEA-2-inhibitory agent.

Other forms of injury to host tissue will activate complement via LEA-2, in particular injury to the vascular endothelium. Human vascular endothelial cells subject to oxidative stress, for example, respond by expressing surface moieties that bind lectins and activate the LEA-2 pathway of complement (Collard et al., *Am J. Pathol* 156(5):1549-56, 2000). Vascular injury following ischemia/reperfusion also activates complement via LEA-2 *in vivo* (Moller-Kristensen et al., *Scand J Immunol* 61(5):426-34, 2005). Lectin pathway activation in this setting has pathological consequences for the host, and as shown in Examples 22 and 23, inhibition of LEA-2 by blocking MASP-2 prevents further host tissue injury and adverse outcomes (see also Schwaeble PNAS, 2011, *supra*).

Thus, other processes that precipitate aHUS are also known to activate LEA-1 or LEA-2. It is therefore likely that the LEA-1 and/or LEA-2 pathway may represent the initial complement activating mechanism that is inappropriately amplified in a deregulated fashion in individuals genetically predisposed to aHUS, thus initiating aHUS pathogenesis. By inference, agents that block activation of complement via LEA-1 and/or LEA-2 are expected to prevent disease progression or reduce exacerbations in aHUS susceptible individuals.

In further support of this concept, recent studies have identified Streptococcus-pneumoniae as an important etiological agent in pediatric cases of aHUS. (Lee, C.S. et al, *Nephrology*, 17(1):48-52 (2012); Banerjee R. et al., *Pediatr Infect Dis J.*, 30(9):736-9 (2011)). This particular etiology appears to have an unfavorable prognosis, with significant mortality and long-term morbidity. Notably, these cases involved non-enteric infections leading to manifestations of microangiopathy, uremia and hemolysis without evidence of concurrent mutations in complement genes known to predispose to aHUS. It is important to note that S. pneumoniae is particularly effective at activating complement, and does so predominantly through LEA-2. Thus, in cases of non-enteric HUS associated with pneumococcal infection, manifestations of microangiopathy, uremia and hemolysis are

expected to be driven predominantly by activation of LEA-2, and agents that block LEA-2, including MASP-2 antibodies, are expected to prevent progression of aHUS or reduce disease severity in these patients. Accordingly, another aspect of the present invention comprises treating a patient suffering with non-enteric aHUS that is associated with S. pneumoniae infection by administering an effective amount of a MASP-2 inhibitory agent.

TTP

Thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura (TTP) is a life-threatening disorder of the blood-coagulation system caused by autoimmune or hereditary dysfunctions that activate the coagulation cascade or the complement system (George, JN, *N Engl J Med*; 354:1927-35, 2006). This results in numerous microscopic clots, or thomboses, in small blood vessels throughout the body, which is a characteristic feature of TMAs. Red blood cells are subjected to shear stress, which damages their membranes, leading to intravascular hemolysis. The resulting reduced blood flow and endothelial injury results in organ damage, including brain, heart, and kidneys. TTP is clinically characterized by thrombocytopenia, microangiopathic hemolytic anemia, neurological changes, renal failure and fever. In the era before plasma exchange, the fatality rate was 90% during acute episodes. Even with plasma exchange, survival at six months is about 80%.

TTP may arise from genetic or acquired inhibition of the enzyme ADAMTS-13, a metalloprotease responsible for cleaving large multimers of von Willebrand factor (vWF) into smaller units. ADAMTS-13 inhibition or deficiency ultimately results in increased coagulation (Tsai, H. *J Am Soc Nephrol* 14: 1072–1081, 2003). ADAMTS-13 regulates the activity of vWF; in the absence of ADAMTS-13, vWF forms large multimers that are more likely to bind platelets and predisposes patients to platelet aggregation and thrombosis in the microvasculature.

Numerous mutations in ADAMTS13 have been identified in individuals with TTP. The disease can also develop due to autoantibodies against ADAMTS-13. In addition, TTP can develop during breast, gastrointestinal tract, or prostate cancer (George JN., *Oncology* (Williston Park). 25:908-14, 2011), pregnancy (second trimester or postpartum), (George JN., *Curr Opin Hematol* 10:339-344, 2003), or is associated with diseases, such as HIV or autoimmune diseases like systemic lupus erythematosis (Hamasaki K, et al., *Clin Rheumatol.* 22:355-8, 2003). TTP can also be caused by certain drug therapies, including heparin, quinine, immune mediated ingredient, cancer chemotherapeutic agents (bleomycin, cisplatin, cytosine arabinoside, daunomycin gemcitabine, mitomycin C, and tamoxifen), cyclosporine A, oral contraceptives, penicillin, rifampin and anti-platelet drugs including ticlopidine and

clopidogrel (Azarm, T. et al., *J Res Med Sci.*, 16: 353–357, 2011). Other factors or conditions associated with TTP are toxins such as bee venoms, sepsis, splenic sequestration, transplantation, vasculitis, vascular surgery, and infections like Streptococcus pneumoniae and cytomegalovirus (Moake JL., *N Engl J Med.*, 347:589–600, 2002). TTP due to transient functional ADAMTS-13 deficiency can occur as a consequence of endothelial cell injury associated with S. pneumoniae infection (*Pediatr Nephrol*, 26:631-5, 2011).

Plasma exchange is the standard treatment for TTP (Rock GA, et al., *N Engl J Med* 325:393-397, 1991). Plasma exchange replaces ADAMTS-13 activity in patients with genetic defects and removes ADAMTS-13 autoantibodies in those patients with acquired autoimmune TTP (Tsai, H-M, *Hematol Oncol Clin North Am.*, 21(4): 609–v, 2007). Additional agents such as immunosuppressive drugs are routinely added to therapy (George, JN, *N Engl J Med*, 354:1927-35, 2006). However, plasma exchange is not successful for about 20% of patients, relapse occurs in more than a third of patients, and plasmapheresis is costly and technically demanding. Furthermore, many patients are unable to tolerate plasma exchange. Consequently, there remains a critical need for additional and better treatments for TTP.

Because TTP is a disorder of the blood coagulation cascade, treatment with antagonists of the complement system may aid in stabilizing and correcting the disease. While pathological activation of the alternative complement pathway is linked to aHUS, the role of complement activation in TTP is less clear. The functional deficiency of ADAMTS13 is important for the susceptibility to TTP, however it is not sufficient to cause acute episodes. Environmental factors and/or other genetic variations may contribute to the manifestation of TTP. For example, genes encoding proteins involved in the regulation of the coagulation cascade, vWF, platelet function, components of the endothelial vessel surface, or the complement system may be implicated in the development of acute thrombotic microangiopathy (Galbusera, M. et al., *Haematologica*, 94: 166–170, 2009). In particular, complement activation has been shown to play a critical role; serum from thrombotic microangiopathy associated with ADAMTS-13 deficiency has been shown to cause C3 and MAC deposition and subsequent neutrophil activation which could be abrogated by complement inactivation (Ruiz-Torres MP, et al., *Thromb Haemost*, 93:443-52, 2005). In addition, it has recently been shown that during acute episodes of TTP there are increased levels of C4d, C3bBbP, and C3a (M. Réti et al., *J Thromb Haemost.* 10(5):791-798, 2012), consistent with activation of the classical, lectin and alternative pathways. This increased

amount of complement activation in acute episodes may initiate the terminal pathway activation and be responsible for further exacerbation of TTP.

The role of ADAMTS-13 and vWF in TTP clearly is responsible for activation and aggregation of platelets and their subsequent role in shear stress and deposition in microangiopathies. Activated platelets interact with and trigger both the classical and alternative pathways of complement. Platelet-mediated complement activation increases the inflammatory mediators C3a and C5a (Peerschke E. et al., *Mol Immunol*, 47:2170-5 (2010)). Platelets may thus serve as targets of classical complement activation in inherited or autoimmune TTP.

As described above, the lectin-dependent activation of complement, by virtue of the thrombin-like activity of MASP-1 and the LEA-2-mediated prothombin activation, is the dominant molecular pathway linking endothelial injury to the coagulation and microvascular thrombosis that occurs in HUS. Similarly, activation of LEA-1 and LEA-2 may directly drive the coagulation system in TTP. LEA-1 and LEA-2 pathway activation may be initiated in response to the initial endothelium injury caused by ADAMTS-13 deficiency in TTP. It is therefore expected that LEA-1 and LEA-2 inhibitors, including but not limited to antibodies that block MASP-2 function, MASP-1 function, MASP-3 function, or MASP-1 and MASP-3 function will mitigate the microangiopathies associated with microvascular coagulation, thrombosis, and hemolysis in patients suffering from TTP.

Patients suffering from TTP typically present in the emergency room with one or more of the following: purpura, renal failure, low platelets, anemia and/or thrombosis, including stroke. The current standard of care for TTP involves intra-catheter delivery (e.g., intravenous or other form of catheter) of replacement plasmapheresis for a period of two weeks or longer, typically three times a week, but up to daily. If the subject tests positive for the presence of an inhibitor of ADAMTS13 (i.e., an endogenous antibody against ADAMTS13), then the plasmapheresis may be carried out in combination with immunosuppressive therapy (e.g., corticosteroids, rituxan, or cyclosporine). Subjects with refractory TTP (approximately 20% of TTP patients) do not respond to at least two weeks of plasmapheresis therapy.

In accordance with the foregoing, in one embodiment, in the setting of an initial diagnosis of TTP, or in a subject exhibiting one or more symptoms consistent with a diagnosis of TTP (e.g., central nervous system involvement, severe thrombocytopenia (a platelet count of less than or equal to 5000/μL if off aspirin, less than or equal to 20,000/μL if on aspirin), severe cardiac involvement, severe pulmonary involvement, gastro-intestinal

infarction or gangrene), a method is provided for treating the subject with an effective amount of a LEA-2 inhibitory agent (e.g., a MASP-2 antibody) or a LEA-1 inhibitory agent (e.g., a MASP-1 or MASP-3 antibody) as a first line therapy in the absence of plasmapheresis, or in combination with plasmapheresis. As a first-line therapy, the LEA-1 and/or LEA-2 inhibitory agent may be administered to the subject systemically, such as by intra arterial, intravenous, intramuscular, inhalational, nasal, subcutaneous or other parenteral administration. In some embodiments, the LEA-1 and/or LEA-2 inhibitory agent is administered to a subject as a first-line therapy in the absence of plasmapheresis to avoid the potential complications of plasmapheresis, such as hemorrhage, infection, and exposure to disorders and/or allergies inherent in the plasma donor, or in a subject otherwise averse to plasmapheresis, or in a setting where plasmapheresis is unavailable. In some embodiments, the LEA-1 and/or LEA-2 inhibitory agent is administered to the subject suffering from TTP in combination (including co-administration) with an immunosuppressive agent (e.g., corticosteroids, rituxan or cyclosporine) and/or in combination with concentrated ADAMTS-13.

In some embodiments, the method comprises administering a LEA-1 and/or LEA-2 inhibitory agent to a subject suffering from TTP via a catheter (e.g., intravenously) for a first time period (e.g., an acute phase lasting at least one day to a week or two weeks) followed by administering a LEA-1 and/or LEA-2 inhibitory agent to the subject subcutaneously for a second time period (e.g., a chronic phase of at least two weeks or longer). In some embodiments, the administration in the first and/or second time period occurs in the absence of plasmapheresis. In some embodiments, the method is used to maintain the subject to prevent the subject from suffering one or more symptoms associated with TTP.

In another embodiment, a method is provided for treating a subject suffering from refractory TTP (i.e., a subject that has not responded to at least two weeks of plasmaphoresis therapy), by administering an amount of a LEA-1 and/or LEA-2 inhibitor effective to reduce one or more symptoms of TTP. In one embodiment, the LEA-1 and/or LEA-2 inhibitor is administered to a subject with refractory TTP on a chronic basis, over a time period of at least two weeks or longer via subcutaneous or other parenteral administration. Administration may be repeated as determined by a physician until the condition has been resolved or is controlled.

In some embodiments, the method further comprises determining the level of at least one complement factor (e.g., C3, C5) in the subject prior to treatment, and optionally during treatment, wherein the determination of a reduced level of the at least one complement factor

in comparison to a standard value or healthy control subject is indicative of the need for continued treatment with the LEA-1 and/or LEA-2 inhibitory agent.

In some embodiments, the method comprises administering, either subcutaneously or intravenously, a LEA-1 and/or LEA-2 inhibitory agent to a subject suffering from, or at risk for developing, TTP. Treatment is preferably daily, but can be as infrequent as monthly. Treatment is continued until the subject's platelet count is greater than 150,000/ml for at least two consecutive days.

In summary, LEA-1 and LEA-2 inhibitors are expected to have independent therapeutic benefit in the treatment of TMAs, including HUS, aHUS and TTP. In addition, LEA-1 and LEA-2 inhibitors used together are expected to achieve additional treatment benefit compared to either agent alone, or may provide effective treatment for a wider spectrum of patient subsets suffering from variant forms of TMA. Combined LEA-1 and LEA-2 inhibition may be accomplished by co-administration of a LEA-1 blocking agent and a LEA2 blocking agent. Optimally, LEA-1 and LEA-2 inhibitory function may be encompassed in a single molecular entity, such as a bispecific antibody composed of MASP-1/3 and a MASP-2-specific binding site, or a dual specificity antibody where each binding site can bind to and block MASP-1/3 or MASP-2.

In accordance with the foregoing, an aspect of the invention thus provides a method for inhibiting LEA-1 dependent complement activation for treating, preventing, or reducing the severity of a thrombotic microangiopathy, such as hemolytic uremic syndrome (HUS), atypical hemolytic uremic syndrome (aHUS) or thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura (TTP) comprising administering a composition comprising a therapeutically effective amount of a LEA-1 inhibitory agent comprising a MASP 1 inhibitory agent, a MASP 3 inhibitory agent, or a combination of a MASP 1/3 inhibitory agent, in a pharmaceutical carrier to a subject suffering from, or at risk for developing a thrombotic microangiopathy. The MASP 1, MASP 3, or MASP 1/3 inhibitory composition may be administered to the subject systemically, such as by intra arterial, intravenous, intramuscular, inhalational, nasal, subcutaneous or other parenteral administration, or potentially by oral administration for non peptidergic agents. Administration may be repeated as determined by a physician until the condition has been resolved or is controlled.

In one embodiment, the method according to this aspect of the invention further comprises inhibiting LEA-2-dependent complement activation for treating, preventing, or reducing the severity of a thrombotic microangiopathy, such as hemolytic uremic syndrome (HUS), atypical hemolytic uremic syndrome (aHUS) or thrombotic thrombocytopenic

purpura (TTP) comprising administering a therapeutically effective amount of a MASP-2 inhibitory agent and a MASP-1, MASP-3, or MASP-1/3 inhibitory agent to a subject suffering from, or at risk for developing a thrombotic microangiopathy. As detailed above, the use of a combination of pharmacologic agents that individually block LEA-1 and LEA-2, is expected to provide an improved therapeutic outcome in treating or preventing or reducing the severity of a thrombotic microangiopathy as compared to the inhibition of LEA-1 alone. This outcome can be achieved for example, by co-administration of an antibody that has LEA-1-blocking activity together with an antibody that has LEA-2-blocking activity. In some embodiments, LEA-1- and LEA-2-blocking activities are combined into a single molecular entity, and that such entity with combined LEA-1- and LEA-2-blocking activity. Such an entity may comprise or consist of a bispecific antibody where one antigen-combining site specifically recognizes MASP-1 and blocks LEA-1 and the second antigen-combining site specifically recognizes MASP-2 and blocks LEA-2. Alternatively, such an entity may consist of a bispecific monoclonal antibody where one antigen-combining site specifically recognizes MASP-3 and thus blocks LEA-1 and the second antigen-combining site specifically recognizes MASP-2 and blocks LEA-2. Such an entity may optimally consist of a bispecific monoclonal antibody where one antigen-combining site specifically recognizes both MASP-1 and MASP-3 and thus blocks LEA-1 while the second antigen-combining site specifically recognized MASP-2 and blocks LEA-2.

The MASP-2 inhibitory agent may be administered to the subject systemically, such as by intra arterial, intravenous, intramuscular, inhalational, nasal, subcutaneous or other parenteral administration, or potentially by oral administration for non peptidergic agents. Administration may be repeated as determined by a physician until the condition has been resolved or is controlled.

Application of the MASP-3 inhibitory compositions and optional MASP-2 inhibitory compositions of the present invention may be carried out by a single administration of the composition (e.g., a single composition comprising MASP-2 and MASP-3 inhibitory agents, or bispecific or dual inhibitory agents, or co-administration of separate compositions), or a limited sequence of administrations, for treating, preventing or reducing the severity of a thrombotic microangiopathy in a subject suffering from, or at risk for developing, a thrombotic microangiopathy. Alternatively, the composition may be administered at periodic intervals such as daily, biweekly, weekly, every other week, monthly or bimonthly over an extended period of time for treatment of a subject in need thereof.

As described in Examples 11-21 herein, high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory antibodies have been generated which have therapeutic utility for inhibition of the alternative pathway in AP-related diseases or conditions, such as a thrombotic microangiopathy (e.g., hemolytic uremic syndrome (HUS), atypical hemolytic uremic syndrome (aHUS), or thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura (TTP).

Accordingly, in one embodiment, the present invention provides a method for treating a subject suffering from, or at risk for developing a thrombotic microangiopathy (e.g.,hemolytic uremic syndrome (HUS), atypical hemolytic uremic syndrome (aHUS), or thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura (TTP), comprising an effective amount of a high affinity monoclonal antibody or antigen binding fragment thereof as disclosed herein that binds to human MASP-3 and inhibits alternative pathway complement activation to treat or reduce the risk of developing a thrombotic microangiopathy (e.g., hemolytic uremic syndrome (HUS), atypical hemolytic uremic syndrome (aHUS), thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura (TTP), or transplant-related TMA (TA-TMA), such as, for example, wherein said antibody or antigen binding fragment thereof comprises (a) a heavy chain variable region comprising (i) VHCDR1 comprising SEQ ID NO:84, (ii) VHCDR2 comprising SEQ ID NO:86 or SEQ ID NO:275 and (iii) VHCDR3 comprising SEQ ID NO:88; and (b) a light chain variable region comprising (i) VLCDR1 comprising SEQ ID NO:142, SEQ ID NO:257, SEQ ID NO:258 or SEQ ID NO:259 (ii) VLCDR2 comprising SEQ ID NO:144 and (iii) VLCDR3 comprising SEQ ID NO:161.

G. THE ROLE OF MASP-3 IN ASTHMA AND THERAPEUTIC METHODS USING MASP-3 INHIBITORY ANTIBODIES, OPTIONALLY IN COMBINATION WITH MASP-2 INHIBITORY AGENTS

Asthma is a common chronic inflammatory disease of the airways. Approximately 25 million people in the United States have asthma, including seven million children under the age of 18, with more than half experiencing at least one asthma attack each year, leading to more than 1.7 million emergency department visits and 450,000 hospitalizations annually (world-wide-web at gov/health/prof/lung/asthma/naci/asthma-info/index.htm., accessed on May 4, 2012). The disease is heterogeneous with multiple clinical phenotypes. The most common phenotype is allergic asthma. Other phenotypes include nonallergic asthma, aspirin-exacerbated respiratory disease, post-infectious asthma, occupational asthma, airborne irritant-induced asthma, and exercise-induced asthma. The cardinal features of allergic

asthma include airway hyperresponsiveness (AHR) to a variety of specific and nonspecific stimuli, excessive airway mucus production, pulmonary eosinophilia, and elevated concentration of serum IgE. The symptoms of asthma include coughing, wheezing, chest tightness, and shortness of breath. The goal of asthma treatment is to control the disease and minimize exacerbations, daily symptoms, and allow patients to be physically active. Current treatment guidelines recommend stepwise treatments until asthma control is attained. The first treatment step is as needed rapid-acting inhaled β2-agonist, followed by addition of controller medications such as inhaled corticosteroids, long-acting inhaled β2-agonists, leukotriene modifier drugs, theophylline, oral glucocorticosteroids, and anti-IgE monoclonal antibody.

Although asthma is multifactorial in origin, it is generally accepted that it arises as a result of inappropriate immunological responses to common environmental antigens in genetically susceptible individuals. Asthma is associated with complement activation and the anaphylatoxins (AT) C3a and C5a have proinflammatory and immunoregulatory properties that are relevant to the development and modulation of the allergic response (Zhang, X. and Kohl, *J. Expert. Rev. Clin. Immunol.*, 6:269-277, 2010). However, the relative involvement of the classical, alternative, and lectin pathways of complement in asthma is not well understood. The alternative pathway may be activated on the surface of allergens and the lectin pathway may be activated through recognition of allergen polysaccharide structures, both processes leading to the generation of AT. Complement may be activated by different pathways depending on the causative allergen involved. Highly allergic grass pollen of the Parietaria family for example is very effective at promoting MBL-dependent activation of C4, implicating LEA-2. Conversely, house dust mite allergen does not require MBL for complement activation (Varga et al. *Mol Immunol.*, 39(14):839-46, 2003).

Environmental triggers of asthma may activate complement by the alternative pathway. For example, *in vitro* exposure of human serum to cigarette smoke or diesel exhaust particles resulted in activation of complement and the effect was unaffected by the presence of EDTA, suggesting activation was via the alternative rather than classical pathway (Robbins, R.A. et al, *Am. J. Physiol.* 260: L254-L259, 1991; Kanemitsu, H., et al., *Biol. Pharm. Bull.* 21:129-132, 1998). The role of complement pathways in allergic airway inflammation was evaluated in a mouse ovalbumin sensitization and challenge model. Wild-type mice developed AHR and airway inflammation in response to aeroallergen challenge. A Crry-Ig fusion protein which inhibits all pathways of complement activation, was effective in preventing AHR and lung inflammation when administered systemically or locally by

inhalation in the mouse ovalbumine model of allergic lung inflammation (Taube et al., *Am J Respir Crit Care Med.*, 168(11):1333-41, 2003).

In comparison to wild-type mice, factor B-deficient mice demonstrated less AHR and airway inflammation whereas C4-deficient mice had similar effects as wild-type mice (Taube, C., et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 103:8084-8089, 2006). These results support a role for alternative pathway and not classical pathway involvement in the murine aeroallergen challenge model. Further evidence for the importance of the alternative pathway was provided in a study of factor H (FH) using the same mouse model (Takeda, K., et al., *J. Immunol.* 188:661-667, 2012). FH is a negative regulator of the alternative pathway and acts to prevent autologous injury of self tissues. Endogenous FH was found to be present in airways during allergen challenge and inhibition of FH with a recombinant competitive antagonist increased the extent of AHR and airway inflammation (Takeda et al., 2012, *supra*). Therapeutic delivery of CR2-fH, a chimeric protein that links the iC3b/C3d binding region of CR2 to the complement-regulatory region of FH which targets the complement regulatory activity of fH to sites of existing complement activation, protected the development of AHR and eosinophil infiltration into the airways after allergen challenge (Takeda et al., 2012, *supra*). The protective effect was demonstrated with ovalbumin as well as ragweed allergen, which is a relevant allergen in humans.

The role of lectin-dependent complement activation in asthma was evaluated in a mouse model of fungal asthma (Hogaboam et al., *J. Leukocyte Biol.* 75:805 814, 2004). These studies used mice genetically deficient in mannan binding lectin A (MBL-A), a carbohydrate binding protein that functions as the recognition component for activation of the lectin complement pathways. MBL-A(+/+) and MBL-A(-/-) *Aspergillus. fumigatus* sensitized mice were examined at days 4 and 28 after an i.t. challenge with *A. fumigatus conidia*. AHR in sensitized MBL-A(-/-) mice was significantly attenuated at both times after conidia challenge compared with the sensitized MBL-A (+/+) group. Lung TH2 cytokine levels (IL-4, IL-5 and IL-13) were significantly lower in *A. fumigatus*-sensitized MBL-A(-/-) mice compared to the wild-type group at day 4 after conidia. These results indicate that MBL-A and the lectin pathway have a major role in the development and maintenance of AHR during chronic fungal asthma.

The findings detailed above suggest the involvement of lectin-dependent complement activation in the pathogenesis of asthma. Experimental data suggest that factor B activation plays a pivotal role. In light of the fundamental role for LEA-1 in the lectin-dependent activation of factor B and subsequent activation of the alternative pathway, it is expected that

LEA-1 blocking agents will be beneficial for the treatment of certain forms of asthma mediated by the alternative pathway. Such a treatment may thus be particularly useful in house dust mite-induced asthma, or asthma caused by environmental triggers such as cigarette smoke or diesel exhaust. Asthmatic responses triggered by grass pollen on the other hand are likely to invoke LEA-2-dependent complement activation. Therefore, LEA-2-blocking agents are expected to be particularly useful in treating the asthmatic conditions in this subset of patients.

In view of the data detailed above, the inventors believe that LEA-1 and LEA-2 mediate pathologic complement activation in asthma. Depending on the inciting allergic agent, LEA-1 or LEA-2 may be preferentially involved. Thus, a LEA-1-blocking agent combined with a LEA-2-blocking agent may have utility in the treatment of multiple forms of asthma regardless of the underlying etiology. LEA-1 and LEA-2-blocking agents may have complementary, additive or synergistic effects in preventing, treating or reversing pulmonary inflammation and symptoms of asthma.

Combined LEA-1 and LEA-2 inhibition may be accomplished by co-administration of a LEA-1-blocking agent and a LEA2-blocking agent. Optimally, LEA-1 and LEA-2 inhibitory function may be encompassed in a single molecular entity, such as a bispecific antibody composed of MASP-1/3 and a MASP-2-specific binding site, or a dual specificity antibody where each binding site can bind to and block MASP-1/3 or MASP-2.

In accordance with the foregoing, an aspect of the invention thus provides a method for inhibiting LEA-1 dependent complement activation for treating, preventing, or reducing the severity of asthma, comprising administering a composition comprising a therapeutically effective amount of a LEA-1 inhibitory agent comprising a MASP-1 inhibitory agent, a MASP-3 inhibitory agent, or a combination of a MASP-1/3 inhibitory agent, in a pharmaceutical carrier to a subject suffering from, or at risk for developing asthma. The MASP-1, MASP-3, or MASP-1/3 inhibitory composition may be administered to the subject systemically, such as by intra arterial, intravenous, intramuscular, inhalational, nasal, subcutaneous or other parenteral administration, or potentially by oral administration for non peptidergic agents. Administration may be repeated as determined by a physician until the condition has been resolved or is controlled.

In one embodiment, the method according to this aspect of the invention further comprises inhibiting LEA-2-dependent complement activation for treating, preventing, or reducing the severity of asthma, comprising administering a therapeutically effective amount of a MASP-2 inhibitory agent and a MASP-1, MASP-3, or MASP-1/3 inhibitory agent to a

subject suffering from, or at risk for developing asthma. As detailed above, the use of a combination of pharmacologic agents that individually block LEA-1 and LEA-2, is expected to provide an improved therapeutic outcome in treating or preventing or reducing the severity of asthma as compared to the inhibition of LEA-1 alone. This outcome can be achieved for example, by co-administration of an antibody that has LEA-1-blocking activity together with an antibody that has LEA-2-blocking activity. In some embodiments, LEA-1- and LEA-2-blocking activities are combined into a single molecular entity, and that such entity with combined LEA-1- and LEA-2-blocking activity. Such an entity may comprise or consist of a bispecific antibody where one antigen-combining site specifically recognizes MASP-1 and blocks LEA-1 and the second antigen-combining site specifically recognizes MASP-2 and blocks LEA-2. Alternatively, such an entity may consist of a bispecific monoclonal antibody where one antigen-combining site specifically recognizes MASP-3 and thus blocks LEA-1 and the second antigen-combining site specifically recognizes MASP-2 and blocks LEA-2. Such an entity may optimally consist of a bispecific monoclonal antibody where one antigen-combining site specifically recognizes both MASP-1 and MASP-3 and thus blocks LEA-1 while the second antigen-combining site specifically recognized MASP-2 and blocks LEA-2.

The MASP-2 inhibitory agent may be administered to the subject systemically, such as by intra arterial, intravenous, intramuscular, inhalational, nasal, subcutaneous or other parenteral administration, or potentially by oral administration for non peptidergic agents. Administration may be repeated as determined by a physician until the condition has been resolved or is controlled.

Application of the MASP-3 inhibitory compositions and optional MASP-2 inhibitory compositions of the present invention may be carried out by a single administration of the composition (e.g., a single composition comprising MASP-2 and MASP-3 inhibitory agents, or bispecific or dual inhibitory agents, or co-administration of separate compositions), or a limited sequence of administrations, for treating, preventing or reducing the severity of a asthma in a subject suffering from, or at risk for developing asthma. Alternatively, the composition may be administered at periodic intervals such as daily, biweekly, weekly, every other week, monthly or bimonthly over an extended period of time for treatment of a subject in need thereof.

As described in Examples 11-21 herein, high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory antibodies have been generated which have therapeutic utility for inhibition of the alternative pathway in AP-related diseases or conditions, such as asthma.

Accordingly, in one embodiment, the present invention provides a method for treating a subject suffering from, or at risk for developing asthma comprising an effective amount of a high affinity monoclonal antibody or antigen binding fragment thereof as disclosed herein that binds to human MASP-3 and inhibits alternative pathway complement activation to treat or reduce the risk of developing asthma, such as, for example, wherein said antibody or antigen binding fragment thereof comprises (a) a heavy chain variable region comprising (i) VHCDR1 comprising SEQ ID NO:84, (ii) VHCDR2 comprising SEQ ID NO:86 or SEQ ID NO:275 and (iii) VHCDR3 comprising SEQ ID NO:88; and (b) a light chain variable region comprising (i) VLCDR1 comprising SEQ ID NO:142, SEQ ID NO:257, SEQ ID NO:258 or SEQ ID NO:259 (ii) VLCDR2 comprising SEQ ID NO:144 and (iii) VLCDR3 comprising SEQ ID NO:161.

H. THE ROLE OF MASP-3 IN DENSE DEPOSIT DISEASE, AND THERAPEUTIC METHODS USING MASP-3 INHIBITORY ANTIBODIES, OPTIONALLY IN COMBINATION WITH MASP-2 INHIBITORY AGENTS

Membranoproliferative glomerulonephritis (MPGN) is a kidney disorder characterized morphologically by mesangial cell proliferation and thickening of the glomerular capillary wall due to subendothelial extension of the mesangium. MPGN is classified as primary (also referred to as idiopathic) or secondary, with underlying diseases such as infectious diseases, systemic immune complex diseases, neoplasms, chronic liver disease, and others. Idiopathic MPGN includes three morphologic types. Type I, or classical MPGN, is characterized by subendothelial deposits of immune complexes and activation of the classical complement pathway. Type II, or dense deposit disease (DDD), is characterized by additional intra-membraneous dense deposits. Type III is characterized by additional subepithelial deposits. Idiopathic MPGN is rare, accounting for approximately 4 to 7% of primary renal causes of nephrotic syndrome (Alchi, B. and Jayne, D. *Pediatr. Nephrol.* 25:1409-1418, 2010). MPGN primarily affects children and young adults and may present as nephrotic syndrome, acute nephritic syndrome, asymptomatic proteinuria and hematuria, or recurrent gross hematuria. Renal dysfunction occurs in the majority of patients and the disease has a slowly progressive course, with approximately 40% of patients developing end-stage renal disease within 10 years of diagnosis (Alchi and Jayne, 2010, *supra*). Current treatment options include corticosteroids, immunosuppressives, antiplatelet regimens, and plasma exchange.

DDD is diagnosed by the absence of immunoglobulin and presence of C3 by immunofluorescence staining of renal biopsies, and electron microscopy shows characteristic dense osmiophilic deposits along the glomerular basement membranes. DDD is caused by dysregulation of the alternative pathway of complement (Sethi et al, *Clin J Am Soc Nephrol.* 6(5):1009-17, 2011), which can arise from a number of different mechanisms. The most common complement system abnormality in DDD is the presence of C3 nephritic factors which are autoantibodies to the alternative pathway C3 convertase (C3bBb) that increases its half-life and therefore activation of the pathway (Smith, R.J.H. et al., *Mol. Immunol.* 48:1604-1610, 2011). Other alternative pathway abnormalities include factor H autoantibody that blocks the function of factor H, gain of function C3 mutations, and genetic deficiency of factor H (Smith et al., 2011, *supra*). Recent case reports show that eclizumab (anti-C5 monoclonal antibody) treatment was associated with improvements in renal function in two patients with DDD (Daina, E. et al., *New Engl. J. Med.* 366:1161-1163, 2012; Vivarelli, M. et al., *New Engl. J. Med.* 366:1163-1165, 2012), suggesting a causative role for complement activation in renal outcomes.

Given the above genetic, functional and immunohistochemical and anecdotal clinical data, the central role for complement in the pathogenesis of DDD is well established. Thus, interventions that block the disease-causing mechanisms of complement activation, or the subsequent complement activation products, are expected to be therapeutically useful to treat this condition.

While the human genetic data suggest that inappropriate control or excessive activation of the alternative pathways amplification loop plays a key role, complement-initiating events have not been identified. Immunohistochemical studies in renal biopsies show evidence of MBL deposition in diseased tissue, suggesting involvement of the lectin pathways in the initiation of pathological complement activation in DDD (Lhotta et al, *Nephrol Dial Transplant.*, 14(4):881-6, 1999). The importance of the alternative pathway has been further corroborated in experimental models. Factor H-deficient mice develop progressive proteinuria and the renal pathological lesions characteristic of the human condition (Pickering et al., *Nat Genet.*, 31(4):424, 2002). Pickering et al. further demonstrated that ablation of factor B, which mediates LEA-1-dependent activation of the alternative pathway, fully protects factor H-deficient mice from DDD (Pickering et al., *Nat Genet.*, 31(4):424, 2002).

Thus it is expected that agents that block LEA-1 will effectively block lectin-dependent activation of the alternative pathway, and will thus provide an effective treatment

for DDD. Given that the alternative pathway amplification loop is dysregulated in DDD patients, it can further be expected that agents that block the amplification loop will be effective. Since LEA-1-targeting agents that block MASP-1 or MASP-1 and MASP-3 inhibit the maturation of factor D, such agents are predicted to effectively block the alternative pathway amplification loop.

As detailed above, pronounced MBL deposition has been found in diseased renal specimens, highlighting the probable involvement of lectin-driven activation events in DDD pathogenesis. Once an initial tissue injury to the glomerular capillaries is established, it is likely that additional MBL binding to injured glomerular endothelium and underlying mesangial structures occurs. Such tissue injuries are well known to lead to activation of LEA-2, which can thus cause further complement activation. Therefore, LEA-2-blocking agents are also expected to have utility in preventing further complement activation on injured glomerular structures, and thus forestall further disease progression towards end stage renal failure.

The data detailed above suggest that LEA-1 and LEA-2 promote separate pathologic complement activation processes in DDD. Thus, a LEA-1-blocking agent and a LEA-2 blocking agent, either alone or in combination are expected to be useful for treating DDD.

When used in combination, LEA-1- and LEA-2-blocking agents are expected to be more efficacious than either agent alone, or useful for treating different stages of the disease. LEA-1- and LEA-2-blocking agents may thus have complementary, additive or synergistic effects in preventing, treating or reversing DDD-associated renal dysfunction.

Combined LEA-1 and LEA-2 inhibition may be accomplished by co-administration of a LEA-1 blocking agent and a LEA2 blocking agent. Optimally, LEA-1 and LEA-2 blocking agents with inhibitory function may be encompassed in a single molecular entity, such as a bispecific antibody composed of MASP-1/3 and a MASP-2-specific binding site, or a dual-specificity antibody where each binding site can bind to and block MASP-1/3 or MASP-2.

In accordance with the foregoing, an aspect of the invention thus provides a method for inhibiting LEA-1 dependent complement activation for treating, preventing, or reducing the severity of dense deposit disease, comprising administering a composition comprising a therapeutically effective amount of a LEA-1 inhibitory agent comprising a MASP 1 inhibitory agent, a MASP 3 inhibitory agent, or a combination of a MASP 1/3 inhibitory agent, in a pharmaceutical carrier to a subject suffering from, or at risk for developing dense deposit disease. The MASP-1, MASP-3, or MASP-1/3 inhibitory composition may be administered to the subject systemically, such as by intra arterial, intravenous, intramuscular,

inhalational, nasal, subcutaneous or other parenteral administration, or potentially by oral administration for non peptidergic agents. Administration may be repeated as determined by a physician until the condition has been resolved or is controlled.

In another aspect, a method is provided for inhibiting LEA-2-dependent complement activation for treating, preventing, or reducing the severity of dense deposit disease, comprising administering a therapeutically effective amount of a MASP-2 inhibitory agent to a subject suffering from, or at risk for developing dense deposit disease. In another aspect, a method is provided comprising inhibiting both LEA-1 and LEA-2-dependent complement activation for treating, preventing, or reducing the severity of dense deposit disease, comprising administering a therapeutically effective amount of a MASP-2 inhibitory agent and a MASP-1, MASP-3, or MASP-1/3-inhibitory agent to a subject suffering from, or at risk for developing dense deposit disease.

In some embodiments, the method comprises inhibiting both LEA-1-dependent complement activation and LEA-2-dependent complement activation. As detailed above, the use of a combination of pharmacologic agents that individually block LEA-1 and LEA-2, is expected to provide an improved therapeutic outcome in treating, preventing or reducing the severity of dense deposit disease as compared to the inhibition of LEA-1 alone. This outcome can be achieved for example, by co-administration of an antibody that has LEA-1-blocking activity together with an antibody that has LEA-2-blocking activity. In some embodiments, LEA-1- and LEA-2-blocking activities are combined into a single molecular entity, and that such entity with combined LEA-1- and LEA-2-blocking activity. Such an entity may comprise or consist of a bispecific antibody where one antigen-combining site specifically recognizes MASP-1 and blocks LEA-1 and the second antigen-combining site specifically recognizes MASP-2 and blocks LEA-2. Alternatively, such an entity may consist of a bispecific monoclonal antibody where one antigen-combining site specifically recognizes MASP-3 and thus blocks LEA-1 and the second antigen-combining site specifically recognizes MASP-2 and blocks LEA-2. Such an entity may optimally consist of a bispecific monoclonal antibody where one antigen-combining site specifically recognizes both MASP-1 and MASP-3 and thus blocks LEA-1 while the second antigen-combining site specifically recognized MASP-2 and blocks LEA-2.

The LEA-1 and/or LEA-2 inhibitory agents may be administered to the subject systemically, such as by intra arterial, intravenous, intramuscular, inhalational, nasal, subcutaneous or other parenteral administration, or potentially by oral administration for non

peptidergic agents. Administration may be repeated as determined by a physician until the condition has been resolved or is controlled.

Application of the MASP-3 inhibitory compositions and/or the MASP-2 inhibitory compositions of the present invention may be carried out by a single administration of the composition (e.g., a single composition comprising MASP-2 and/or MASP-3 inhibitory agents, or bispecific or dual inhibitory agents, or co-administration of separate compositions), or a limited sequence of administrations, for treating, preventing or reducing the severity of dense deposit disease in a subject in need thereof. Alternatively, the composition may be administered at periodic intervals such as daily, biweekly, weekly, every other week, monthly or bimonthly over an extended period of time for treatment of a subject in need thereof.

As described in Examples 11-21 herein, high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory antibodies have been generated which have therapeutic utility for inhibition of the alternative pathway in AP-related diseases or conditions, such as dense deposit disease.

Accordingly, in one embodiment, the present invention provides a method for treating a subject suffering from, or at risk for developing dense deposit disease comprising an effective amount of a high affinity monoclonal antibody or antigen binding fragment thereof as disclosed herein that binds to human MASP-3 and inhibits alternative pathway complement activation to treat or reduce the risk of developing dense deposit disease, such as, for example, wherein said antibody or antigen binding fragment thereof comprises (a) a heavy chain variable region comprising (i) VHCDR1 comprising SEQ ID NO:84, (ii) VHCDR2 comprising SEQ ID NO:86 or SEQ ID NO:275 and (iii) VHCDR3 comprising SEQ ID NO:88; and (b) a light chain variable region comprising (i) VLCDR1 comprising SEQ ID NO:142, SEQ ID NO:257, SEQ ID NO:258 or SEQ ID NO:259 (ii) VLCDR2 comprising SEQ ID NO:144 and (iii) VLCDR3 comprising SEQ ID NO:161.

I. THE ROLE OF MASP-3 IN PAUCI-IMMUNE NECROTIZING CRESCENTIC GLOMERULONEPHRITIS, AND THERAPEUTIC METHODS USING MASP-3 INHIBITORY ANTIBODIES, OPTIONALLY IN COMBINATION WITH AND MASP-2 INHIBITORY AGENTS

Pauci-immune necrotizing crescentic glomerulonephritis (NCGN) is a form of rapidly progressive glomerulonephritis in which glomerular capillary walls show signs of inflammation yet have a paucity of detectable immunocomplex deposition or antibodies against the glomerular basement membrane. The condition is associated with a rapid decline

in renal function. Most patients with NCGN are found to have antineutrophil cytoplasmic autoantibodies (ANCA) and thus belong to a group of diseases termed ANCA-associated vasculitis. Vasculitis is a disorder of blood vessels characterized by inflammation and fibrinoid necrosis of the vessel wall. Systemic vasculitides are classified based on vessel size: large, medium, and small. Several forms of small-vessel vasculitis are associated with the presence of ANCA, namely Wegener granulomatosis, microscopic polyangiitis, Churg-Strauss syndrome, and renal-limited vasculitis (NCGN). They can also be a manifestation of underlying conditions such as systemic lupus erythematosus. The target antigens for ANCA include proteinase-3 (PR3) and myeloperoxidase (MPO). Pauci-immune NCGN is rare, with a reported incidence of approximately 4 per million in Wessex, United Kingdom (Hedger, N. et al., *Nephrol. Dial. Transplant.* 15:1593-1599, 2000). In the Wessex series of 128 patients with pauci-immune NCGN, 73% were ANCA-positive and initial dialysis was required by 59% of patients and 36% needed long-term dialysis. Treatments for pauci-immune NCGN include corticosteroids and immunsuppressive agents such as cyclophosphamide and azathioprine. Additional treatment options for ANCA-associated vasculitides include rituximab and plasma exchange (Chen, M. and Kallenberg, C.G.M. *Nat. Rev. Rheumatol.* 6:653-664, 2010).

Although NCGN is characterized by a paucity of complement deposition, the alternative pathway of complement has been implicated in its pathogenesis. A renal biopsy evaluation of 7 patients with MPO-ANCA-associated pauci-immune NCGN detected the presence of membrane attack complex, C3d, factor B, and factor P (which were not detected in biopsies from normal controls or patients with minimal change disease), whereas C4d and mannose binding lectin were not detected, suggesting selective activation of the alternative pathway (Xing, G.Q. et al. *J. Clin. Immunol.* 29:282-291, 2009). Experimental NCGN can be induced by transfer of anti-MPO IgG into wild-type mice or anti-MPO splenocytes into immune-deficient mice (Xiao, H. et al. *J. Clin. Invest.* 110:955-963, 2002). In this mouse model of NCGN, the role of specific complement activation pathways was investigated using knockout mice. After injection of anti-MPO IgG, C4-/- mice developed renal disease comparable to wild-type mice whereas C5-/- and factor B-/- mice did not develop renal disease, indicating that the alternative pathway was involved in this model and the classical and lectin pathways were not (Xiao, H. et al. *Am. J. Pathol.* 170:52-64, 2007). Moreover, incubation of MPO-ANCA or PR3-ANCA IgG from patients with TNF--primed human neutrophils caused release of factors that resulted in complement activation in normal human serum as detected by generation of C3a; this effect was not observed with IgG from healthy

subjects, suggesting the potential pathogenic role of ANCA in neutrophil and complement activation (Xiao et al., 2007, *supra*).

Based on the role outlined above for the alternative pathway in this condition, it is expected that blocking the activation of the alternative pathway will have utility in the treatment of ANCA positive NCGN. Given the requirement for fB activation for pathogenesis, it is expected that inhibitors of LEA-1 will be particularly useful in treating this condition, and in preventing the further decline in renal function in these patients.

Yet another subset of patients develops progressive renal vasulitis with crescent formation accompanied by a rapid decline in renal function in the absence of ANCA. This form of the condition is termed ANCA-negative NCGN and constitutes about one third of all patients with pauci immune NCGN (Chen et al, *JASN* 18(2): 599-605, 2007). These patients tend to be younger, and renal outcomes tend to be particularly severe. (Chen et al., *Nat Rev Nephrol.*, 5(6):313-8, 2009). A discriminating pathological feature of these patients is the deposition of MBL and C4d in renal lesions (Xing et al., *J Clin Immunol.* 30(1):144-56, 2010). MBL and C4d staining intensity in renal biopsies correlated negatively with renal function (Xing et al., 2010, *supra*). These findings suggest an important role for lectin-dependent complement activation in pathogenesis. The fact that C4d, but not factor B is commonly found in diseased tissue specimens indicates LEA-2 involvement.

Based on the role of lectin-dependent complement activation in ANCA negative NCGN described above, it is expected that blocking the activation of the LEA-2 pathway will have utility in the treatment of ANCA negative NCGN.

The data detailed above suggest that LEA-1 and LEA-2 mediate pathologic complement activation in ANCA-positive and ANCA-negative NCGN, respectively. Thus, a LEA-1-blocking agent combined with a LEA-2-blocking agent is expected to have utility in the treatment of all forms of pauci-immune NCGN, regardless of the underlying etiology. LEA-1- and LEA-2-blocking agents may thus have complementary, additive or synergistic effects in preventing, treating or reversing NCGN-associated renal dysfunction.

LEA-1 and LEA-2 inhibitors used together may achieve additional treatment benefit compared to either agent alone, or may provide effective treatment for a wider spectrum of patient subsets. Combined LEA-1 and LEA-2 inhibition may be accomplished by co-administration of a LEA-1 blocking agent and a LEA-2 blocking agent. Optimally, LEA-1 and LEA-2 inhibitory function may be encompassed in a single molecular entity, such as a bispecific antibody composed of MASP-1/3 and a MASP-2-specific binding site, or a dual-specificity antibody where each binding site can bind to and block MASP-1/3 or MASP-2.

In accordance with the foregoing, an aspect of the invention thus provides a method for inhibiting LEA-1 dependent complement activation for treating, preventing, or reducing the severity of pauci-immune necrotizing crescentic glomerulonephritis, comprising administering a composition comprising a therapeutically effective amount of a LEA-1 inhibitory agent comprising a MASP-1 inhibitory agent, a MASP-3 inhibitory agent, or a combination of a MASP-1/3 inhibitory agent, in a pharmaceutical carrier to a subject suffering from, or at risk for developing pauci-immune necrotizing crescentic glomerulonephritis. The MASP-1, MASP-3, or MASP-1/3 inhibitory composition may be administered to the subject systemically, such as by intra arterial, intravenous, intramuscular, inhalational, nasal, subcutaneous or other parenteral administration, or potentially by oral administration for non peptidergic agents. Administration may be repeated as determined by a physician until the condition has been resolved or is controlled.

In another aspect, a method is provided for inhibiting LEA-2-dependent complement activation for treating, preventing, or reducing the severity of pauci-immune necrotizing crescentic glomerulonephritis, comprising administering a therapeutically effective amount of a MASP-2 inhibitory agent to a subject suffering from, or at risk for developing pauci-immune necrotizing crescentic glomerulonephritis. In another aspect, a method is provided comprising inhibiting both LEA-1 and LEA-2-dependent complement activation for treating, preventing, or reducing the severity of pauci-immune necrotizing crescentic glomerulonephritis, comprising administering a therapeutically effective amount of a MASP-2 inhibitory agent and a MASP-1, MASP-3, or MASP-1/3 inhibitory agent to a subject in need thereof.

In some embodiments, the method comprises inhibiting both LEA-1-dependent complement activation and LEA-2-dependent complement activation. As detailed above, the use of a combination of pharmacologic agents that individually block LEA-1 and LEA-2, is expected to provide an improved therapeutic outcome in treating or preventing or reducing the severity of pauci-immune necrotizing crescentic glomerulonephritis as compared to the inhibition of LEA-1 alone. This outcome can be achieved for example, by co-administration of an antibody that has LEA-1-blocking activity together with an antibody that has LEA-2-blocking activity. In some embodiments, LEA-1- and LEA-2-blocking activities are combined into a single molecular entity, and that such entity with combined LEA-1- and LEA-2-blocking activity. Such an entity may comprise or consist of a bispecific antibody where one antigen-combining site specifically recognizes MASP-1 and blocks LEA-1 and the second antigen-combining site specifically recognizes MASP-2 and blocks LEA-2.

Alternatively, such an entity may consist of a bispecific monoclonal antibody where one antigen-combining site specifically recognizes MASP-3 and thus blocks LEA-1 and the second antigen-combining site specifically recognizes MASP-2 and blocks LEA-2. Such an entity may optimally consist of a bispecific monoclonal antibody where one antigen-combining site specifically recognizes both MASP-1 and MASP-3 and thus blocks LEA-1 while the second antigen-combining site specifically recognized MASP-2 and blocks LEA-2.

The MASP-2 inhibitory agent may be administered to the subject systemically, such as by intra arterial, intravenous, intramuscular, inhalational, nasal, subcutaneous or other parenteral administration, or potentially by oral administration for non peptidergic agents. Administration may be repeated as determined by a physician until the condition has been resolved or is controlled.

Application of the MASP-3 inhibitory compositions and/or the MASP-2 inhibitory compositions of the present invention may be carried out by a single administration of the composition (e.g., a single composition comprising MASP-2 and/or MASP-3 inhibitory agents, or bispecific or dual inhibitory agents, or co-administration of separate compositions), or a limited sequence of administrations, for treating, preventing or reducing the severity of pauci-immune necrotizing crescentic glomerulonephritis. Alternatively, the composition may be administered at periodic intervals such as daily, biweekly, weekly, every other week, monthly or bimonthly over an extended period of time for treatment of a subject in need thereof.

As described in Examples 11-21 herein, high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory antibodies have been generated which have therapeutic utility for inhibition of the alternative pathway in AP-related diseases or conditions, such as Pauci-immune necrotizing crescentic glomerulonephritis (NCGN).

Accordingly, in one embodiment, the present invention provides a method for treating a subject suffering from, or at risk for developing Pauci-immune necrotizing crescentic glomerulonephritis (NCGN) comprising an effective amount of a high affinity monoclonal antibody or antigen binding fragment thereof as disclosed herein that binds to human MASP-3 and inhibits alternative pathway complement activation to treat or reduce the risk of developing Pauci-immune necrotizing crescentic glomerulonephritis (NCGN), such as, for example, wherein said antibody or antigen binding fragment thereof comprises (a) a heavy chain variable region comprising (i) VHCDR1 comprising SEQ ID NO:84, (ii) VHCDR2 comprising SEQ ID NO:86 or SEQ ID NO:275 and (iii) VHCDR3 comprising SEQ ID NO:88; and (b) a light chain variable region comprising (i) VLCDR1 comprising SEQ ID

NO:142, SEQ ID NO:257, SEQ ID NO:258 or SEQ ID NO:259 (ii) VLCDR2 comprising SEQ ID NO:144 and (iii) VLCDR3 comprising SEQ ID NO:161.

J. THE ROLE OF MASP-3 IN TRAUMATIC BRAIN INJURY, AND THERAPEUTIC METHODS USING MASP-3 INHIBITORY ANTIBODIES, OPTIONALLY IN COMBINATION WITH AND MASP-2 INHIBITORY AGENTS

Traumatic brain injury (TBI) is a major global health problem that leads to at least 10 million deaths or hospitalizations annually (Langlois, J.A. et al., *J. Head Trauma Rehabil.* 21:375-378, 2006). In 2003 there were an estimated 1.6 million TBIs in the United States, including 1.2 million emergency department visits, 290,000 hospitalizations, and 51,000 deaths (Rutland-Brown, W. et al., *J. Head Trauma Rehabil.* 21:544-548, 2006). The majority of TBIs in the United States are caused by falls and motor vehicle traffic. TBI can result in long-term or lifelong physical, cognitive, behavioral, and emotional consequences. Over 5 million Americans are living with long-term or lifelong disability associated with a TBI (Langlois et al., 2006, *supra*).

TBI may involve penetration of the brain substance ("penetrating" injuries) or injuries that do not penetrate the brain ("closed" injuries). The injury profiles and associated neurobehavioral sequelae can be quite different between penetrating and closed TBI. Although each injury is unique, certain brain regions are particularly vulnerable to trauma-induced damage, including the frontal cortex and subfrontal white matter, the basal ganglia and diencephalon, the rostral brain stem, and the temporal lobes including the hippocampi (McAllister, T.W. *Dialogues Clin. Neurosci.* 13:287-300, 2011). TBI can lead to changes in several neurotransmitter systems, including release of glutamate and other excitatory amino acids during the acute phase and chronic alterations in the catecholaminergic and cholinergic systems, which may be associated with neurobehavioral disability (McAllister, 2011, *supra*). Survivors of significant TBI often suffer from cognitive defects, personality changes, and increased psychiatric disorders, particularly depression, anxiety, and post-traumatic stress disorder. Despite intense research, no clinically effective treatment for TBI that can reduce mortality and morbidity and improve functional outcome has yet to be found.

Complement factors and TBI

Numerous studies have identified a relationship of complement proteins and neurological disorders, including Alzheimer's disease, multiple sclerosis, myasthenia gravis, Guillain-Barré syndrome, cerebral lupus, and stroke (reviewed in Wagner, E., et al., *Nature*

Rev Drug Disc. 9: 43-56, 2010). Recently a role for C1q and C3 in synapse elimination has been demonstrated, thus complement factors are likely involved in both normal CNS function and neurodegenerative disease (Stevens, B. et al., *Cell* 131: 1164–1178, 2007). The gene for MASP-1 and MASP-3 is extensively expressed in the brain and also in a glioma cell line, T98G (Kuraya, M. et al., *Int Immunol*., 15:109-17, 2003), consistent with a role of the lectin pathway in the CNS.

MASP-1 and MASP-3 are key to immediate defense against pathogens and altered self-cells, but the lectin pathway also is responsible for severe tissue damage after stroke, heart attack, and other ischemia reperfusion injuries. Similarly, MASP-1 and MASP-3 are likely mediators in the tissue damage caused by TBI. Inhibition of Factor B in the alternative pathway has been shown to attenuate TBI in two mouse models. Factor B knockout mice are protected from complement-mediated neuroinflammation and neuropathology after TBI (Leinhase I, et al., *BMC Neurosci*. 7:55, 2006). In addition, anti-factor B antibody attenuated cerebral tissue damage and neuronal cell death in TBI induced mice (Leinhase I, et al., *J Neuroinflammation* 4:13, 2007). MASP-3 directly activates Factor B (Iwaki, D. et al., *J Immunol.* 187:3751-8, 2011) and therefore is also a likely mediator in TBI. Similar to inhibition of Factor B, LEA-1 inhibitors, such as antibodies against MASP-3 are expected to provide a promising strategy for treating tissue damage and subsequent sequelae in TBI.

Thus, LEA-1 and LEA-2 inhibitors may have independent therapeutic benefit in TBI. In addition, LEA-1 and LEA-2 inhibitors used together may achieve additional treatment benefit compared to either agent alone, or may provide effective treatment for a wider spectrum of patient subsets. Combined LEA-1 and LEA-2 inhibition may be accomplished by co-administration of a LEA-1-blocking agent and a LEA2-blocking agent. Optimally, LEA-1 and LEA-2 inhibitory function may be encompassed in a single molecular entity, such as a bispecific antibody composed of MASP-1/3 and a MASP-2-specific binding site, or a dual-specificity antibody where each binding site can bind to and block MASP-1/3 or MASP-2.

In accordance with the foregoing, an aspect of the invention thus provides a method for inhibiting LEA-1 dependent complement activation for treating, or reducing the severity of traumatic brain injury, comprising administering a composition comprising a therapeutically effective amount of a LEA-1 inhibitory agent comprising a MASP-1 inhibitory agent, a MASP-3 inhibitory agent, or a combination of a MASP-1/3 inhibitory agent, in a pharmaceutical carrier to a subject suffering from a traumatic brain injury. The MASP-1, MASP-3, or MASP-1/3 inhibitory composition may be administered to the subject systemically, such as by intra arterial, intravenous, intramuscular, inhalational, nasal,

intracranial, subcutaneous or other parenteral administration, or potentially by oral administration for non peptidergic agents. Administration may be repeated as determined by a physician until the condition has been resolved or is controlled.

In another aspect, a method is provided for inhibiting LEA-2-dependent complement activation for treating, or reducing the severity of traumatic brain injury, comprising administering a therapeutically effective amount of a MASP-2 inhibitory agent to a subject suffering from a traumatic brain injury. In another aspect, a method is provided comprising inhibiting both LEA-1 and LEA-2-dependent complement activation for treating, or reducing the severity of traumatic brain injury, comprising administering a therapeutically effective amount of a MASP-2 inhibitory agent and a MASP-1, MASP-3, or MASP-1/3 inhibitory agent to a subject suffering from a traumatic brain injury.

In some embodiments, the method comprises inhibiting both LEA-1-dependent complement activation and LEA-2-dependent complement activation. As detailed above, the use of a combination of pharmacologic agents that individually block LEA-1 and LEA-2 is expected to provide an improved therapeutic outcome in treating or reducing the severity of traumatic brain injury as compared to the inhibition of LEA-1 alone. This outcome can be achieved for example, by co-administration of an antibody that has LEA-1-blocking activity together with an antibody that has LEA-2-blocking activity. In some embodiments, LEA-1- and LEA-2-blocking activities are combined into a single molecular entity, and that such entity with combined LEA-1- and LEA-2-blocking activity. Such an entity may comprise or consist of a bispecific antibody where one antigen-combining site specifically recognizes MASP-1 and blocks LEA-1 and the second antigen-combining site specifically recognizes MASP-2 and blocks LEA-2. Alternatively, such an entity may consist of a bispecific monoclonal antibody where one antigen-combining site specifically recognizes MASP-3 and thus blocks LEA-1 and the second antigen-combining site specifically recognizes MASP-2 and blocks LEA-2. Such an entity may optimally consist of a bispecific monoclonal antibody where one antigen-combining site specifically recognizes both MASP-1 and MASP-3 and thus blocks LEA-1 while the second antigen-combining site specifically recognized MASP-2 and blocks LEA-2.

The MASP-2 inhibitory agent may be administered to the subject systemically, such as by intra arterial, intravenous, intramuscular, inhalational, nasal, subcutaneous, intracranial, or other parenteral administration, or potentially by oral administration for non peptidergic agents. Administration may be repeated as determined by a physician until the condition has been resolved or is controlled.

Application of the MASP-3 inhibitory compositions and/or the MASP-2 inhibitory compositions of the present invention may be carried out by a single administration of the composition (e.g., a single composition comprising MASP-2 and/or MASP-3 inhibitory agents, or bispecific or dual inhibitory agents, or co-administration of separate compositions), or a limited sequence of administrations, for treating or reducing the severity of traumatic brain injury. Alternatively, the composition may be administered at periodic intervals such as daily, biweekly, weekly, every other week, monthly or bimonthly over an extended period of time for treatment of a subject in need thereof.

As described in Examples 11-21 herein, high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory antibodies have been generated which have therapeutic utility for inhibition of the alternative pathway in AP-related diseases or conditions, such as traumatic brain injury.

Accordingly, in one embodiment, the present invention provides a method for treating a subject suffering from, or at risk for developing traumatic brain injury comprising an effective amount of a high affinity monoclonal antibody or antigen binding fragment thereof as disclosed herein that binds to human MASP-3 and inhibits alternative pathway complement activation to treat or reduce the risk of developing traumatic brain injury, such as, for example, wherein said antibody or antigen binding fragment thereof comprises (a) a heavy chain variable region comprising (i) VHCDR1 comprising SEQ ID NO:84, (ii) VHCDR2 comprising SEQ ID NO:86 or SEQ ID NO:275 and (iii) VHCDR3 comprising SEQ ID NO:88; and (b) a light chain variable region comprising (i) VLCDR1 comprising SEQ ID NO:142, SEQ ID NO:257, SEQ ID NO:258 or SEQ ID NO:259 (ii) VLCDR2 comprising SEQ ID NO:144 and (iii) VLCDR3 comprising SEQ ID NO:161.

K. THE ROLE OF MASP-3 IN ASPIRATION PNEUMONIA, AND THERAPEUTIC METHODS USING MASP-3 INHIBITORY ANTIBODIES, OPTIONALLY IN COMBINATION WITH MASP-2 INHIBITORY AGENTS

Aspiration is defined as the inhalation of either oropharyngeal or gastric contents into the lower airways. Aspiration may result in complications of aspiration (chemical) pneumonitis, primary bacterial aspiration pneumonia, or secondary bacterial infection of chemical pneumonitis. Risk factors for aspiration include decreased levels of consciousness (e.g., head trauma, alcohol or drug-induced alterations in sensorium, stroke), various gastrointestinal and esophageal abnormalities, and neuromuscular diseases. It is estimated that 5-15% of the 4.5 million cases of community-acquired pneumonia are due to aspiration

pneumonia (Marik, P.E. *New Engl. J. Med.* 344:665-671, 2001). Treatment of chemical pneumonitis is mainly supportive and the use of empiric antibiotics is controversial. Treatment of bacterial aspiration pneumonia is with appropriate antibiotics, which is based on whether the aspiration occurred in the community or in the hospital as the likely causative organisms differ between these settings. Measures should be taken to prevent aspiration in high-risk patients, for example elderly patients in nursing homes who have impaired gag reflexes. Measures that have been shown to be effective prophylaxis include elevation of the head of the bed while feeding, dental prophylaxis, and good oral hygiene. Prophylactic antibiotics have not been shown to be effective and are discouraged as they may lead to the emergence of resistant organisms.

Modulation of complement components has been proposed for numerous clinical indications, including infectious disease---sepsis, viral, bacterial, and fungal infections---and pulmonary conditions---respiratory distress syndrome, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, and cystic fibrosis (reviewed in Wagner, E., et al., *Nature Rev Drug Disc.* 9: 43-56, 2010). Support for this proposal is provided by numerous clinical and genetic studies. For example, there is a significantly decreased frequency of patients with low MBL levels with clinical tuberculosis (Soborg et al., *Journal of Infectious Diseases* 188:777–82, 2003), suggesting that low levels of MBL are associated with protection from disease.

In a murine model of acid aspiration injury, Weiser MR et al., *J. Appl. Physiol.* 83(4): 1090–1095, 1997, demonstrated that C3-knockout mice were protected from serious injury; whereas C4-knockout mice were not protected, indicating that complement activation is mediated by the alternative pathway. Consequently, blocking the alternative pathway with LEA-1 inhibitors is expected to provide a therapeutic benefit in aspiration pneumonia.

Thus, LEA-1 and LEA-2 inhibitors may have independent therapeutic benefit in aspiration pneumonia. In addition, LEA-1 and LEA-2 inhibitors used together may achieve additional treatment benefit compared to either agent alone, or may provide effective treatment for a wider spectrum of patient subsets. Combined LEA-1 and LEA-2 inhibition may be accomplished by co-administration of a LEA-1-blocking agent and a LEA-2-blocking agent. Optimally, LEA-1 and LEA-2 inhibitory function may be encompassed in a single molecular entity, such as a bi-specific antibody composed of MASP-1/3 and a MASP-2-specific binding site, or a dual-specificity antibody where each binding site binds to and blocks MASP-1/3 or MASP-2.

An aspect of the invention thus provides a method for inhibiting LEA-1 dependent complement activation to treat aspiration pneumonia by administering a composition

comprising a therapeutically effective amount of a MASP-1 inhibitory agent, a MASP-3 inhibitory agent, or a combination of a MASP-1/3 inhibitory agent, in a pharmaceutical carrier to a subject suffering from such a condition or other complement mediated pneumonia. The MASP-1, MASP-3, or MASP-1/3 inhibitory composition may be administered locally to the lung, as by an inhaler. Alternately, the MASP-1, MASP-3, or MASP-1/3 inhibitory agent may be administered to the subject systemically, such as by intra arterial, intravenous, intramuscular, inhalational, nasal, subcutaneous or other parenteral administration, or potentially by oral administration. Administration may be repeated as determined by a physician until the condition has been resolved or is controlled.

In accordance with the foregoing, an aspect of the invention thus provides a method for inhibiting LEA-1 dependent complement activation for treating, preventing or reducing the severity of aspiration pneumonia, comprising administering a composition comprising a therapeutically effective amount of a LEA-1 inhibitory agent comprising a MASP-1 inhibitory agent, a MASP-3 inhibitory agent, or a combination of a MASP-1/3 inhibitory agent, in a pharmaceutical carrier to a subject suffering from, or at risk for developing aspiration pneumonia. The MASP-1, MASP-3, or MASP-1/3 inhibitory composition may be administered to the subject systemically, such as by intra arterial, intravenous, intramuscular, inhalational, nasal, subcutaneous or other parenteral administration, or potentially by oral administration for non peptidergic agents. Administration may be repeated as determined by a physician until the condition has been resolved or is controlled.

In another aspect, a method is provided for inhibiting LEA-2-dependent complement activation for treating, preventing or reducing the severity of aspiration pneumonia, comprising administering a therapeutically effective amount of a MASP-2 inhibitory agent to a subject suffering from, or at risk for developing aspiration pneumonia. In another aspect, a method is provided comprising inhibiting both LEA-1 and LEA-2-dependent complement activation for treating, or reducing the severity of aspiration pneumonia, comprising administering a therapeutically effective amount of a MASP-2 inhibitory agent and a MASP-1, MASP-3, or MASP-1/3 inhibitory agent to a subject suffering from aspiration pneumonia.In some embodiments, the method comprises inhibiting both LEA-1-dependent complement activation and LEA-2-dependent complement activation. As detailed above, the use of a combination of pharmacologic agents that individually block LEA-1 and LEA-2, is expected to provide an improved therapeutic outcome in treating or reducing the severity of aspiration pneumonia as compared to the inhibition of LEA-1 alone. This outcome can be achieved for example, by co-administration of an antibody that has LEA-1-blocking activity

together with an antibody that has LEA-2-blocking activity. In some embodiments, LEA-1- and LEA-2-blocking activities are combined into a single molecular entity, and that such entity with combined LEA-1- and LEA-2-blocking activity. Such an entity may comprise or consist of a bispecific antibody where one antigen-combining site specifically recognizes MASP-1 and blocks LEA-1 and the second antigen-combining site specifically recognizes MASP-2 and blocks LEA-2. Alternatively, such an entity may consist of a bispecific monoclonal antibody where one antigen-combining site specifically recognizes MASP-3 and thus blocks LEA-1 and the second antigen-combining site specifically recognizes MASP-2 and blocks LEA-2. Such an entity may optimally consist of a bispecific monoclonal antibody where one antigen-combining site specifically recognizes both MASP-1 and MASP-3 and thus blocks LEA-1 while the second antigen-combining site specifically recognized MASP-2 and blocks LEA-2.

The MASP-2 inhibitory agent may be administered to the subject systemically, such as by intra arterial, intravenous, intramuscular, inhalational, nasal, subcutaneous, or other parenteral administration, or potentially by oral administration for non-peptidergic agents. Administration may be repeated as determined by a physician until the condition has been resolved or is controlled.

Application of the MASP-3 inhibitory compositions and/or the MASP-2 inhibitory compositions of the present invention may be carried out by a single administration of the composition (e.g., a single composition comprising MASP-2 and/or MASP-3 inhibitory agents, or bispecific or dual-inhibitory agents, or co-administration of separate compositions), or a limited sequence of administrations, for treating, preventing or reducing the severity of aspiration pneumonia in a subject in need thereof. Alternatively, the composition may be administered at periodic intervals such as daily, biweekly, weekly, every other week, monthly or bimonthly over an extended period of time for treatment of a subject in need thereof.

As described in Examples 11-21 herein, high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory antibodies have been generated which have therapeutic utility for inhibition of the alternative pathway in AP-related diseases or conditions, such as aspiration pneumonia.

Accordingly, in one embodiment, the present invention provides a method for treating a subject suffering from, or at risk for developing aspiration pneumonia comprising an effective amount of a high affinity monoclonal antibody or antigen binding fragment thereof as disclosed herein that binds to human MASP-3 and inhibits alternative pathway complement activation to treat or reduce the risk of developing aspiration pneumonia, such as, for example, wherein said antibody or antigen binding fragment thereof comprises (a) a

heavy chain variable region comprising (i) VHCDR1 comprising SEQ ID NO:84, (ii) VHCDR2 comprising SEQ ID NO:86 or SEQ ID NO:275 and (iii) VHCDR3 comprising SEQ ID NO:88; and (b) a light chain variable region comprising (i) VLCDR1 comprising SEQ ID NO:142, SEQ ID NO:257, SEQ ID NO:258 or SEQ ID NO:259 (ii) VLCDR2 comprising SEQ ID NO:144 and (iii) VLCDR3 comprising SEQ ID NO:161.

L. THE ROLE OF MASP-3 IN ENDOPHTHALMITIS, AND THERAPEUTIC METHODS USING MASP-3 INHIBITORY ANTIBODIES, OPTIONALLY IN COMBINATION WITH AND MASP-2 INHIBITORY AGENTS

Endophthalmitis is an inflammatory condition of the intraocular cavities and is usually caused by infection. Endophthalmitis may be endogeneous, resulting from hematogenous spread of organisms from a distant source of infection (e.g., endocarditis), or exogeneous, from direct inoculation of an organism from the outside as a complication of ocular surgery, foreign bodies, and/or blunt or penetrating ocular trauma. Exogeneous endophthalmitis is much more common than endogenous and most cases of exogeneous endophthalmitis occur following ocular surgery. In the United States, cataract surgery is the leading cause of endophthalmitis and occurs in 0.1-0.3% of this procedure, with an apparent increase in the incidence over the last decade (Taban, M. et al., *Arch. Ophthalmol.* 123:613-620, 2005). Post-surgical endophthalmitis may present either acutely, within 2 weeks of surgery, or delayed, months after surgery. Acute endophthalmitis typically presents with pain, redness, lid swelling, and decreased visual acuity. Delayed-onset endophthalmitis is less common than the acute form and patients may report only mild pain and photosensitivity. Treatment of endophthalmitis depends on the underlying cause and may include systemic and/or intravitreal antibiotics. Endophthalmitis may result in decreased or loss of vision.

As previously described for AMD, multiple complement pathway genes have been associated with ophthalmologic disorders, and these specifically include genes of the lectin pathway. For example, MBL2 has been identified with subtypes of AMD (Dinu V, et al., *Genet Epidemiol* 31: 224–37, 2007). The LEA-1 and LEA-2 pathways are likely to be involved in ocular inflammatory conditions such as endophthalmitis (Chow SP et al., *Clin Experiment Ophthalmol.* 39:871-7, 2011). Chow et al. examined MBL levels of patients with endophthalmitis and demonstrated that both MBL levels and functional lectin pathway activity are significantly elevated in inflamed human eyes but virtually undetectable in non-inflamed control eyes. This suggests a role for MBL and the lectin pathway in sight-

threatening ocular inflammatory conditions, particularly endophthalmitis. Furthermore, in a murine model of corneal fungal keratitis, the MBL-A gene was one of five upregulated inflammatory pathway genes (Wang Y., et al., *Mol Vis* 13: 1226–33, 2007).

Thus, LEA-1 and LEA-2 inhibitors are expected to have independent therapeutic benefit in treating endophthalmitis. In addition, LEA-1 and LEA-2 inhibitors used together may achieve additional treatment benefit compared to either agent alone, or may provide effective treatment for a wider spectrum of patient subsets. Combined LEA-1 and LEA-2 inhibition may be accomplished by co-administration of a LEA-1-blocking agent and a LEA-2-blocking agent. Optimally, LEA-1 and LEA-2 inhibitory function may be encompassed in a single molecular entity, such as a bi-specific antibody composed of MASP-1/3 and a MASP-2-specific binding site, or a dual-specificity antibody where each binding site binds to and blocks MASP-1/3 or MASP-2

In accordance with the foregoing, an aspect of the invention thus provides a method for inhibiting LEA-1 dependent complement activation for treating, preventing, or reducing the severity of endophthalmitis, comprising administering a composition comprising a therapeutically effective amount of a LEA-1 inhibitory agent comprising a MASP-1 inhibitory agent, a MASP-3 inhibitory agent, or a combination of a MASP-1/3 inhibitory agent, in a pharmaceutical carrier to a subject suffering from, or at risk for developing endophthalmitis. The MASP-1, MASP-3, or MASP-1/3 inhibitory composition may be administered locally to the eye, such as by irrigation or application of the composition in the form of a topical gel, salve or drops, or by intravitreal administration. Alternately, the MASP-1, MASP-3, or MASP-1/3 inhibitory agent may be administered to the subject systemically, such as by intra arterial, intravenous, intramuscular, inhalational, nasal, subcutaneous or other parenteral administration, or potentially by oral administration for non peptidergic agents. Administration may be repeated as determined by a physician until the condition has been resolved or is controlled.

In another aspect, a method is provided for inhibiting LEA-2-dependent complement activation for treating, preventing, or reducing the severity of endophthalmitis, comprising administering a therapeutically effective amount of a MASP-2 inhibitory agent to a subject suffering from, or at risk for developing endophthalmitis. In another aspect, a method is provided comprising inhibiting both LEA-1 and LEA-2-dependent complement activation for treating, or reducing the severity of endophthalmitis, comprising administering a therapeutically effective amount of a MASP-2 inhibitory agent and a MASP-1, MASP-3, or MASP-1/3 inhibitory agent to a subject suffering from endophthalmitis.

In some embodiments, the method comprises inhibiting both LEA-1-dependent complement activation and LEA-2-dependent complement activation. As detailed above, the use of a combination of pharmacologic agents that individually block LEA-1 and LEA-2 is expected to provide an improved therapeutic outcome in treating or preventing or reducing the severity of endophthalmitis, as compared to the inhibition of LEA-1 alone. This outcome can be achieved for example, by co-administration of an antibody that has LEA-1-blocking activity together with an antibody that has LEA-2-blocking activity. In some embodiments, LEA-1- and LEA-2-blocking activities are combined into a single molecular entity, and that such entity with combined LEA-1- and LEA-2-blocking activity. Such an entity may comprise or consist of a bispecific antibody where one antigen-combining site specifically recognizes MASP-1 and blocks LEA-1 and the second antigen-combining site specifically recognizes MASP-2 and blocks LEA-2. Alternatively, such an entity may consist of a bispecific monoclonal antibody where one antigen-combining site specifically recognizes MASP-3 and thus blocks LEA-1 and the second antigen-combining site specifically recognizes MASP-2 and blocks LEA-2. Such an entity may optimally consist of a bispecific monoclonal antibody where one antigen-combining site specifically recognizes both MASP-1 and MASP-3 and thus blocks LEA-1 while the second antigen-combining site specifically recognized MASP-2 and blocks LEA-2.

The MASP-2 inhibitory agent may be administered locally to the eye, such as by irrigation or application of the composition in the form of a topical gel, salve or drops, or by intravitreal injection. Alternately, the MASP-2 inhibitory agent may be administered to the subject systemically, such as by intra arterial, intravenous, intramuscular, inhalational, nasal, subcutaneous or other parenteral administration, or potentially by oral administration for non peptidergic agents. Administration may be repeated as determined by a physician until the condition has been resolved or is controlled.

Application of the MASP-3 inhibitory compositions and/or the MASP-2 inhibitory compositions of the present invention may be carried out by a single administration of the composition (e.g., a single composition comprising MASP-2 and/or MASP-3 inhibitory agents, or bispecific or dual inhibitory agents, or co-administration of separate compositions), or a limited sequence of administrations, for treating, preventing or reducing the severity of endophthalmitis in a subject in need thereof. Alternatively, the composition may be administered at periodic intervals such as daily, biweekly, weekly, every other week, monthly or bimonthly over an extended period of time for treatment of a subject in need thereof.

As described in Examples 11-21 herein, high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory antibodies have been generated which have therapeutic utility for inhibition of the alternative pathway in AP-related diseases or conditions, such as endophthalmitis.

Accordingly, in one embodiment, the present invention provides a method for treating a subject suffering from, or at risk for developing endophthalmitis comprising an effective amount of a high affinity monoclonal antibody or antigen binding fragment thereof as disclosed herein that binds to human MASP-3 and inhibits alternative pathway complement activation to treat or reduce the risk of developing endophthalmitis, such as, for example, wherein said antibody or antigen binding fragment thereof comprises (a) a heavy chain variable region comprising (i) VHCDR1 comprising SEQ ID NO:84, (ii) VHCDR2 comprising SEQ ID NO:86 or SEQ ID NO:275 and (iii) VHCDR3 comprising SEQ ID NO:88; and (b) a light chain variable region comprising (i) VLCDR1 comprising SEQ ID NO:142, SEQ ID NO:257, SEQ ID NO:258 or SEQ ID NO:259 (ii) VLCDR2 comprising SEQ ID NO:144 and (iii) VLCDR3 comprising SEQ ID NO:161.

M. THE ROLE OF MASP-3 IN NEUROMYELITIS OPTICA, AND THERAPEUTIC METHODS USING MASP-3 INHIBITORY ANTIBODIES, OPTIONALLY IN COMBINATION WITH MASP-2 INHIBITORY AGENTS

Neuromyelitis optica (NMO) is an autoimmune disease that targets the optic nerves and spinal cord. This results in inflammation of the optic nerve, known as optic neuritis, and the spinal cord, known as myelitis. Spinal cord lesions in NMO may lead to weakness or paralysis in the legs or arms, blindness, bladder and bowel dysfunction, and sensory dysfunction.

NMO shares several similarities to multiple sclerosis (MS), since both are due to immune attack of CNS targets and both result in demyelination (Papadopoulos and Verkman, *Lancet Neurol.*, 11(6):535-44, 2013). However, the molecular targets, treatments, and lesions for NMO are distinct from those of MS. While MS is largely mediated by T cells, NMO patients typically have antibodies that target the water channel protein aquaporin 4 (AQP4), a protein found in astrocytes that surround the blood–brain barrier. Interferon beta is the most commonly used therapy for MS, but it is generally acknowledged to be harmful in NMO. The inflammatory lesions of NMO are found in the spinal cord and optic nerve and may progress to the brain, including white and gray matter. The demyelination that occurs in NMO lesions is mediated by complement (Papadopoulos and Verkman, *Lancet Neurol.*, 11(6):535-44, 2013).

Complement-dependent cytotoxicity appears to be the major mechanism causing development of NMO. Over 90% of NMO patients have IgG antibodies against AQP4 (Jarius and Wildemann, Jarius S, Wildemann B., *Nat Rev Neurol.* 2010 Jul;6(7):383-92). These antibodies initiate formation of a lesion at the blood brain barrier. The initial antigen-antibody complex---AQP4/AQP4-IgG---on the surface of astrocytes activates the classical pathway of complement. This results in formation of the membrane attack complex on the astrocyte surface, leading to granulocyte infiltration, demyelination, and ultimately necrosis of astrocytes, oligodendrocytes and neurons (Misu et al., *Acta Neuropathol* 125(6):815-27, 2013). These cellular events are reflected in tissue destruction and formation of cystic, necrotic lesions.

The classical pathway of complement clearly is critical for NMO pathogenesis. NMO lesions show a vasculocentric deposition of immunoglobulin and activated complement components (Jarius et al., *Nat Clin Pract Neurol.* 4(4):202-14, 2008). In addition, complement proteins such as C5a have been isolated from cerebrospinal fluid of NMO patients (Kuroda et al., *J Neuroimmunol.*,254(1-2):178-82, 2013). Furthermore, serum IgG obtained from NMO patients can cause complement-dependent cytotoxicity in a mouse NMO model (Saadoun et al., *Brain*, 133(Pt 2):349-61, 2010). A monoclonal antibody against C1q prevents the complement mediated destruction of astrocytes and lesions in a mouse model of NMO (Phuan et al., *Acta Neuropathol*, 125(6):829-40, 2013).

The alternative pathway of complement serves to amplify overall complement activity. Harboe and colleagues (2004) demonstrated that selective blockade of the alternative pathway inhibited more than 80% of membrane attack complex formation induced by the classical pathway (Harboe et al., *Clin Exp Immunol* 138(3):439-46, 2004). Tüzün and colleagues (2013) examined both classical and alternative pathway products in NMO patients (Tüzün E, et al., *J Neuroimmunol.* 233(1-2): 211-5, 2011). C4d, the breakdown product of C4, was measured to evaluate classical pathway activity and was increased in NMO patient sera compared to controls (an elevation of 2.14-fold). In addition, an increase of Factor Bb, the breakdown product of the alternative pathway Factor B, was observed in NMO patients compared to MS patients or normal control individuals (an elevation of 1.33-fold). This suggests that alternative pathway function is also increased in NMO. This activation would be expected to increase overall complement activation, and in fact sC5b-9, the final product of the complement cascade, was significantly increased (a 4.14-fold elevation).

Specific inhibitors of MASP-3 are expected to provide benefit in treating patients suffering from NMO. As demonstrated herein, serum lacking MASP-3 is unable to activate

Factor B, an essential component of C5 convertase, or Factor D, the central activator of the alternative pathway. Therefore, blocking MASP-3 activity with an inhibitory agent such as an antibody or small molecule would also be expected to inhibit activation of Factor B and Factor D. Inhibition of these two factors will arrest the amplification of the alternative pathway, resulting in diminished overall complement activity. MASP-3 inhibition should thus significantly improve therapeutic outcomes in NMO.

Thus, LEA-1 and/or LEA-2 inhibitors are expected to have independent therapeutic benefit in treating NMO. In addition, LEA-1 and LEA-2 inhibitors used together may achieve additional treatment benefit compared to either agent alone, or may provide effective treatment for a wider spectrum of patient subsets. Combined LEA-1 and LEA-2 inhibition may be accomplished by co-administration of a LEA-1-blocking agent and a LEA-2-blocking agent. Optimally, LEA-1 and LEA-2 inhibitory function may be encompassed in a single molecular entity, such as a bi-specific antibody composed of MASP-1/3 and a MASP-2-specific binding site, or a dual-specificity antibody where each binding site binds to and blocks MASP-1/3 or MASP-2

In accordance with the foregoing, an aspect of the invention thus provides a method for inhibiting LEA-1 dependent complement activation for treating, preventing, or reducing the severity of NMO, comprising administering a composition comprising a therapeutically effective amount of a LEA-1 inhibitory agent comprising a MASP-1 inhibitory agent, a MASP-3 inhibitory agent, or a combination of a MASP-1/3 inhibitory agent, in a pharmaceutical carrier to a subject suffering from, or at risk for developing NMO. The MASP-1, MASP-3, or MASP-1/3 inhibitory composition may be administered locally to the eye, such as by irrigation or application of the composition in the form of a topical gel, salve or drops, or by intravitreal administration. Alternately, the MASP-1, MASP-3, or MASP-1/3 inhibitory agent may be administered to the subject systemically, such as by intra arterial, intravenous, intramuscular, inhalational, nasal, subcutaneous or other parenteral administration, or potentially by oral administration for non peptidergic agents. Administration may be repeated as determined by a physician until the condition has been resolved or is controlled.

In another aspect, a method is provided for inhibiting LEA-2-dependent complement activation for treating, preventing, or reducing the severity of NMO, comprising administering a therapeutically effective amount of a MASP-2 inhibitory agent to a subject suffering from, or at risk for developing NMO. In another aspect, a method is provided comprising inhibiting both LEA-1 and LEA-2-dependent complement activation for treating,

or reducing the severity of NMO, comprising administering a therapeutically effective amount of a MASP-2 inhibitory agent and a MASP-1, MASP-3, or MASP-1/3 inhibitory agent to a subject suffering from NMO.

In some embodiments, the method comprises inhibiting both LEA-1-dependent complement activation and LEA-2-dependent complement activation. As detailed above, the use of a combination of pharmacologic agents that individually block LEA-1 and LEA-2 is expected to provide an improved therapeutic outcome in treating or preventing or reducing the severity of NMO, as compared to the inhibition of LEA-1 alone. This outcome can be achieved for example, by co-administration of an antibody that has LEA-1-blocking activity together with an antibody that has LEA-2-blocking activity. In some embodiments, LEA-1- and LEA-2-blocking activities are combined into a single molecular entity, and that such entity with combined LEA-1- and LEA-2-blocking activity. Such an entity may comprise or consist of a bispecific antibody where one antigen-combining site specifically recognizes MASP-1 and blocks LEA-1 and the second antigen-combining site specifically recognizes MASP-2 and blocks LEA-2. Alternatively, such an entity may consist of a bispecific monoclonal antibody where one antigen-combining site specifically recognizes MASP-3 and thus blocks LEA-1 and the second antigen-combining site specifically recognizes MASP-2 and blocks LEA-2. Such an entity may optimally consist of a bispecific monoclonal antibody where one antigen-combining site specifically recognizes both MASP-1 and MASP-3 and thus blocks LEA-1 while the second antigen-combining site specifically recognized MASP-2 and blocks LEA-2.

The MASP-2 inhibitory agent may be administered locally to the eye, such as by irrigation or application of the composition in the form of a topical gel, salve or drops, or by intravitreal injection. Alternately, the MASP-2 inhibitory agent may be administered to the subject systemically, such as by intra arterial, intravenous, intramuscular, inhalational, nasal, subcutaneous or other parenteral administration, or potentially by oral administration for non peptidergic agents. Administration may be repeated as determined by a physician until the condition has been resolved or is controlled.

Application of the MASP-3 inhibitory compositions and/or the MASP 2 inhibitory compositions of the present invention may be carried out by a single administration of the composition (e.g., a single composition comprising MASP-2 and/or MASP-3 inhibitory agents, or bispecific or dual inhibitory agents, or co-administration of separate compositions), or a limited sequence of administrations, for treating, preventing or reducing the severity of NMO in a subject in need thereof. Alternatively, the composition may be administered at

periodic intervals such as daily, biweekly, weekly, every other week, monthly or bimonthly over an extended period of time for treatment of a subject in need thereof.

As described in Examples 11-21 herein, high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory antibodies have been generated which have therapeutic utility for inhibition of the alternative pathway in AP-related diseases or conditions, such as neuromyelitis optica (NMO).

Accordingly, in one embodiment, the present invention provides a method for treating a subject suffering from, or at risk for developing neuromyelitis optica (NMO). comprising an effective amount of a high affinity monoclonal antibody or antigen binding fragment thereof as disclosed herein that binds to human MASP-3 and inhibits alternative pathway complement activation to treat or reduce the risk of developing neuromyelitis optica (NMO), such as, for example, wherein said antibody or antigen binding fragment thereof comprises (a) a heavy chain variable region comprising (i) VHCDR1 comprising SEQ ID NO:84, (ii) VHCDR2 comprising SEQ ID NO:86 or SEQ ID NO:275 and (iii) VHCDR3 comprising SEQ ID NO:88; and (b) a light chain variable region comprising (i) VLCDR1 comprising SEQ ID NO:142, SEQ ID NO:257, SEQ ID NO:258 or SEQ ID NO:259 (ii) VLCDR2 comprising SEQ ID NO:144 and (iii) VLCDR3 comprising SEQ ID NO:161.

N. THE ROLE OF MASP-3 IN BEHCET'S DISEASE, AND THERAPEUTIC METHODS USING MASP-3 INHIBITORY ANTIBODIES, OPTIONALLY IN COMBINATION WITH MASP-2 INHIBITORY AGENTS

Behçet's disease, or Behçet's syndrome, is a rare, immune-mediated small-vessel systemic vasculitis that often presents with mucous membrane ulceration and ocular problems. Behçet's disease (BD) was named in 1937 after the Turkish dermatologist Hulusi Behçet, who first described the triple-symptom complex of recurrent oral ulcers, genital ulcers, and uveitis. BD is a systemic, relapsing inflammatory disorder of unknown cause. The inflammatory perivasculitis of BD may involve the gastrointestinal tract, pulmonary, musculoskeletal, cardiovascular, and neurological systems. BD can be fatal due to ruptured vascular aneurysms or severe neurological complications. Optic neuropathy and atrophy may result from vasculitis and occlusion of the vessels supplying the optic nerve. See Al-Araji A, et al., *Lancet Neurol.*, 8(2):192-204, 2009.

The highest incidence of BD is in the Middle East and Far East regions, but it is rare in Europe and North America. BD is often initially controlled with corticosteroids and immunosuppressants, but many cases are refractory with serious morbidity and mortality.

Biologic agents, including interferon-alpha, IVIG, anti-TNF, anti-IL-6, and anti-CD20, have shown benefit in some cases, but there is no consensus on best treatment.

While BD is clearly an inflammatory disorder, its pathobiology is not clear. There are genetic associations with HLA antigens, and genome wide association studies have implicated numerous cytokine genes (Kirino et al., *Nat Genet*, 45(2):202-7, 2013). The hyperactivity of the immune system appears to be regulated by the complement system. Increased levels of C3 have been observed in BD patient sera (Bardak and Aridoğan, *Ocul Immunol Inflamm* 12(1):53-8, 2004), and elevated C3 and C4 in the cerebrospinal fluid correlates with disease (Jongen et al., *Arch Neurol*, 49(10):1075-8, 1992).

Tüzün and colleagues (2013) examined both classical and alternative pathway products in sera of BD patients (Tüzün E, et al., *J Neuroimmunol*, 233(1-2):211-5, 2011). 4d, the breakdown product of C4, is generated upstream of the alternative pathway and was measured to evaluate initial classical pathway activity. C4d was increased in BD patient sera compared to controls (an elevation of 2.18-fold). Factor Bb is the breakdown product of Factor B, and was measured to determine activity of the alternative pathway. BD patients had an increase of factor Bb compared to normal control individuals (an elevation of 2.19-fold) consistent with an increase in BD alternative pathway function. Because the alternative pathway of complement serves to amplify overall complement activity, this activation would be expected to increase overall complement activation. Harboe and colleagues (2004) demonstrated that selective blockade of the alternative pathway inhibited more than 80% of membrane attack complex formation induced by the classical pathway (Harboe M, et al., *Clin Exp Immunol*, 138(3):439-46, 2004). In fact, sC5b-9, the final product of the complement cascade, was significantly increased in BD patients (a 5.46-fold elevation). Specific inhibitors of MASP-3 should provide benefit in BD. Blocking MASP-3 should inhibit activation of Factor B and Factor D. This will stop the amplification of the alternative pathway, resulting in a diminished response of overall complement activity. MASP-3 inhibition should thus significantly improve therapeutic outcomes in BD. Thus, LEA-1 and/or LEA-2 inhibitors are expected to have independent therapeutic benefit in treating BD. In addition, LEA-1 and LEA-2 inhibitors used together may achieve additional treatment benefit compared to either agent alone, or may provide effective treatment for a wider spectrum of patient subsets. Combined LEA-1 and LEA-2 inhibition may be accomplished by co-administration of a LEA-1-blocking agent and a LEA-2-blocking agent. Optimally, LEA-1 and LEA-2 inhibitory function may be encompassed in a single molecular entity, such as a bi-

specific antibody composed of MASP-1/3 and a MASP-2-specific binding site, or a dual-specificity antibody where each binding site binds to and blocks MASP-1/3 or MASP-2.

In accordance with the foregoing, an aspect of the invention thus provides a method for inhibiting LEA-1 dependent complement activation for treating, preventing, or reducing the severity of BD, comprising administering a composition comprising a therapeutically effective amount of a LEA-1 inhibitory agent comprising a MASP-1 inhibitory agent, a MASP-3 inhibitory agent, or a combination of a MASP-1/3 inhibitory agent, in a pharmaceutical carrier to a subject suffering from, or at risk for developing BD. The MASP-1, MASP-3, or MASP-1/3 inhibitory composition may be administered locally to the eye, such as by irrigation or application of the composition in the form of a topical gel, salve or drops, or by intravitreal administration. Alternately, the MASP-1, MASP-3, or MASP-1/3 inhibitory agent may be administered to the subject systemically, such as by intra arterial, intravenous, intramuscular, inhalational, nasal, subcutaneous or other parenteral administration, or potentially by oral administration for non peptidergic agents. Administration may be repeated as determined by a physician until the condition has been resolved or is controlled.

In another aspect, a method is provided for inhibiting LEA-2-dependent complement activation for treating, preventing, or reducing the severity of BD, comprising administering a therapeutically effective amount of a MASP-2 inhibitory agent to a subject suffering from, or at risk for developing BD. In another aspect, a method is provided comprising inhibiting both LEA-1 and LEA-2-dependent complement activation for treating, or reducing the severity of BD, comprising administering a therapeutically effective amount of a MASP-2 inhibitory agent and a MASP-1, MASP-3, or MASP-1/3 inhibitory agent to a subject suffering from BD.

In some embodiments, the method comprises inhibiting both LEA-1-dependent complement activation and LEA-2-dependent complement activation. As detailed above, the use of a combination of pharmacologic agents that individually block LEA-1 and LEA-2 is expected to provide an improved therapeutic outcome in treating or preventing or reducing the severity of BD, as compared to the inhibition of LEA-1 alone. This outcome can be achieved for example, by co-administration of an antibody that has LEA-1-blocking activity together with an antibody that has LEA-2-blocking activity. In some embodiments, LEA-1- and LEA-2-blocking activities are combined into a single molecular entity, and that such entity with combined LEA-1- and LEA-2-blocking activity. Such an entity may comprise or consist of a bispecific antibody where one antigen-combining site specifically recognizes

MASP-1 and blocks LEA-1 and the second antigen-combining site specifically recognizes MASP-2 and blocks LEA-2. Alternatively, such an entity may consist of a bispecific monoclonal antibody where one antigen-combining site specifically recognizes MASP-3 and thus blocks LEA-1 and the second antigen-combining site specifically recognizes MASP-2 and blocks LEA-2. Such an entity may optimally consist of a bispecific monoclonal antibody where one antigen-combining site specifically recognizes both MASP-1 and MASP-3 and thus blocks LEA-1 while the second antigen-combining site specifically recognized MASP-2 and blocks LEA-2.

The MASP-2 inhibitory agent may be administered locally to the eye, such as by irrigation or application of the composition in the form of a topical gel, salve or drops, or by intravitreal injection. Alternately, the MASP-2 inhibitory agent may be administered to the subject systemically, such as by intra arterial, intravenous, intramuscular, inhalational, nasal, subcutaneous or other parenteral administration, or potentially by oral administration for non peptidergic agents. Administration may be repeated as determined by a physician until the condition has been resolved or is controlled.

Application of the MASP-3 inhibitory compositions and/or the MASP-2 inhibitory compositions of the present invention may be carried out by a single administration of the composition (e.g., a single composition comprising MASP-2 and/or MASP-3 inhibitory agents, or bispecific or dual inhibitory agents, or co-administration of separate compositions), or a limited sequence of administrations, for treating, preventing or reducing the severity of BD in a subject in need thereof. Alternatively, the composition may be administered at periodic intervals such as daily, biweekly, weekly, every other week, monthly or bimonthly over an extended period of time for treatment of a subject in need thereof.

As described in Examples 11-21 herein, high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory antibodies have been generated which have therapeutic utility for inhibition of the alternative pathway in AP-related diseases or conditions, such as Behçet's disease (BD).

Accordingly, in one embodiment, the present invention provides a method for treating a subject suffering from, or at risk for developing Behçet's disease (BD) comprising an effective amount of a high affinity monoclonal antibody or antigen binding fragment thereof as disclosed herein that binds to human MASP-3 and inhibits alternative pathway complement activation to treat or reduce the risk of developing Behçet's disease (BD), such as, for example, wherein said antibody or antigen binding fragment thereof comprises (a) a heavy chain variable region comprising (i) VHCDR1 comprising SEQ ID NO:84, (ii) VHCDR2 comprising SEQ ID NO:86 or SEQ ID NO:275 and (iii) VHCDR3 comprising

SEQ ID NO:88; and (b) a light chain variable region comprising (i) VLCDR1 comprising SEQ ID NO:142, SEQ ID NO:257, SEQ ID NO:258 or SEQ ID NO:259 (ii) VLCDR2 comprising SEQ ID NO:144 and (iii) VLCDR3 comprising SEQ ID NO:161.

MASP-3 Inhibitory Agents

With the recognition that the lectin pathway of complement is composed of two major complement activation arms, LEA-1 and LEA-2, and that there also is a lectin-independent complement activation arm, comes the realization that it would be highly desirable to specifically inhibit one or more of these effector arms that cause a pathology associated withalternative pathway complement activation, such as at least one of paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria (PNH), age-related macular degeneration (AMD, including wet and dry AMD), ischemia-reperfusion injury, arthritis, disseminated intravascular coagulation, thrombotic microangiopathy (including hemolytic uremic syndrome (HUS), atypical hemolytic uremic syndrome (aHUS), thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura (TTP) or transplant-associated TMA), asthma, dense deposit disease, pauci-immune necrotizing crescentic glomerulonephritis, traumatic brain injury, aspiration pneumonia, endophthalmitis, neuromyelitis optica, Behcet's disease, multiple sclerosis (MS), Guillain Barre Syndrome, Alzheimer's disease, Amylotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS), lupus nephritis, systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE), Diabetic retinopathy, Uveitis, Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD), C3 glomerulopathy, transplant rejection, Graft-versus-host disease (GVHD), hemodialysis, sepsis, Systemic inflammatory response syndrome (SIRS), Acute Respiratory Distress Syndrome (ARDS), ANCA vasculitis, Anti-phospholipid syndrome, Atherosclerosis, IgA Nephropathy and Myasthenia Gravis, without completely shutting down the immune defense capabilities of complement (i.e., leaving the classical pathway intact). This would leave the C1q-dependent complement activation system intact to handle immune complex processing and to aid in host defense against infection.

Compositions for inhibiting LEA-1-mediated complement activation

As described herein, the inventors have unexpectedly discovered that activation of LEA-1, leading to lysis, is MASP-3-dependent. As further described herein, under physiological conditions, MASP-3-dependent LEA-1 activation also contributes to opsonization, thereby providing an additive effect with LEA-2-mediated complement activation. As demonstrated herein, in the presence of Ca^{++}, factor D is not required, as MASP-3 can drive activation of LEA-1 in factor $D^{-/-}$ sera. MASP-3, MASP-1, and HTRA-1 are able to convert pro-factor D to active factor D. Likewise, MASP-3 activation appears, in

many instances, to be dependent on MASP-1, since MASP-3 (in contrast to MASP-1 and MASP-2) is not an auto-activating enzyme and is incapable of converting into its active form without the help of MASP-1 (Zundel, S. et al., *J.Immunol.* 172: 4342-4350 (2004); Megyeri et al., *J. Biol. Chem.* 288:8922–8934 (2013). As MASP-3 does not autoactivate and, in many instances, requires the activity of MASP-1 to be converted into its enzymatically active form, the MASP-3-mediated activation of the alternative pathway C3 convertase C3Bb can either be inhibited by targeting the MASP-3 zymogen or already-activated MASP-3, or by targeting MASP-1-mediated activation of MASP-3, or both, since, in many instances, in the absence of MASP-1 functional activity, MASP-3 remains in its zymogen form and is not capable of driving LEA-1 through direct formation of the alternative pathway C3 convertase (C3bBb).

Therefore, in one aspect of the invention, the preferred protein component to target in the development of therapeutic agents to specifically inhibit LEA-1 is an inhibitor of MASP-3 (including inhibitors of MASP-1-mediated MASP-3 activation (e.g., a MASP-1 inhibitor that inhibits MASP-3 activation)).

In accordance with the foregoing, in one aspect, the invention provides methods of inhibiting the adverse effects of LEA-1 (i.e., hemolysis and opsonization) by administering a MASP-3 inhibitory agent, such as a MASP-3 inhibitory antibody in a subject suffering from, or at risk for developing, a disease or disorder selected from the group consisting of paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria (PNH), age-related macular degeneration (AMD), ischemia-reperfusion injury, arthritis, disseminated intravascular coagulation, thrombotic microangiopathy (including hemolytic uremic syndrome (HUS), atypical hemolytic uremic syndrome (aHUS) and thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura (TTP), asthma, dense deposit disease, pauci-immune necrotizing crescentic glomerulonephritis, traumatic brain injury, aspiration pneumonia, endophthalmitis, neuromyelitis optica Behcet's disease, multiple sclerosis, Guillain Barre Syndrome, Alzheimer's disease, Amylotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS), lupus nephritis, systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE), Diabetic retinopathy, Uveitis, Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD), C3 glomerulopathy, transplant rejection, Graft-versus-host disease (GVHD), hemodialysis, sepsis, Systemic inflammatory response syndrome (SIRS), Acute Respiratory Distress Syndrome (ARDS), ANCA vasculitis, Anti-phospholipid syndrome, Atherosclerosis, IgA Nephropathy and Myasthenia Gravis, comprising administering to the subject a pharmaceutical composition comprising an amount of a MASP-3 inhibitory agent effective to inhibit MASP-3-dependent complement activation and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.

MASP-3 inhibitory agents are administered in an amount effective to inhibit MASP-3-dependent complement activation in a living subject suffering from, or at risk for developing, paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria (PNH), age-related macular degeneration (AMD), ischemia-reperfusion injury, arthritis, disseminated intravascular coagulation, thrombotic microangiopathy (including hemolytic uremic syndrome (HUS), atypical hemolytic uremic syndrome (aHUS) or thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura (TTP)), asthma, dense deposit disease, pauci-immune necrotizing crescentic glomerulonephritis, traumatic brain injury, aspiration pneumonia, endophthalmitis, neuromyelitis optica, Behcet's disease, multiple sclerosis, Guillain Barre Syndrome, Alzheimer's disease, Amylotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS), lupus nephritis, systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE), Diabetic retinopathy, Uveitis, Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD), C3 glomerulopathy, transplant rejection, Graft-versus-host disease (GVHD), hemodialysis, sepsis, Systemic inflammatory response syndrome (SIRS), Acute Respiratory Distress Syndrome (ARDS), ANCA vasculitis, Anti-phospholipid syndrome, Atherosclerosis, IgA Nephropathy and Myasthenia Gravis. In the practice of this aspect of the invention, representative MASP-3 inhibitory agents include: molecules that inhibit the biological activity of MASP-3, including molecules that inhibit at least one or more of the following: lectin MASP-3-dependent activation of factor B, lectin MASP-3-dependent activation of pro-factor D, MASP-3-dependent, lectin-independent activation of factor B, and MASP-3-dependent, lectin-independent activation of pro-factor D (such as small-molecule inhibitors, MASP-3 antibodies and fragments thereof, or blocking peptides which interact with MASP-3 or interfere with a protein-protein interaction), and molecules that decrease the expression of MASP-3 (such as MASP-3 antisense nucleic acid molecules, MASP-3 specific RNAi molecules and MASP-3 ribozymes). A MASP-3 inhibitory agent may effectively block MASP-3 protein-to-protein interactions, interfere with MASP-3 dimerization or assembly, block Ca^{++} binding, interfere with the MASP-3 serine protease active site, or reduce MASP-3 protein expression, thereby preventing MASP-3 from activating LEA-1-mediated, or lectin-independent, complement activation. The MASP-3 inhibitory agents can be used alone as a primary therapy or in combination with other therapeutics as an adjuvant therapy to enhance the therapeutic benefits of other medical treatments, as further described herein.

High Affinity monoclonal MASP-3 inhibitory antibodies

As described in Examples 11-21 herein, and summarized in TABLES 2A, 2B and TABLE 3 below, the inventors have generated surprisingly high affinity (i.e. ≤500 pM)

MASP-3 inhibitory antibodies that bind to an epitope in the serine protease domain of human MASP-3. As described herein, the inventors have demonstrated that these high affinity MASP-3 antibodies are capable of inhibiting alternative pathway complement activation in human serum, rodents and non-human primates. The variable light and heavy chain regions of these antibodies have been sequenced, isolated and analyzed in both a Fab format and in a full-length IgG format. As described in Example 15 and shown in dendrograms depicted in FIGURES 50A and 50B, the antibodies can be grouped according to sequence similarity. A summary of the heavy chain variable regions and the light chain variable regions of these antibodies is shown in FIGURES 49A and 49B and provided in TABLES 2A and 2B below. Humanized versions of representative high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory antibodies were generated as described in Example 19 and are summarized in TABLE 3.

TABLE 2A: MASP-3 high affinity inhibitory Antibody Sequences:mouse parental

MASP-3 Antibody Reference No	Group	Heavy Chain Variable Region (amino acid)	Light Chain Variable Region (amino acid)	Heavy chain variable region (DNA)	Light chain variable region (DNA)
4D5	IA	SIN:24	SIN:40	SIN:217	SIN:233
1F3	IA	SIN:25	SIN:41	SIN:218	SIN:234
4B6	IA	SIN:26	SIN:42	SIN:219	SIN:235
1A10	IA	SIN:27	SIN:42	SIN:220	SIN:235
10D12	IB	SIN:28	SIN:43	SIN:221	SIN:236
35C1	IB	SIN:29	SIN:44	SIN:222	SIN:237
13B1	IC	SIN:30	SIN:45	SIN:223	SIN:238
1G4	II	SIN:31	SIN:46	SIN:224	SIN:239
1E7	IIIA	SIN:32	SIN:47	SIN:225	SIN:240
2D7	IIIA	SIN:33	IN:48	SIN:226	SIN:241
49C11	IIIA	SIN:34	SIN:49	SIN:227	SIN:242
15D9	IIIB	SIN:35	SIN:50	SIN:228	SIN:243
2F5	IIIB	SIN:36	SIN:51	SIN:229	SIN:244
1B11	IIIC	SIN:37	SIN:52	SIN:230	SIN:245
2F2	IIID	SIN:38	SIN:53	SIN:231	SIN:246
11B6	IIID	SIN:39	SIN:54	SIN:232	SIN:247

Note: "SIN" refers to "SEQ ID NO:"

TABLE 2B: MASP-3 high affinity inhibitory antibodies:CDRs

MASP-3 Antibody Reference No.	Heavy Chain Variable Region (amino acid)	Light Chain Variable Region (amino acid)	Heavy Chain: CDR1; CDR2; CDR3 (SEQ ID NOs)	Light Chain: CDR1; CDR2; CDR3 (SEQ ID NOs)
4D5	SIN:24	SIN:40	56;58;60	142;144;146
1F3	SIN:25	SIN:41	62;63;65	149;144;146
4B6	SIN:26	SIN:42	62;67;65	149;144;146
1A10	SIN:27	SIN:42	62;69;65	149;144;146
10D12	SIN:28	SIN:43	72;74;76	153;155;157

35C1	SIN:29	SIN:44	79;74;82	159;155;160
13B1	SIN:30	SIN:45	84;86;88	142;144;161
1G4	SIN:31	SIN:46	91;93;95	163;165;167
1E7	SIN:32	SIN:47	109;110;112	182;184;186
2D7	SIN:33	SIN:48	125;127;129	196;198;200
49C11	SIN:34	SIN:49	132;133;135	203;165;204
15D9	SIN:35	SIN:50	137;138;140	206;207;208
2F5	SIN:36	SIN:51	98;99;101	169;171;173
1B11	SIN:37	SIN:52	103;105;107	176;178;180
2F2	SIN:38	SIN:53	114;116;118	188;178;190
11B6	SIN:39	SIN:54	114;121;123	191;178;193

TABLE 3: Representative high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory antibodies: humanized and modified to remove post-translational modification sites

MASP-3 Antibody Reference No.	Heavy Chain Variable Region aa (SEQ ID NO)	Light Chain Variable Region aa (SEQ ID NO)	Heavy Chain: CDR1; CDR2; CDR3 (SEQ ID NOs)	Light Chain: CDR1; CDR2; CDR3 (SEQ ID NOs)
4D5 parent	24	40	56;58;60	142;144;146
h4D5-14-1	248	250	56;58;60	142;144;146
h4D5-19-1	249	250	56;58;60	142;144;146
h4D5-14-1-NA	248	278	56;58;60	258;144;146
h4D5-19-1-NA	249	278	56;58;60	258;144;146
10D12 parent	28	43	72;74;76	153;155;157
h10D12-45-21	251	253	72;74;76	153;155;157
h10D12-49-21	252	253	72;74;76	153;155;157
h10D12-45-21-GA	251	279	72;74;76	263;155;157
h10D12-49-21-GA	252	279	72;74;76	263;155;157
13B1 parent	30	45	84;86;88	142;144;161
h13B1-9-1	254	256	84;275;88	142;144;161
h13B1-10-1	255	256	84;86;88	142;144;161
h13B1-9-1-NA	254	280	84;275;88	258;144;161
h13B1-10-1-NA	255	280	84;86;88	258;144;161

Accordingly, in one aspect, the present invention provides an isolated monoclonal antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof that specifically binds to the serine protease domain of human MASP-3 (amino acid residues 450 to 728 of SEQ ID NO:2) with high affinity (having a K_D of less than 500 pM), wherein the antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof inhibits alternative pathway complement activation. In some embodiments, the high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory antibody, or antigen-binding fragment thereof inhibits the alternative pathway at a molar ratio of from about 1:1 to about 2.5:1 target MASP-3 to mAb in a mammalian subject.

The inhibition of alternative pathway complement activation is characterized by at least one or more of the following changes in a component of the complement system that

occurs as a result of administration of a high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory antibody in accordance with various embodiments of the invention: inhibition of hemolysis and/or opsonization; inhibition of lectin-independent conversion of factor B; inhibition of lectin-independent conversion of factor D, inhibition of MASP-3 serine protease substrate-specific cleavage; the reduction of hemolysis or the reduction of C3 cleavage and C3b surface deposition; the reduction of Factor B and Bb deposition on an activating surface; the reduction of resting levels (in circulation, and without the experimental addition of an activating surface) of active Factor D relative to pro-Factor D; the reduction of levels of active Factor D relative to pro-Factor D in response to an activating surface; and/or the production of resting and surface-induced levels of fluid-phase Ba, Bb, C3b, or C3a.

For example, as described herein the high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory antibodies, are antibodies or antigen-binding fragments thereof capable of inhibiting factor D maturation (i.e., cleavage of pro-factor D to factor D) in a mammalian subject. In some embodiments, the high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory antibodies are capable of inhibiting factor D maturation in full serum to a level less than 50% than that found in untreated control serum (such as less than 40%, for example less than 30%, such as less than 25%, for example less than 20%, such as less than 15%, for example less than 10%, such as less than 5% untreated control serum not contacted with a MASP-3 inhibitory antibody).

In preferred embodiments, the high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory antibodies selectively inhibit the alternative pathway, leaving the C1q-dependent complement activation system functionally intact.

In another aspect, the present disclosure features a nucleic acid molecule that encodes one or both of the heavy and light chain polypeptides of any of the MASP-3 inhibitory antibodies or antigen-binding fragments disclosed herein. Also featured is a vector (e.g., a cloning or expression vector) comprising the nucleic acid and a cell (e.g., an insect cell, bacterial cell, fungal cell, or mammalian cell) comprising the vector. The disclosure futher provides a method for producing any of the MASP-3 inhibitory antibodies or antigen-binding fragments disclosed herein. The methods include, providing a cell containing an expression vector which contains a nucleic acid that encodes one or both of the heavy and light chain polypeptides of any of the antibodies or antigen-binding fragments disclosed herein. The cell or culture of cells is cultured under conditions and for a time sufficient to allow expression by the cell (or culture of cells) of the antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof encoded by the nucleic acid. The method can also include isolating the antibody or antigen binding

fragment thereof from the cell (or culture of cells) or from the media in which the cell or cells were cultured.

MASP-3 epitopes and peptides

As described in Example 18, illustrated in FIGURE 62 and summarized in TABLE 4 below, the high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory antibodies and antigen-binding fragments thereof according to the present invention were found to specifically recognize one or more epitopes within the serine protease domain of human MASP-3 (amino acid residues 450 to 728 of SEQ ID NO:2). "Specifically recognises" means that the antibody binds to said epitope with significantly higher affinity than to any other molecule or part thereof.

TABLE 4: Representative High Affinity MASP-3 inhibitory antibodies: Epitope Binding Regions of MASP-3 (see also FIGURE 62)

Peptide Binding Fragments (Epitopes) with reference to human MASP-3 (w/leader)	**MASP-3 mAb Ref No.**
$_{498}$VLRSQRRDTTVI$_{509}$ (SIN:9)	1F3, 4B6, 4D5, 1A10, 10D12,
$_{494}$TAAHVLRSQRRDTTV$_{508}$ (SIN:10)	13B1
$_{544}$DFNIQNYNHDIALVQ$_{558}$ (SIN:11)	1F3, 4B6, 4D5, 1A10
$_{626}$PHAECKTSYESRS$_{638}$ (SIN:12)	13B1
$_{639}$GNYSVTENMFC$_{649}$ (SIN:13)	1F3, 4B6, 4D5, 1A10
$_{704}$VSNYVDWVWE$_{713}$ (SIN:14)	1F3, 4B6, 4D5, 1A10
$_{498}$VLRSQRRDTTV$_{508}$ (SIN:15) Core sequence of Group I	1F3, 4B6, 4D5, 1A10, 10D12, 13B1
$_{435}$ECGQPSRSLPSLV$_{447}$ (SIN:16)	1B11
$_{454}$RNAEPGLFPWQ$_{464}$ (SIN:17) Core sequence of Groups II and III	1G4, 1E7, 2D7, 15D9, 2F5, 1B11
	15D9, 2F5

$_{479}$KWFGSGALLSASWIL$_{493}$ (SIN 18)	
$_{514}$EHVTVYLGLH$_{523}$ (SIN:19)	1E7, 2D7, 1G4
$_{562}$PVPLGPHVMP$_{571}$ (SIN:20)	15D9, 2F5
$_{583}$APHMLGL$_{589}$ (SIN:21)	1B11
$_{614}$SDVLQYVKLP$_{623}$ (SIN:22)	1B11
$_{667}$AFVIFDDLSQRW$_{678}$ (SIN:23)	1G4, 1E7, 2D7, 15D9, 2F5

Accordingly, in some embodiments, the high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof specifically binds to an epitope located within the serine protease domain of human MASP-3, wherein said epitope is located within at least one or more of: VLRSQRRDTTVI (SEQ ID NO:9), TAAHVLRSQRRDTTV (SEQ ID NO:10), DFNIQNYNHDIALVQ (SEQ ID NO:11), PHAECKTSYESRS (SEQ ID NO:12), GNYSVTENMFC (SEQ ID NO:13), VSNYVDWVWE (SEQ ID NO:14) and/or VLRSQRRDTTV (SEQ ID NO:15). In some embodiments, the antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof binds to an epitope within SEQ ID NO:15. In some embodiments, the antibody or antigen-binding fragment binds to an epitope within SEQ ID NO:9. In some embodiments, the antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof binds to an epitope within SEQ ID NO:10. In some embodiments, the antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof binds to an epitope within SEQ ID NO:12. In some embodidments, the antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof binds to an epitope within SEQ ID NO:10 and SEQ ID NO:12. In some embodiments, the antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof binds to an epitope within at least one of SEQ ID NO:11, SEQ ID NO: 13 and/or SEQ ID NO:14.

In other embodiments, the high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof specifically binds to an epitope located within the serine protease domain of human MASP-3, wherein said epitope is located within at least one or more of: ECGQPSRSLPSLV (SEQ ID NO:16), RNAEPGLFPWQ (SEQ ID NO:17); KWFGSGALLSASWIL(SEQ ID NO:18); EHVTVYLGLH (SEQ ID NO:19); PVPLGPHVMP (SEQ ID NO:20); APHMLGL (SEQ ID NO:21); SDVLQYVKLP (SEQ ID NO:22); and/or AFVIFDDLSQRW (SEQ ID NO:23). In one embodiment, the antibody or

antigen-binding fragment binds to an epitope within SEQ ID NO:17. In one embodiment, the antibody or antigen binding fragment binds to an epitope within EHVTVYLGLH (SEQ ID NO:19) and/or AFVIFDDLSQRW (SEQ ID NO:23). In one embodiment, the antibody or antigen-binding fragment binds to an epitope within SEQ ID NO:18, SEQ ID NO:20 and/or SEQ ID NO:23. In one embodiment, the antibody or antigen-binding fragment binds to an epitope within at least one of SEQ ID NO:16, SEQ ID NO: 21 and/or SEQ ID NO:22.

CDR Regions:

In one aspect of the present invention the antibody or functional equivalent thereof comprises specific hypervariable regions, designated CDRs. Preferably, the CDRs are CDRs according to the Kabat CDR definition. CDRs or hypervariable regions may for example be identified by sequence alignment to other antibodies. The CDR regions of the high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory antibodies are shown in TABLES 18-23.

Group IA mAbs

In one aspect, the invention provides an isolated antibody, or antigen-binding fragment thereof, that binds to MASP-3 comprising: (a) a heavy chain variable region comprising a HC-CDR1 set forth as SEQ ID NO:209 (XXDIN, wherein X at position 1 is S or T and wherein X at position 2 is N or D); a HC-CDR2 set forth as SEQ ID NO:210 (WIYPRDXXXKYNXXFXD, wherein X at position 7 is G or D; X at position 8 is S, T or R; X at position 9 is I or T; X at position 13 is E or D; X at position 14 is K or E; and X at position 16 is T or K); and a HC-CDR3 set forth as SEQ ID NO:211 (XEDXY, wherein X at position 1 is L or V, and wherein X at position 4 is T or S); and (b) a light chain variable region comprising a LC-CDR1 set forth as SEQ ID NO:212 (KSSQSLLXXRTRKNYLX, wherein X at position 8 is N, I, Q or A; wherein X at position 9 is S or T; and wherein X at position 17 is A or S); a LC-CDR2 set forth as SEQ ID NO:144 (WASTRES) and a LC-CDR3 set forth as SEQ ID NO:146 (KQSYNLYT). In one embodiment, the HC-CDR1 of the heavy chain variable region according to (a) comprises SEQ ID NO:56 (TDDIN). In one embodiment, the HC-CDR1 of the heavy chain variable region according to (a) comprises SEQ ID NO:62 (SNDIN). In one embodiment, the HC-CDR2 of the heavy chain variable region according to (a) comprises SEQ ID NO:58 (WIYPRDDRTKYNDKFKD). In one embodiment, the HC-CDR2 of the heavy chain variable region according to (a) comprises SEQ ID NO:63 (WIYPRDGSIKYNEKFTD). In one embodiment, the HC-CDR2 of the heavy chain variable region according to (a) comprises SEQ ID NO:67 (WIYPRDGTTKYNEEFTD). In

one embodiment, the HC-CDR2 of the heavy chain variable region according to (a) comprises SEQ ID NO:69 (WIYPRDGTTKYNEKFTD). In one embodiment, the HC-CDR3 of the heavy chain variable region according to (a) comprises SEQ ID NO:60 (LEDTY). In one embodiment, the HC-CDR3 of the heavy chain variable region according to (a) comprises SEQ ID NO:65 (VEDSY). In one embodiment, the LC-CDR1 of the light chain variable region comprises SEQ ID NO:142 (KSSQSLLNSRTRKNYLA); SEQ ID NO:257 (KSSQSLLQSRTRKNYLA), SEQ ID NO:258 (KSSQSLLASRTRKNYLA); or SEQ ID NO:259 (KSSQSLLNTRTRKNYLA). In one embodiment, the LC-CDR1 comprises SEQ ID NO:258 (KSSQSLLASRTRKNYLA). In one embodiment, the LC-CDR1 comprises SEQ ID NO:149 (KSSQSLLISRTRKNYLS).

In one embodiment, the HC-CDR1 comprises SEQ ID NO:56, the HC-CDR2 comprises SEQ ID NO:58, the HC-CDR3 comprises SEQ ID NO:60 and the LC-CDR1 comprises SEQ ID NO:142, SEQ ID NO:257, SEQ ID NO:258 or SEQ ID NO:259; the LC-CDR2 comprises SEQ ID NO:144 and the LC-CDR3 comprises SEQ ID NO:146.

In one embodiment, the HC-CDR1 comprises SEQ ID NO:62, the HC-CDR2 comprises SEQ ID NO:63, SEQ ID NO:67 or SEQ ID NO:69, the HC-CDR3 comprises SEQ ID NO:65 and the LC-CDR1 comprises SEQ ID NO:149, the LC-CDR2 comprises SEQ ID NO:144 and the LC-CDR3 comprises SEQ ID NO:146.

Group IB mAbs

In another aspect, the invention provides an isolated antibody, or antigen-binding fragment thereof, that binds to MASP-3 comprising: (a) a heavy chain variable region comprising a HC-CDR1 set forth as SEQ ID NO:213 (SYGXX, wherein X at position 4 is M or I and wherein X at position 5 is S or T); a HC-CDR2 set forth as SEQ ID NO:74; and a HC-CDR3 set forth as SEQ ID NO:214 (GGXAXDY, wherein X at position 3 is E or D and wherein X at position 5 is M or L); and (b) a light chain variable region comprising a LC-CDR1 set forth as SEQ ID NO:215 (KSSQSLLDSXXKTYLX , wherein X at position 10 is D, E or A; wherein X at position 11 is G or A; and wherein X at position 16 is N or S); a LC-CDR2 set forth as SEQ ID NO:155; and a LC-CDR3 set forth as SEQ ID NO:216 (WQGTHFPXT, wherein X at position 8 is W or Y).

In one embodiment, the HC-CDR1 of the heavy chain variable region according to (a) comprises SEQ ID NO:72 (SYGMS). In one embodiment, the HC-CDR1 comprises SEQ ID NO:79 (SYGIT). In one embodiment, the HC-CDR3 comprises SEQ ID NO:76 (GGEAMDY). In one embodiment, the HC-CDR3 comprises SEQ ID NO:82 (GGDALDY).

In one embodiment, the LC-CDR1 comprises SEQ ID NO:153 (KSSQSLLDSDGKTYLN); SEQ ID NO:261 (KSSQSLLDSEGKTYLN), SEQ ID NO:262 (KSSQSLLDSAGKTYLN) or SEQ ID NO:263 (KSSQSLLDSDAKTYLN). In one embodiment, the LC-CDR1 comprises SEQ ID NO:263 (KSSQSLLDSDAKTYLN). In one embodiment, the LC-CDR1 comprises SEQ ID NO:152. In one embodiment, the LC-CDR3 comprises SEQ ID NO:159 (KSSQSLLDSDGKTYLS).

In one embodiment, the LC-CDR3 comprises SEQ ID NO:160 (WQGTHFPYT). In one embodiment, the HC-CDR1 comprises SEQ ID NO:72, the HC-CDR2 comprises SEQ ID NO:74, the HC-CDR3 comprises SEQ ID NO:76, and the LC-CDR1 comprises SEQ ID NO:153, SEQ ID NO:261, SEQ ID NO:262 or SEQ ID NO:263; the LC-CDR2 comprises SEQ ID NO:155 and the LC-CDR3 comprises SEQ ID NO:157.

In one embodiment, the HC-CDR comprises SEQ ID NO:72, the HC-CDR2 comprises SEQ ID NO:74, the HC-CDR3 comprises SEQ ID NO:76, and the LC-CDR1 comprises SEQ ID NO:153 or SEQ ID NO:263, the LC-CDR2 comprises SEQ ID NO:155, and the LC-CDR3 comprises SEQ ID NO:157.

In one embodiment, the HC-CDR1 comprises SEQ ID NO:79, the HC-CDR2 comprises SEQ ID NO:74, the HC-CDR3 comprises SEQ ID NO:82, and the LC-CDR1 comprises SEQ ID NO:159, the LC-CDR2 comprises SEQ ID NO:155 and the LC-CDR3 comprises SEQ ID NO:160.

Group IC mAbs

In one aspect, the present invention provides an isolated antibody, or antigen-binding fragment thereof, that binds to MASP-3 comprising (a) a heavy chain variable region comprising a HC-CDR1 set forth as SEQ ID NO:84 (GKWIE); a HC-CDR2 set forth as SEQ ID NO:86 (EILPGTGSTNYNEKFKG) or SEQ ID NO:275 (EILPGTGSTNYAQKFQG); and a HC-CDR3 set forth as SEQ ID NO:88 (SEDV); and (b) a light chain variable region comprising a LC-CDR1 set forth as SEQ ID NO:142 (KSSQSLLNSRTRKNYLA), SEQ ID NO:257 (KSSQSLLQSRTRKNYLA); SEQ ID NO:258 (KSSQSLLASRTRKNYLA); or SEQ ID NO:259 (KSSQSLLNTRTRKNYLA), a LC-CDR2 set forth as SEQ ID NO:144 (WASTRES); and a LC-CDR3 set forth as SEQ ID NO:161 (KQSYNIPT). In one embodiment, the LC-CDR1 comprises SEQ ID NO:258.

Group II mAbs

In one aspect, the present invention provides an isolated antibody, or antigen-binding fragment thereof, that binds to MASP-3 comprising: (a) a heavy chain variable region

comprising a HC-CDR1 set forth as SEQ ID NO:91 (GYWIE); a HC-CDR2 set forth as SEQ ID NO:93 (EMLPGSGSTHYNEKFKG), and a HC-CDR3 set forth as SEQ ID NO:95 (SIDY); and (b) a light chain variable region comprising a LC-CDR1 set forth as SEQ ID NO:163 (RSSQSLVQSNGNTYLH), a LC-CDR2 set forth as SEQ ID NO:165 (KVSNRFS) and a LC-CDR3 set forth as SEQ ID NO:167 (SQSTHVPPT).

Group III mAbs

In another aspect, the present invention provides an isolated antibody, or antigen-binding fragment thereof, that binds to MASP-3 comprising: (a) a heavy chain variable region comprising a HC-CDR1 set forth as SEQ ID NO:109 (RVHFAIRDTNYWMQ), a HC-CDR2 set forth as SEQ ID NO:110 (AIYPGNGDTSYNQKFKG), a HC-CDR3 set forth as SEQ ID NO:112 (GSHYFDY); and a light chain variable region comprising a LC-CDR1 set forth as SEQ ID NO:182 (RASQSIGTSIH), a LC-CDR2 set forth as SEQ ID NO:184 (YASESIS) and a LC-CDR3 set forth as SEQ ID NO:186 (QQSNSWPYT); or

(b) a heavy chain variable region comprising a HC-CDR1 set forth as SEQ ID NO:125 (DYYMN), a HC-CDR2 set forth as SEQ ID NO:127 (DVNPNNDGTTYNQKFKG), a HC-CDR3 set forth as SEQ ID NO:129 (CPFYYLGKGTHFDY); and a light chain variable region comprising a LC-CDR1 set forth as SEQ ID NO:196 (RASQDISNFLN), a LC-CDR2 set forth as SEQ ID NO:198 (YTSRLHS) and a LC-CDR3 set forth as SEQ ID NO:200 (QQGFTLPWT); or

(c) a heavy chain variable region comprising a HC-CDR1 set forth as SEQ ID NO:137 a HC-CDR2 set forth as SEQ ID NO:138, a HC-CDR3 set forth as SEQ ID NO:140; and a light chain variable region comprising a LC-CDR1 set forth as SEQ ID NO:206, a LC-CDR2 set forth as SEQ ID NO:207 and a LC-CDR3 set forth as SEQ ID NO:208; or

(d) a heavy chain variable region comprising a HC-CDR1 set forth as SEQ ID NO:98, a HC-CDR2 set forth as SEQ ID NO:99, a HC-CDR3 set forth as SEQ ID NO:101; and a light chain variable region comprising a LC-CDR1 set forth as SEQ ID NO:169, a LC-CDR2 set forth as SEQ ID NO:171 and a LC-CDR3 set forth as SEQ ID NO:173; or

(e) a heavy chain variable region comprising a HC-CDR1 set forth as SEQ ID NO:103, a HC-CDR2 set forth as SEQ ID NO:105, a HC-CDR3 set forth as SEQ ID NO:107; and a light chain variable region comprising a LC-CDR1 set forth as SEQ ID NO:176, a LC-CDR2 set forth as SEQ ID NO:178 and a LC-CDR3 set forth as SEQ ID NO:193; or

(f) a heavy chain variable region comprising a HC-CDR1 set forth as SEQ ID NO:114, a HC-CDR2 set forth as SEQ ID NO:116, a HC-CDR3 set forth as SEQ ID NO:118;

and a light chain variable region comprising a LC-CDR1 set forth as SEQ ID NO:188, a LC-CDR2 set forth as SEQ ID NO:178 and a LC-CDR3 set forth as SEQ ID NO:190; or

(g) a heavy chain variable region comprising a HC-CDR1 set forth as SEQ ID NO:114, a HC-CDR2 set forth as SEQ ID NO:121, a HC-CDR3 set forth as SEQ ID NO:123; and a light chain variable region comprising a LC-CDR1 set forth as SEQ ID NO:191, a LC-CDR2 set forth as SEQ ID NO:178 and a LC-CDR3 set forth as SEQ ID NO:193; or

(h) a heavy chain variable region comprising a HC-CDR1 set forth as SEQ ID NO:132, a HC-CDR2 set forth as SEQ ID NO:133, a HC-CDR3 set forth as SEQ ID NO:135; and a light chain variable region comprsing a LC-CDR1 set forth as SEQ ID NO:203, a LC-CDR2 set forth as SEQ ID NO:165 and a LC-CDR3 set forth as SEQ ID NO:204.

Heavy Chain and Light Chain Variable Regions

In one embodiment, the invention provides a high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory antibody comprising a heavy chain variable region comprising or consisting of a sequence which is at least 80%, 85%, 90%, 95%, 98%, 99% identical to any of SEQ ID NO:s 24-39, 248-249, 251-252, 254-255 or wherein the antibody comprises a heavy chain variable region comprising SEQ ID NO:24, SEQ ID NO:25, SEQ ID NO:26, SEQ ID NO:27, SEQ ID NO:28, SEQ ID NO:29, SEQ ID NO:30, SEQ ID NO:31, SEQ ID NO:32, SEQ ID NO:33, SEQ ID NO:34, SEQ ID NO:35, SEQ ID NO:36, SEQ ID NO:37, SEQ ID NO:38, SEQ ID NO:39, SEQ ID NO:248, SEQ ID NO:249, SEQ ID NO:251, SEQ ID NO:252, SEQ ID NO:254 or SEQ ID NO:255.

In one embodiment, the invention provides a high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory antibody comprising a light chain variable region comprising or consisting of a sequence which is at least 80%, 85%, 90%, 95%, 98%, 99% identical to any of SEQ ID NO:s 40-54, 250, 253, 256, 278, 279, or 280 or wherein the antibody comprises a light chain variable region comprising SEQ ID NO:40, SEQ ID NO:41, SEQ ID NO:42, SEQ ID NO:43, SEQ ID NO:44, SEQ ID NO:45, SEQ ID NO:46, SEQ ID NO:47, SEQ ID NO:48, SEQ ID NO:49, SEQ ID NO:50, SEQ ID NO:51, SEQ ID NO:52, SEQ ID NO:53, SEQ ID NO:54, SEQ ID NO:250, SEQ ID NO:253, SEQ ID NO:256, SEQ ID NO:278, SEQ ID NO:279 or SEQ ID NO:280.

In one embodiment, the MASP-3 monoclonal antibody comprises a heavy chain comprising at least 80%, 85%, 90%, 95%, 98%, 99% or 100% identical to SEQ ID NO:24, SEQ ID NO:248 or SEQ ID NO:249 and a light chain comprising at least 80%, 85%, 90%, 95%, 98%, 99% or 100% identical to SEQ ID NO:40, SEQ ID NO:250 or SEQ ID NO:278.

In one embodiment, the MASP-3 monoclonal antibody comprises a heavy chain comprising at least 80%, 85%, 90%, 95%, 98%, 99% or 100% identical to SEQ ID NO:25 and a light chain comprising at least 80%, 85%, 90%, 95%, 98%, 99% or 100% identical to SEQ ID NO:41.

In one embodiment, the MASP-3 monoclonal antibody comprises a heavy chain comprising at least 80%, 85%, 90%, 95%, 98%, 99% or 100% identical to SEQ ID NO:26 and a light chain comprising at least 80%, 85%, 90%, 95%, 98%, 99% or 100% identical to SEQ ID NO:42.

In one embodiment, the MASP-3 monoclonal antibody comprises a heavy chain comprising at least 80%, 85%, 90%, 95%, 98%, 99% or 100% identical to SEQ ID NO:27 and a light chain comprising at least 80%, 85%, 90%, 95%, 98%, 99% or 100% identical to SEQ ID NO:42.

In one embodiment, the MASP-3 monoclonal antibody comprises a heavy chain comprising at least 80%, 85%, 90%, 95%, 98%, 99% or 100% identical to SEQ ID NO:28, SEQ ID NO:251 or SEQ ID NO:252 and a light chain comprising at least 80%, 85%, 90%, 95%, 98%, 99% or 100% identical to SEQ ID NO:43, SEQ ID NO:253 or SEQ ID NO:279.

In one embodiment, the MASP-3 monoclonal antibody comprises a heavy chain comprising at least 80%, 85%, 90%, 95%, 98%, 99% or 100% identical to SEQ ID NO:29 and a light chain comprising at least 80%, 85%, 90%, 95%, 98%, 99% or 100% identical to SEQ ID NO:44.

In one embodiment, the MASP-3 monoclonal antibody comprises a heavy chain comprising at least 80%, 85%, 90%, 95%, 98%, 99% or 100% identical to SEQ ID NO:30, SEQ ID NO:254 or SEQ ID NO:255 and a light chain comprising at least 80%, 85%, 90%, 95%, 98%, 99% or 100% identical to SEQ ID NO:45, SEQ ID NO:256 or SEQ ID NO:280.

In one embodiment, the MASP-3 monoclonal antibody comprises a heavy chain comprising at least 80%, 85%, 90%, 95%, 98%, 99% or 100% identical to SEQ ID NO:31 and a light chain comprising at least 80%, 85%, 90%, 95%, 98%, 99% or 100% identical to SEQ ID NO:46.

In one embodiment, the MASP-3 monoclonal antibody comprises a heavy chain comprising at least 80%, 85%, 90%, 95%, 98%, 99% or 100% identical to SEQ ID NO:32 and a light chain comprising at least 80%, 85%, 90%, 95%, 98%, 99% or 100% identical to SEQ ID NO:47.

In one embodiment, the MASP-3 monoclonal antibody comprises a heavy chain comprising at least 80%, 85%, 90%, 95%, 98%, 99% or 100% identical to SEQ ID NO:33

and a light chain comprising at least 80%, 85%, 90%, 95%, 98%, 99% or 100% identical to SEQ ID NO:48.

In one embodiment, the MASP-3 monoclonal antibody comprises a heavy chain comprising at least 80%, 85%, 90%, 95%, 98%, 99% or 100% identical to SEQ ID NO:34 and a light chain comprising at least 80%, 85%, 90%, 95%, 98%, 99% or 100% identical to SEQ ID NO:49.

In one embodiment, the MASP-3 monoclonal antibody comprises a heavy chain comprising at least 80%, 85%, 90%, 95%, 98%, 99% or 100% identical to SEQ ID NO:35 and a light chain comprising at least 80%, 85%, 90%, 95%, 98%, 99% or 100% identical to SEQ ID NO:50.

In one embodiment, the MASP-3 monoclonal antibody comprises a heavy chain comprising at least 80%, 85%, 90%, 95%, 98%, 99% or 100% identical to SEQ ID NO:36 and a light chain comprising at least 80%, 85%, 90%, 95%, 98%, 99% or 100% identical to SEQ ID NO:51.

In one embodiment, the MASP-3 monoclonal antibody comprises a heavy chain comprising at least 80%, 85%, 90%, 95%, 98%, 99% or 100% identical to SEQ ID NO:37 and a light chain comprising at least 80%, 85%, 90%, 95%, 98%, 99% or 100% identical to SEQ ID NO:52.

In one embodiment, the MASP-3 monoclonal antibody comprises a heavy chain comprising at least 80%, 85%, 90%, 95%, 98%, 99% or 100% identical to SEQ ID NO:38 and a light chain comprising at least 80%, 85%, 90%, 95%, 98%, 99% or 100% identical to SEQ ID NO:53.

In one embodiment, the MASP-3 monoclonal antibody comprises a heavy chain comprising at least 80%, 85%, 90%, 95%, 98%, 99% or 100% identical to SEQ ID NO:39 and a light chain comprising at least 80%, 85%, 90%, 95%, 98%, 99% or 100% identical to SEQ ID NO:54.

Cross-competition of high affinity MASP-3 antibodies

As described herein, the high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory antibodies disclosed herein recognize overlapping epitopes within the serine protease domain of MASP-3. As described in Example 18, shown in FIGURES 61A-E and 62-67, and summarized in TABLES 4 and 28, cross-competition analysis and pepscan binding analysis shows that the high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory antibodies cross-compete and bind to common epitopes located within the MASP-3 serine protease domain. Thus, in one embodiment, the invention provides high

affinitiy MASP-3 inhibitory antibodies that specifically recognize an epitope or part thereof within the serine protease domain of human MASP-3 recognised by one or more selected from the group consisting of:

a monoclonal antibody comprising a heavy chain variable region set forth as SEQ ID NO:24 and a light chain variable region set forth as SEQ ID NO:40;

a monoclonal antibody comprising a heavy chain variable region set forth as SEQ ID NO:25 and a light chain variable region set forth as SEQ ID NO:41;

a monoclonal antibody comprising a heavy chain variable region set forth as SEQ ID NO:26 and a light chain variable region set forth as SEQ ID NO:42;

a monoclonal antibody comprising a heavy chain variable region set forth as SEQ ID NO:27 and a light chain variable region set forth as SEQ ID NO:42;

a monoclonal antibody comprising a heavy chain variable region set forth as SEQ ID NO:28 and a light chain variable region set forth as SEQ ID NO:43;

a monoclonal antibody comprising a heavy chain variable region set forth as SEQ ID NO:29 and a light chain variable region set forth as SEQ ID NO:44;

a monoclonal antibody comprising a heavy chain variable region set forth as SEQ ID NO:30 and a light chain variable region set forth as SEQ ID NO:45;

a monoclonal antibody comprising a heavy chain variable region set forth as SEQ ID NO:31 and a light chain variable region set forth as SEQ ID NO:46;

a monoclonal antibody comprising a heavy chain variable region set forth as SEQ ID NO:32 and a light chain variable region set forth as SEQ ID NO:47;

a monoclonal antibody comprising a heavy chain variable region set forth as SEQ ID NO:33 and a light chain variable region set forth as SEQ ID NO:48;

a monoclonal antibody comprising a heavy chain variable region set forth as SEQ ID NO:34 and a light chain variable region set forth as SEQ ID NO:49;

a monoclonal antibody comprising a heavy chain variable region set forth as SEQ ID NO:35 and a light chain variable region set forth as SEQ ID NO:50;

a monoclonal antibody comprising a heavy chain variable region set forth as SEQ ID NO:36 and a light chain variable region set forth as SEQ ID NO:51;

a monoclonal antibody comprising a heavy chain variable region set forth as SEQ ID NO:37 and a light chain variable region set forth as SEQ ID NO:52;

a monoclonal antibody comprising a heavy chain variable region set forth as SEQ ID NO:38 and a light chain variable region set forth as SEQ ID NO:53; and

a monoclonal antibody comprising a heavy chain variable region set forth as SEQ ID NO:39 and a light chain variable region set forth as SEQ ID NO:54.

According to the present invention, when a given antibody recognises at least part of an epitope recognised by another given antibody, these two antibodies are said to recognise the same or overlapping epitopes.

Different assays available to the person skilled in the art may be used to determine whether an antibody (also designated test antibody) recognises the same or an overlapping epitope as a particular monoclonal antibody (also designated reference antibody). Preferably, the assay involves the steps of:

- Providing MASP-3 or a fragment thereof comprising the epitope recognised by the reference antibody
- Add the test antibody and the reference antibody to the said MASP-3, wherein either the test antibody or the reference antibody is labelled with a detectable label. Alternatively, both antibodies may be labeled with different detectable labels
- Detecting the presence of the detectable label at MASP-3
- Thereby detecting whether the test antibody may displace the reference antibody

If the reference antibody is displaced, the test antibody recognises the same or an overlapping epitope as the reference antibody. Thus, if the reference antibody is labeled with a detectable label, then a low detectable signal at MASP-3 is indicative of displacement of the reference antibody. If the test antibody is labelled with a detectable label, then a high detectable signal at MASP-3 is indicative of displacement of the reference antibody. The MASP-3 fragment may preferably be immobilised on a solid support enabling facile handling. The detectable label may be any directly or indirectly detectable label, such as an enzyme, a radioactive isotope, a heavy metal, a coloured compound or a fluorescent compound. In Example 18 in the section "Competition Binding Analysis" herein below describes an exemplary method of determining whether a test antibody recognises the same or an overlapping epitope as a reference antibody is described. The person skilled in the art may easily adapt said method to the particular antibodies in question.

The MASP-3 antibodies useful in this aspect of the invention include monoclonal or recombinant antibodies derived from any antibody producing mammal and may be

multispecific (i.e., bispecific or trispecific), chimeric, humanized, fully human, anti-idiotype, and antibody fragments. Antibody fragments include Fab, Fab', $F(ab)_2$, $F(ab')_2$, Fv fragments, scFv fragments and single-chain antibodies as further described herein.

MASP-3 antibodies can be screened for the ability to inhibit alternative pathway complement activation system using the assays described herein. The inhibition of alternative pathway complement activation is characterized by at least oneor more of the following changes in a component of the complement system that occurs as a result of administration of a high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory antibody in accordance with various embodiments of the invention: inhibition of hemolysis and/or opsonization; inhibition of lectin-independent conversion of factor B; inhibition of lectin-independent conversion of factor D, inhibition of MASP-3 serine protease substrate-specific cleavage; the reduction of hemolysis or the reduction of C3 cleavage and C3b surface deposition; the reduction of Factor B and Bb deposition on an activating surface; the reduction of resting levels (in circulation, and without the experimental addition of an activating surface) of active Factor D relative to pro-Factor D; the reduction of levels of active Factor D relative to pro-Factor D in response to an activating surface; and/or the production of resting and surface-induced levels of fluid-phase Ba, Bb, C3b, or C3a.

MASP-3 antibodies with reduced effector function

In some embodiments of this aspect of the invention, the high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory antibodies described herein have reduced effector function in order to reduce inflammation that may arise from the activation of the classical complement pathway. The ability of IgG molecules to trigger the classical complement pathway has been shown to reside within the Fc portion of the molecule (Duncan, A.R., et al., *Nature 332*:738-740 (1988)). IgG molecules in which the Fc portion of the molecule has been removed by enzymatic cleavage are devoid of this effector function (see Harlow, *Antibodies: A Laboratory Manual*, Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory, New York, 1988). Accordingly, antibodies with reduced effector function can be generated as the result of lacking the Fc portion of the molecule by having a genetically engineered Fc sequence that minimizes effector function, or being of either the human IgG_2 or IgG_4 isotype.

Antibodies with reduced effector function can be produced by standard molecular biological manipulation of the Fc portion of the IgG heavy chains as described in Jolliffe et al., *Int'l Rev. Immunol. 10*:241-250, (1993), and Rodrigues et al., *J.*

Immunol. 151:6954-6961, (1998). Antibodies with reduced effector function also include human IgG2 and IgG4 isotypes that have a reduced ability to activate complement and/or interact with Fc receptors (Ravetch, J.V., et al., *Annu. Rev. Immunol. 9*:457-492, (1991); Isaacs, J.D., et al., *J. Immunol. 148*:3062-3071, 1992; van de Winkel, J.G., et al., *Immunol. Today 14*:215-221, (1993)). Humanized or fully human antibodies specific to human MASP-1, MASP-2 or MASP-3 (including dual, pan, bispecific or trispecific antibodies) comprised of IgG2 or IgG4 isotypes can be produced by one of several methods known to one of ordinary skilled in the art, as described in Vaughan, T.J., et al., *Nature Biotechnical 16*:535-539, (1998).

Production of high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory antibodies

MASP-3 antibodies can be produced using MASP-3 polypeptides (e.g., full-length MASP-3) or using antigenic MASP- 3 epitope-bearing peptides (e.g., a portion of the MASP-3 polypeptide), for example as described in Example 14 herein below. Immunogenic peptides may be as small as five amino acid residues. The MASP-3 peptides and polypeptides used to raise antibodies may be isolated as natural polypeptides, or recombinant or synthetic peptides and catalytically inactive recombinant polypeptides. Antigens useful for producing MASP-3 antibodies also include fusion polypeptides, such as fusions of a MASP-3 polypeptide or a portion thereof with an immunoglobulin polypeptide or with maltose-binding protein. The polypeptide immunogen may be a full-length molecule or a portion thereof. If the polypeptide portion is hapten-like, such portion may be advantageously joined or linked to a macromolecular carrier (such as keyhole limpet hemocyanin (KLH), bovine serum albumin (BSA) or tetanus toxoid) for immunization.

Monoclonal antibodies

As used herein, the modifier "monoclonal" indicates the character of the antibody as being obtained from a substantially homogenous population of antibodies, and is not to be construed as requiring production of the antibody by any particular method. Monoclonal antibodies can be obtained using any technique that provides for the production of antibody molecules by continuous cell lines in culture, such as the hybridoma method described by Kohler, G., et al., *Nature 256*:495, (1975), or they may be made by recombinant DNA methods (see, e.g., U.S. Patent No. 4,816,567 to Cabilly). Monoclonal antibodies may also be isolated from phage antibody libraries using the techniques described in Clackson, T., et al., *Nature 352*:624-628, (1991), and Marks, J.D., et al., *J. Mol. Biol. 222*:581-597, (1991). Such antibodies can be of any immunoglobulin class including IgG, IgM, IgE, IgA, IgD and any subclass thereof.

For example, monoclonal antibodies can be obtained by injecting a suitable mammal (e.g., a BALB/c mouse) with a composition comprising a MASP-3 polypeptide, or portion thereof. After a predetermined period of time, splenocytes are removed from the mouse and suspended in a cell culture medium. The splenocytes are then fused with an immortal cell line to form a hybridoma. The formed hybridomas are grown in cell culture and screened for their ability to produce a monoclonal antibody against MASP-3. (See also *Current Protocols in Immunology*, Vol. 1., John Wiley & Sons, pages 2.5.1-2.6.7, 1991.)

Human monoclonal antibodies may be obtained through the use of transgenic mice that have been engineered to produce specific human antibodies in response to antigenic challenge. In this technique, elements of the human immunoglobulin heavy and light chain locus are introduced into strains of mice derived from embryonic stem cell lines that contain targeted disruptions of the endogenous immunoglobulin heavy chain and light chain loci. The transgenic mice can synthesize human antibodies specific for human antigens, such as the MASP-2 antigens described herein, and the mice can be used to produce human MASP-2 antibody-secreting hybridomas by fusing B-cells from such animals to suitable myeloma cell lines using conventional Kohler-Milstein technology. Methods for obtaining human antibodies from transgenic mice are described, for example, by Green, L.L., et al., *Nature Genet. 7*:13, 1994; Lonberg, N., et al., *Nature 368*:856, 1994; and Taylor, L.D., et al., *Int. Immun. 6*:579, 1994.

Monoclonal antibodies can be isolated and purified from hybridoma cultures by a variety of well-established techniques. Such isolation techniques include affinity chromatography with Protein-A Sepharose, size-exclusion chromatography, and ion-exchange chromatography (see, for example, Coligan at pages 2.7.1-2.7.12 and pages 2.9.1-2.9.3; Baines et al., "Purification of Immunoglobulin G (IgG)," in *Methods in Molecular Biology*, The Humana Press, Inc., Vol. 10, pages 79-104, 1992).

Once produced, monoclonal antibodies are first tested for specific MASP-3 binding or, where desired, dual MASP-1/3, MASP-2/3 or MASP-1/2 binding. Methods for determining whether an antibody binds to a protein antigen and/or the affinity for an antibody to a protein antigen are known in the art. For example, the binding of an antibody to a protein antigen can be detected and/or quantified using a variety of techniques such as, but not limited to, Western blot, dot blot, plasmon surface resonance method (e.g., BIAcore system; Pharmacia Biosensor AB, Uppsala, Sweden and Piscataway, NJ), or enzyme-linked immunosorbent assays (ELISA). See, e.g., Harlow and Lane (1988) "Antibodies: A Laboratory Manual" Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Press, Cold Spring Harbor, N. Y.;

Benny K. C. Lo (2004) "Antibody Engineering: Methods and Protocols," Humana Press (ISBN: 1588290921); Borrebaek (1992) "Antibody Engineering, A Practical Guide," W.H. Freeman and Co., NY; Borrebaek (1995) "Antibody Engineering," 2nd Edition, Oxford University Press, NY, Oxford; Johne et al. (1993), *Immunol. Meth.* 160:191-198; Jonsson et al. (1993) *Ann. Biol. Clin.* 51: 19-26; and Jonsson et al. (1991) *Biotechniques* 11:620-627. See also, U.S. Patent No. 6,355,245.

The affinity of MASP-3 monoclonal antibodies can be readily determined by one of ordinary skill in the art (see, e.g., Scatchard, A., *NY Acad. Sci. 51*:660-672, 1949). In one embodiment, the MASP-3 monoclonal antibodies useful for the methods of the invention bind to MASP-3 with a binding affinity of <100 nM, preferably <10 nM, preferably <2 nM, and most preferably with high affinity of <500 pM.

Once antibodies are identified that specifically bind to MASP-3, the MASP-3 antibodies are tested for the ability to function as an alternative pathway inhibitor in one of several functional assays, such as, for example, the inhibition of alternative pathway complement activation is characterized by at least one or more of the following changes in a component of the complement system that occurs as a result of administration of a high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory antibody in accordance with various embodiments of the invention: inhibition of hemolysis and/or opsonization; inhibition of lectin-independent conversion of factor B; inhibition of lectin-independent conversion of factor D, inhibition of MASP-3 serine protease substrate-specific cleavage; the reduction of hemolysis or the reduction of C3 cleavage and C3b surface deposition; the reduction of Factor B and Bb deposition on an activating surface; the reduction of resting levels (in circulation, and without the experimental addition of an activating surface) of active Factor D relative to pro-Factor D; the reduction of levels of active Factor D relative to pro-Factor D in response to an activating surface; the reduction in production of resting and surface-induced levels of fluid-phase Ba, Bb, C3b, or C3a; and/or the the reduction in deposition of factor P.

Chimeric/humanized antibodies

Monoclonal antibodies useful in the method of the invention include chimeric antibodies in which a portion of the heavy and/or light chain is identical with or homologous to corresponding sequences in antibodies derived from a particular species or belonging to a particular antibody class or subclass, while the remainder of the chain(s) is identical with or homologous to corresponding sequences in antibodies derived from another species or belonging to another antibody class or subclass, as well as fragments of such antibodies (U.S.

Patent No. 4,816,567, to Cabilly; and Morrison, S.L., et al., *Proc. Nat'l Acad. Sci. USA 81*:6851-6855, (1984)).

One form of a chimeric antibody useful in the invention is a humanized monoclonal MASP-3 antibody. Humanized forms of non-human (e.g., murine) antibodies are chimeric antibodies, which contain minimal sequence derived from non-human immunoglobulin. Humanized monoclonal antibodies are produced by transferring the non-human (e.g., mouse) complementarity determining regions (CDR), from the heavy and light variable chains of the mouse immunoglobulin into a human variable domain. Typically, residues of human antibodies are then substituted in the framework regions of the non-human counterparts. Furthermore, humanized antibodies may comprise residues that are not found in the recipient antibody or in the donor antibody. These modifications are made to further refine antibody performance. In general, the humanized antibody will comprise substantially all of at least one, and typically two, variable domains in which all or substantially all of the hypervariable loops correspond to those of a non-human immunoglobulin and all or substantially all of the Fv framework regions are those of a human immunoglobulin sequence. The humanized antibody optionally also will comprise at least a portion of an immunoglobulin constant region (Fc), typically that of a human immunoglobulin. For further details, see Jones, P.T., et al., *Nature 321*:522-525, (1986); Reichmann, L., et al., *Nature 332*:323-329, (1988); and Presta, *Curr. Op. Struct. Biol. 2*:593-596, (1992).

The humanized antibodies useful in the invention include human monoclonal antibodies including at least a MASP-3 binding CDR3 region. In addition, the Fc portions may be replaced so as to produce IgA or IgM as well as human IgG antibodies. Such humanized antibodies will have particular clinical utility because they will specifically recognize human MASP-3 but will not evoke an immune response in humans against the antibody itself. Consequently, they are better suited for *in vivo* administration in humans, especially when repeated or long-term administration is necessary

Techniques for producing humanized monoclonal antibodies are also described, for example, by Jones, P.T., et al., *Nature 321*:522, (1986); Carter, P., et al., *Proc. Nat'l. Acad. Sci. USA 89*:4285, (1992); Sandhu, J.S., *Crit. Rev. Biotech. 12*:437, (1992); Singer, I.I., et al., *J. Immun. 150*:2844, (1993); Sudhir (ed.), *Antibody Engineering Protocols,* Humana Press, Inc., (1995); Kelley, "Engineering Therapeutic Antibodies," in *Protein Engineering: Principles and Practice*, Cleland et al. (eds.), John Wiley & Sons, Inc., pages 399-434, (1996); and by U.S. Patent No. 5,693,762, to Queen, 1997. In addition, there are commercial

entities that will synthesize humanized antibodies from specific murine antibody regions, such as Protein Design Labs (Mountain View, CA).

Recombinant antibodies

MASP-3 antibodies can also be made using recombinant methods. For example, human antibodies can be made using human immunoglobulin expression libraries (available for example, from Stratagene, Corp., La Jolla, CA) to produce fragments of human antibodies (V_H, V_L, Fv, Factor D, Fab or $F(ab')_2$). These fragments are then used to construct whole human antibodies using techniques similar to those for producing chimeric antibodies.

Immunoglobulin fragments

The MASP-3 inhibitory agents useful in the method of the invention encompass not only intact immunoglobulin molecules but also the well-known fragments including Fab, Fab', $F(ab)_2$, $F(ab')_2$ and Fv fragments, scFv fragments, diabodies, linear antibodies, single-chain antibody molecules and multispecific (e.g., bispecific and trispecific) antibodies formed from antibody fragments.

It is well known in the art that only a small portion of an antibody molecule, the paratope, is involved in the binding of the antibody to its epitope (see, e.g., Clark, W.R., *The Experimental Foundations of Modern Immunology*, Wiley & Sons, Inc., NY, 1986). The pFc' and Fc regions of the antibody are effectors of the classical complement pathway but are not involved in antigen binding. An antibody from which the pFc' region has been enzymatically cleaved, or which has been produced without the pFc' region, is designated an $F(ab')_2$ fragment and retains both of the antigen binding sites of an intact antibody. An isolated $F(ab')_2$ fragment is referred to as a bivalent monoclonal fragment because of its two antigen binding sites. Similarly, an antibody from which the Fc region has been enzymatically cleaved, or which has been produced without the Fc region, is designated a Fab fragment, and retains one of the antigen binding sites of an intact antibody molecule.

Antibody fragments can be obtained by proteolytic hydrolysis, such as by pepsin or papain digestion of whole antibodies by conventional methods. For example, antibody fragments can be produced by enzymatic cleavage of antibodies with pepsin to provide a 5S fragment denoted $F(ab')_2$. This fragment can be further cleaved using a thiol reducing agent to produce 3.5S Fab' monovalent fragments. Optionally, the cleavage reaction can be performed using a blocking group for the sulfhydryl groups that result from cleavage of disulfide linkages. As an alternative, an enzymatic cleavage using pepsin produces two monovalent Fab fragments and an Fc fragment directly. These methods are described, for

example, U.S. Patent No. 4,331,647 to Goldenberg; Nisonoff, A., et al., *Arch. Biochem. Biophys. 89*:230, (1960); Porter, R.R., *Biochem. J. 73*:119, (1959); Edelman, et al., in *Methods in Enzymology 1*:422, Academic Press, (1967); and by Coligan at pages 2.8.1-2.8.10 and 2.10-2.10.4.

In some embodiments, the use of antibody fragments lacking the Fc region are preferred to avoid activation of the classical complement pathway which is initiated upon binding Fc to the Fcγ receptor. There are several methods by which one can produce a monoclonal antibody that avoids Fcγ receptor interactions. For example, the Fc region of a monoclonal antibody can be removed chemically using partial digestion by proteolytic enzymes (such as ficin digestion), thereby generating, for example, antigen-binding antibody fragments such as Fab or $F(ab)_2$ fragments (Mariani, M., et al., *Mol. Immunol. 28*:69-71, (1991)). Alternatively, the human γ4 IgG isotype, which does not bind Fcγ receptors, can be used during construction of a humanized antibody as described herein. Antibodies, single chain antibodies and antigen-binding domains that lack the Fc domain can also be engineered using recombinant techniques described herein.

Single-chain antibody fragments

Alternatively, one can create single peptide chain binding molecules specific for MASP-3 in which the heavy and light chain Fv regions are connected. The Fv fragments may be connected by a peptide linker to form a single-chain antigen binding protein (scFv). These single-chain antigen binding proteins are prepared by constructing a structural gene comprising DNA sequences encoding the V_H and V_L domains which are connected by an oligonucleotide. The structural gene is inserted into an expression vector, which is subsequently introduced into a host cell, such as *E. coli*. The recombinant host cells synthesize a single polypeptide chain with a linker peptide bridging the two V domains. Methods for producing scFvs are described for example, by Whitlow, et al., "Methods: A Companion to Methods in Enzymology" *2*:97, (1991); Bird, et al., *Science 242*:423, (1988); U.S. Patent No. 4,946,778, to Ladner; Pack, P., et al., *Bio/Technology 11*:1271, (1993).

As an illustrative example, a MASP-3-specific scFv can be obtained by exposing lymphocytes to MASP-3 polypeptide *in vitro* and selecting antibody display libraries in phage or similar vectors (for example, through the use of immobilized or labeled MASP-3 protein or peptide). Genes encoding polypeptides having potential MASP-3 polypeptide binding domains can be obtained by screening random peptide libraries displayed on phage or on bacteria such as *E. coli*. These random peptide display libraries can be used to screen

for peptides which interact with MASP-3. Techniques for creating and screening such random peptide display libraries are well known in the art (U.S. Patent No. 5,223,409, to Lardner; U.S. Patent No. 4,946,778, to Ladner; U.S. Patent No. 5,403,484, to Lardner; U.S. Patent No. 5,571,698, to Lardner; and Kay et al., *Phage Display of Peptides and Proteins* Academic Press, Inc., 1996) and random peptide display libraries and kits for screening such libraries are available commercially, for instance from CLONTECH Laboratories, Inc. (Palo Alto, Calif.), Invitrogen Inc. (San Diego, Calif.), New England Biolabs, Inc. (Beverly, Mass.), and Pharmacia LKB Biotechnology Inc. (Piscataway, N.J.).

Another form of a MASP-3 antibody fragment useful in this aspect of the invention is a peptide coding for a single complementarity-determining region (CDR) that binds to an epitope on a MASP-3 antigen and inhibits alternative complement pathway activation.

CDR peptides ("minimal recognition units") can be obtained by constructing genes encoding the CDR of an antibody of interest. Such genes are prepared, for example, by using the polymerase chain reaction to synthesize the variable region from RNA of antibody-producing cells (see, for example, Larrick et al., *Methods: A Companion to Methods* in *Enzymology 2*:106, (1991); Courtenay-Luck, "Genetic Manipulation of Monoclonal Antibodies," in *Monoclonal Antibodies: Production, Engineering and Clinical Application*, Ritter et al. (eds.), page 166, Cambridge University Press, (1995); and Ward et al., "Genetic Manipulation and Expression of Antibodies," in *Monoclonal Antibodies: Principles and Applications*, Birch et al. (eds.), page 137, Wiley-Liss, Inc., 1995).

The high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory antibodies described herein are administered to a subject in need thereof to inhibit alternative pathway activation. In some embodiments, the high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory antibody is a humanized monoclonal MASP-3 antibody. optionally with reduced effector function.

Bispecific antibodies

The high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory antibodies useful in the method of the invention encompass multispecific (i.e., bispecific and trispecific) antibodies. Bispecific antibodies are monoclonal, preferably human or humanized, antibodies that have binding specificities for at least two different antigens. In one embodiment, the compositions and methods comprise the use of a bispecific antibody comprising a binding specificity for the serine protease domain of MASP-3 and a binding specificity for MASP-2 (e.g., binding to at least one of CCP1-CCP2 or serine protease domain of MASP-2). In another embodiment, the method comprises the use of a bispecific antibody comprising a binding specificity for the serine protease domain of

MASP-3 and a binding specificity for MASP-1 (e.g., binding to the serine protease domain of MASP-1). In another embodiment, the method comprises the use of a trispecific antibody comprising a binding specificity for MASP-3 (e.g., binding to the serine protease domain of MASP-3), a binding specificity for MASP-2 (e.g., binding to at least one of CCP1-CCP2 or serine protease domain of MASP-2) and a binding specificity for MASP-1 (e.g., binding to the serine protease domain of MASP-1).

Methods for making bispecific antibodies are within the purview of those skilled in the art. Traditionally, the recombinant production of bispecific antibodies is based on the co-expression of two immunoglobulin heavy-chain/light-chain pairs, where the two heavy chains have different specificities (Milstein and Cuello, *Nature* 305:537-539 (1983)). Antibody variable domains with the desired binding specificities (antibody-antigen combining sites) can be fused to immunoglobulin constant domain sequences. The fusion preferably is with an immunoglobulin heavy-chain constant domain, including at least part of the hinge, C_H2, and C_H3 regions. DNAs encoding the immunoglobulin heavy-chain fusions and, if desired, the immunoglobulin light chain, are inserted into separate expression vectors, and are co-transfected into a suitable host organism. For further details of illustrative currently known methods for generating bispecific antibodies see, e.g., Suresh et al., *Methods in Enzymology* 121:210 (1986); WO96/27011; Brennan et al., *Science* 229:81 (1985); Shalaby et al., *J. Exp. Med.* 175:217-225 (1992); Kostelny et al., *J. Immunol.* 148(5):1547-1553 (1992); Hollinger et al. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci* USA 90:6444-6448 (1993); Gruber et al., *J. Immunol.* 152:5368 (1994); and Tutt et al., *J. Immunol.* 147:60 (1991). Bispecific antibodies also include cross-linked or heteroconjugate antibodies. Heteroconjugate antibodies may be made using any convenient cross -linking methods. Suitable crosslinking agents are well known in the art, and are disclosed in U.S. Pat. No. 4,676,980, along with a number of cross-linking techniques.

Various techniques for making and isolating bispecific antibody fragments directly from recombinant cell culture have also been described. For example, bispecific antibodies have been produced using leucine zippers. (See, e.g., Kostelny et al. *J. Immunol.* 148(5):1547-1553 (1992)). The "diabody" technology described by Hollinger et al. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci* USA 90:6444-6448 (1993), has provided an alternative mechanism for making bispecific antibody fragments. The fragments comprise a heavy-chain variable domain (VH) connected to a light-chain variable domain (VL) by a linker which is too short to allow pairing between the two domains on the same chain. Accordingly, the VH and VL domains of one fragment are forced to pair with the complementary VL and VH domains of

another fragment, thereby forming two antigen-binding sites. Bispecific diabodies, as opposed to bispecific whole antibodies, may also be particularly useful because they can be readily constructed and expressed in E. coli. Diabodies (and many other polypeptides such as antibody fragments) of appropriate binding specificities can be readily selected using phage display (WO94/13804) from libraries. If one arm of the diabody is to be kept constant, for instance, with a specificity directed against antigen X, then a library can be made where the other arm is varied and an antibody of appropriate specificity selected.

Another strategy for making bispecific antibody fragments by the use of single-chain Fv (scFv) dimers has also been reported. (See, e.g., Gruber et al. *J. Immunol.*, 152:5368 (1994)). Alternatively, the antibodies can be "linear antibodies" as described in, e.g., Zapata et al., *Protein Eng.* 8(10):1057-1062 (1995). Briefly described, these antibodies comprise a pair of tandem Factor D segments (V_H-C_HI-V_H-C_HI) which form a pair of antigen binding regions. Linear antibodies can be bispecific or monospecific. The methods of the invention also embrace the use of variant forms of bispecific antibodies such as the tetravalent dual variable domain immunoglobulin (DVD-Ig) molecules described in Wu et al., *Nat Biotechnol* 25:1290-1297 (2007). The DVD-Ig molecules are designed such that two different light chain variable domains (VL) from two different parent antibodies are linked in tandem directly or via a short linker by recombinant DNA techniques, followed by the light chain constant domain. Methods for generating DVD-Ig molecules from two parent antibodies are further described in, e.g., WO08/024188 and WO07/024715, the disclosures of each of which are incorporated herein by reference in their entirety.

XVIII. PHARMACEUTICAL COMPOSITIONS AND DELIVERY METHODS DOSING

In another aspect, the invention provides compositions comprising high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory antibodies for inhibiting the adverse effects of alternative pathway complement activation in a subject in need thereof, such as, for example, a subject suffering from an alternative pathway-related disease or condition, such as, for example a hemolytic disease, such as PNH, or a disease or disorder selected from the group consisting of age-related macular degeneration (AMD), ischemia-reperfusion injury, arthritis, disseminated intravascular coagulation, thrombotic microangiopathy (including hemolytic uremic syndrome (HUS), atypical hemolytic uremic syndrome (aHUS) or thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura (TTP)), asthma, dense deposit disease, pauci-immune necrotizing crescentic glomerulonephritis, traumatic brain injury, aspiration pneumonia, endophthalmitis,

neuromyelitis optica, Behcet's disease, multiple sclerosis (MS), Guillain Barre Syndrome, Alzheimer's disease, Amylotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS), lupus nephritis, systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE), Diabetic retinopathy, Uveitis, Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD), C3 glomerulopathy, transplant rejection, Graft-versus-host disease (GVHD), hemodialysis, sepsis, Systemic inflammatory response syndrome (SIRS), Acute Respiratory Distress Syndrome (ARDS), ANCA vasculitis, Anti-phospholipid syndrome, Atherosclerosis, IgA Nephropathy and Myasthenia Gravis.

The methods of this aspect of the invention comprises administering to the subject a composition comprising an amount of a high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory antibody effective to inhibit alternative pathway complement activation and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier. In some embodiments, the method further comprises administering a composition comprising a MASP-2 inhibitory agent. The high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory antibodies and MASP-2 inhibitory agents can be administered to a subject in need thereof, at therapeutically effective doses to treat or ameliorate conditions associated with alternative pathway complement activation, and optionally also MASP-2-dependent complement activation. A therapeutically effective dose refers to the amount of the MASP-3 inhibitory antibody, or a combination of a MASP-3 inhibitory antibody and a MASP-2 inhibitory agent sufficient to result in amelioration of symptoms of the condition. The inhibition of alternative pathway complement activation is characterized by at least oneor more of the following changes in a component of the complement system that occurs as a result of administration of a high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory antibody in accordance with various embodiments of the invention: inhibition of hemolysis and/or opsonization; inhibition of lectin-independent conversion of factor B; inhibition of lectin-independent conversion of factor D, inhibition of MASP-3 serine protease substrate-specific cleavage; the reduction of hemolysis or the reduction of C3 cleavage and C3b surface deposition; the reduction of Factor B and Bb deposition on an activating surface; the reduction of resting levels (in circulation, and without the experimental addition of an activating surface) of active Factor D relative to pro-Factor D; the reduction of levels of active Factor D relative to pro-Factor D in response to an activating surface; and/or the the reduction in the production of resting and surface-induced levels of fluid-phase Ba, Bb, C3b, or C3a.

Toxicity and therapeutic efficacy of MASP-3 and MASP-2 inhibitory agents can be determined by standard pharmaceutical procedures employing experimental animal models. Using such animal models, the NOAEL (no observed adverse effect level) and the MED (the minimally effective dose) can be determined using standard methods. The dose ratio between

NOAEL and MED effects is the therapeutic ratio, which is expressed as the ratio NOAEL/MED. MASP-3 inhibitory agents and MASP-2 inhibitory agents that exhibit large therapeutic ratios or indices are most preferred. The data obtained from the cell culture assays and animal studies can be used in formulating a range of dosages for use in humans. The dosage of the MASP-3 inhibitory agent and MASP-2 inhibitory agent preferably lies within a range of circulating concentrations that include the MED with little or no toxicity. The dosage may vary within this range depending upon the dosage form employed and the route of administration utilized.

For any compound formulation, the therapeutically effective dose can be estimated using animal models. For example, a dose may be formulated in an animal model to achieve a circulating plasma concentration range that includes the MED. Quantitative levels of the MASP-3 inhibitory agent or MASP-2 inhibitory agent in plasma may also be measured, for example, by high performance liquid chromatography.

In addition to toxicity studies, effective dosage may also be estimated based on the amount of target MASP protein present in a living subject and the binding affinity of the MASP-3 or MASP-2 inhibitory agent.

It has been reported that MASP-1 levels in normal human subjects is present in serum in levels in the range of from 1.48 to 12.83 μg/mL (Terai I. et al, *Clin Exp Immunol* 110:317-323 (1997); Theil et al., *Clin. Exp. Immunol.* 169:38 (2012)). The mean serum MASP-3 concentrations in normal human subjects has been reported to be in the range of about 2.0 to 12.9 μg/mL (Skjoedt M et al., *Immunobiology* 215(11):921-31 (2010); Degn et al., *J. Immunol Methods*, 361-37 (2010); Csuka et al., *Mol. Immunol.* 54:271 (2013). It has been shown that MASP-2 levels in normal human subjects is present in serum in low levels in the range of 500 ng/mL, and MASP-2 levels in a particular subject can be determined using a quantitative assay for MASP-2 described in Moller-Kristensen M., et al., *J. Immunol. Methods 282*:159-167 (2003) and Csuka et al., *Mol. Immunol.* 54:271 (2013).

Generally, the dosage of administered compositions comprising MASP-3 inhibitory agents or MASP-2 inhibitory agents varies depending on such factors as the subject's age, weight, height, sex, general medical condition, and previous medical history. As an illustration, MASP-3 inhibitory agents or MASP-2 inhibitory agents (such as MASP-3 antibodies, MASP-1 antibodies or MASP-2 antibodies), can be administered in dosage ranges from about 0.010 to 100.0 mg/kg, preferably 0.010 to 10 mg/kg, preferably 0.010 to 1.0 mg/kg, more preferably 0.010 to 0.1 mg/kg of the subject body weight. In some embodiments, MASP-2 inhibitory agents (such as MASP-2 antibodies) are administered in

dosage ranges from about preferably 0.010 to 10 mg/kg, preferably 0.010 to 1.0 mg/kg, more preferably 0.010 to 0.1 mg/kg of the subject body weight. In some embodiments, MASP-1 inhibitory agents (such as MASP-1 antibodies) or MASP-3 inhibitory agents (such as MASP-3 antibodies) are administered in dosage ranges from about 0.010 to 100.0 mg/kg, preferably 0.010 to 10 mg/kg, such as form about 1 mg/kg to about 10 mg/kg, preferably 0.010 to 1.0 mg/kg, more preferably 0.010 to 0.1 mg/kg of the subject body weight.

Therapeutic efficacy of MASP-3 inhibitory compositions, optionally in combination with MASP-2 inhibitory compositions, or of MASP-1 inhibitory compositions, optionally in combination with MASP-2 inhibitory compositions, and methods of the present invention in a given subject, and appropriate dosages, can be determined in accordance with complement assays well known to those of skill in the art. Complement generates numerous specific products. During the last decade, sensitive and specific assays have been developed and are available commercially for most of these activation products, including the small activation fragments C3a, C4a, and C5a and the large activation fragments iC3b, C4d, Bb, and sC5b-9. Most of these assays utilize monoclonal antibodies that react with new antigens (neoantigens) exposed on the fragment, but not on the native proteins from which they are formed, making these assays very simple and specific. Most rely on ELISA technology, although radioimmunoassay is still sometimes used for C3a and C5a. These latter assays measure both the unprocessed fragments and their 'desArg' fragments, which are the major forms found in the circulation. Unprocessed fragments and $C5a_{desArg}$ are rapidly cleared by binding to cell surface receptors and are hence present in very low concentrations, whereas $C3a_{desArg}$ does not bind to cells and accumulates in plasma. Measurement of C3a provides a sensitive, pathway-independent indicator of complement activation. Alternative pathway activation can be assessed by measuring the Bb fragment and/or measurement of factor D activation. Detection of the fluid-phase product of membrane attack pathway activation, sC5b-9, provides evidence that complement is being activated to completion. Because both the lectin and classical pathways generate the same activation products, C4a and C4d, measurement of these two fragments does not provide any information about which of these two pathways has generated the activation products.

The inhibition of the alternative pathway in a mammalian subject is characterized by at least one or more of the following in the mammalian subject after treatment with a high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory antibody disclosed herein: inhibition of Factor D maturation; inhibition of the alternative pathway when administered to the subject at a molar ratio of from about 1:1 to about 2.5:1 (MASP-3 target to mAb); the classical pathway is not inhibited;

inhibition of hemolysis and/or opsonization; a reduction of hemolysis or the reduction of C3 cleavage and C3b surface deposition; a reduction of Factor B and Bb deposition on an activating surface; a reduction of resting levels (in circulation, and without the experimental addition of an activating surface) of active Factor D relative to pro-Factor D; a reduction of levels of active Factor D relative to pro-Factor D in response to an activating surface; and/or a reduction of the production of resting and surface-induced levels of fluid-phase Ba, Bb, C3b, or C3a.

The inhibition of MASP-2-dependent complement activation is characterized by at least one of the following changes in a component of the complement system that occurs as a result of administration of a MASP-2 inhibitory agent in accordance with the methods of the invention: the inhibition of the generation or production of MASP-2-dependent complement activation system products C4b, C3a, C5a and/or C5b-9 (MAC) (measured, for example, as described in measured, for example, as described in Example 2 of US Patent No. 7,919,094), the reduction of C4 cleavage and C4b deposition or the reduction of C3 cleavage and C3b deposition.

Pharmaceutical carriers and delivery vehicles

In general, the MASP-3 inhibitory antibody compositions, or compositions comprising a combination of MASP-2 and MASP-3 inhibitory agents, may be combined with any other selected therapeutic agents, are suitably contained in a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier. The carrier is non-toxic, biocompatible and is selected so as not to detrimentally affect the biological activity of the MASP-3 inhibitory antibody or the MASP-2 inhibitory agent (and any other therapeutic agents combined therewith). Exemplary pharmaceutically acceptable carriers for peptides are described in U.S. PatentNo. 5,211,657 to Yamada. The MASP-3 antibodies useful in the invention, as described herein, may be formulated into preparations in solid, semi-solid, gel, liquid or gaseous forms such as tablets, capsules, powders, granules, ointments, solutions, depositories, inhalants and injections allowing for oral, parenteral or surgical administration. The invention also contemplates local administration of the compositions by coating medical devices and the like.

Suitable carriers for parenteral delivery via injectable, infusion or irrigation and topical delivery include distilled water, physiological phosphate-buffered saline, normal or lactated Ringer's solutions, dextrose solution, Hank's solution, or propanediol. In addition, sterile, fixed oils may be employed as a solvent or suspending medium. For this purpose any biocompatible oil may be employed including synthetic mono- or diglycerides. In addition, fatty acids such as oleic acid find use in the preparation of injectables. The carrier and agent

may be compounded as a liquid, suspension, polymerizable or non-polymerizable gel, paste or salve.

The carrier may also comprise a delivery vehicle to sustain (i.e., extend, delay or regulate) the delivery of the agent(s) or to enhance the delivery, uptake, stability or pharmacokinetics of the therapeutic agent(s). Such a delivery vehicle may include, by way of non-limiting example, microparticles, microspheres, nanospheres or nanoparticles composed of proteins, liposomes, carbohydrates, synthetic organic compounds, inorganic compounds, polymeric or copolymeric hydrogels and polymeric micelles. Suitable hydrogel and micelle delivery systems include the PEO:PHB:PEO copolymers and copolymer/cyclodextrin complexes disclosed in WO 2004/009664 A2 and the PEO and PEO/cyclodextrin complexes disclosed in U.S. Patent Application Publication No. 2002/0019369 A1. Such hydrogels may be injected locally at the site of intended action, or subcutaneously or intramuscularly to form a sustained release depot.

Compositions of the present invention may be formulated for delivery subcutaneously, intra-muscularly, intravenously, intra-arterially or as an inhalant.

For intra-articular delivery, the MASP-3 inhibitory antibody, optionally in combination with a MASP-2 inhibitory agent may be carried in above-described liquid or gel carriers that are injectable, above-described sustained-release delivery vehicles that are injectable, or a hyaluronic acid or hyaluronic acid derivative.

For oral administration of non-peptidergic agents, the MASP-3 inhibitory antibody, optionally in combination with a MASP-2 inhibitory agent may be carried in an inert filler or diluent such as sucrose, cornstarch, or cellulose.

For topical administration, the MASP-3 inhibitory antibody, optionally in combination with a MASP-2 inhibitory agent may be carried in ointment, lotion, cream, gel, drop, suppository, spray, liquid or powder, or in gel or microcapsular delivery systems via a transdermal patch.

Various nasal and pulmonary delivery systems, including aerosols, metered-dose inhalers, dry powder inhalers, and nebulizers, are being developed and may suitably be adapted for delivery of the present invention in an aerosol, inhalant, or nebulized delivery vehicle, respectively.

For intrathecal (IT) or intracerebroventricular (ICV) delivery, appropriately sterile delivery systems (e.g., liquids; gels, suspensions, etc.) can be used to administer the present invention.

The compositions of the present invention may also include biocompatible excipients, such as dispersing or wetting agents, suspending agents, diluents, buffers, penetration enhancers, emulsifiers, binders, thickeners, flavoring agents (for oral administration).

Pharmaceutical carriers for antibodies and peptides

More specifically with respect to high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory antibodies, as described herein, exemplary formulations can be parenterally administered as injectable dosages of a solution or suspension of the compound in a physiologically acceptable diluent with a pharmaceutical carrier that can be a sterile liquid such as water, oils, saline, glycerol or ethanol. Additionally, auxiliary substances such as wetting or emulsifying agents, surfactants, pH buffering substances and the like can be present in compositions comprising MASP-3 antibodies. Additional components of pharmaceutical compositions include petroleum (such as of animal, vegetable or synthetic origin), for example, soybean oil and mineral oil. In general, glycols such as propylene glycol or polyethylene glycol are preferred liquid carriers for injectable solutions.

The MASP-3 antibodies can also be administered in the form of a depot injection or implant preparation that can be formulated in such a manner as to permit a sustained or pulsatile release of the active agents.

XVIX. MODES OF ADMINISTRATION

The pharmaceutical compositions comprising the MASP-3 inhibitory antibodies, optionally in combination with MASP-2 inhibitory agents may be administered in a number of ways depending on whether a local or systemic mode of administration is most appropriate for the condition being treated. Further, the compositions of the present invention can be delivered by coating or incorporating the compositions on or into an implantable medical device.

Systemic delivery

As used herein, the terms "systemic delivery" and "systemic administration" are intended to include but are not limited to oral and parenteral routes including intramuscular (IM), subcutaneous, intravenous (IV), intraarterial, inhalational, sublingual, buccal, topical, transdermal, nasal, rectal, vaginal and other routes of administration that effectively result in dispersement of the delivered agent to a single or multiple sites of intended therapeutic action. Preferred routes of systemic delivery for the present compositions include intravenous, intramuscular, subcutaneous, intraarterial and inhalational. It will be appreciated that the exact systemic administration route for selected agents utilized in particular compositions of the present invention will be determined in part to account for the agent's

susceptibility to metabolic transformation pathways associated with a given route of administration. For example, peptidergic agents may be most suitably administered by routes other than oral.

The MASP-3 inhibitory antibodies, as described herein, can be delivered into a subject in need thereof by any suitable means. Methods of delivery of MASP-3 antibodies and polypeptides include administration by oral, pulmonary, parenteral (e.g., intramuscular, intraperitoneal, intravenous (IV) or subcutaneous injection), inhalation (such as via a fine powder formulation), transdermal, nasal, vaginal, rectal, or sublingual routes of administration, and can be formulated in dosage forms appropriate for each route of administration.

By way of representative example, MASP-3 inhibitory antibodies and peptides can be introduced into a living body by application to a bodily membrane capable of absorbing the polypeptides, for example the nasal, gastrointestinal and rectal membranes. The polypeptides are typically applied to the absorptive membrane in conjunction with a permeation enhancer. (See, e.g., Lee, V.H.L., *Crit. Rev. Ther. Drug Carrier Sys.* **5**:69, (1988); Lee, V.H.L., *J. Controlled Release 13*:213, (1990); Lee, V.H.L., Ed., *Peptide and Protein Drug Delivery,* Marcel Dekker, New York (1991); DeBoer, A.G., et al., *J. Controlled Release 13*:241, (1990). For example, STDHF is a synthetic derivative of fusidic acid, a steroidal surfactant that is similar in structure to the bile salts, and has been used as a permeation enhancer for nasal delivery. (Lee, W.A., *Biopharm. 22*, Nov./Dec. 1990.)

The MASP-3 inhibitory antibodies as described herein may be introduced in association with another molecule, such as a lipid, to protect the polypeptides from enzymatic degradation. For example, the covalent attachment of polymers, especially polyethylene glycol (PEG), has been used to protect certain proteins from enzymatic hydrolysis in the body and thus prolong half-life (Fuertges, F., et al., *J. Controlled Release 11*:139, (1990)). Many polymer systems have been reported for protein delivery (Bae, Y.H., et al., *J. Controlled Release 9*:271, (1989); Hori, R., et al., *Pharm. Res. 6*:813, (1989); Yamakawa, I., et al., *J. Pharm. Sci. 79*:505, (1990); Yoshihiro, I., et al., *J. Controlled Release 10*:195, (1989); Asano, M., et al., *J. Controlled Release 9*:111, (1989); Rosenblatt, J., et al., *J. Controlled Release 9*:195, (1989); Makino, K., *J. Controlled Release 12*:235, (1990); Takakura, Y., et al., *J. Pharm. Sci. 78*:117, (1989); Takakura, Y., et al., *J. Pharm. Sci. 78*:219, (1989)).

Recently, liposomes have been developed with improved serum stability and circulation half-times (see, e.g., U.S. Patent No. 5,741,516, to Webb). Furthermore, various methods of liposome and liposome-like preparations as potential drug carriers have been

reviewed (see, e.g., U.S. Patent No. 5,567,434, to Szoka; U.S. Patent No. 5,552,157, to Yagi; U.S. Patent No. 5,565,213, to Nakamori; U.S. Patent No. 5,738,868, to Shinkarenko; and U.S. Patent No. 5,795,587, to Gao).

For transdermal applications, the MASP-3 inhibitory antibodies, as described herein, may be combined with other suitable ingredients, such as carriers and/or adjuvants. There are no limitations on the nature of such other ingredients, except that they must be pharmaceutically acceptable for their intended administration, and cannot degrade the activity of the active ingredients of the composition. Examples of suitable vehicles include ointments, creams, gels, or suspensions, with or without purified collagen. The MASP-3 inhibitory antibodies may also be impregnated into transdermal patches, plasters, and bandages, preferably in liquid or semi-liquid form.

The compositions of the present invention may be systemically administered on a periodic basis at intervals determined to maintain a desired level of therapeutic effect. For example, compositions may be administered, such as by subcutaneous injection, every two to four weeks or at less frequent intervals. The dosage regimen will be determined by the physician considering various factors that may influence the action of the combination of agents. These factors will include the extent of progress of the condition being treated, the patient's age, sex and weight, and other clinical factors. The dosage for each individual agent will vary as a function of the MASP-3 inhibitory antibody or the MASP-2 inhibitory agent that is included in the composition, as well as the presence and nature of any drug delivery vehicle (e.g., a sustained release delivery vehicle). In addition, the dosage quantity may be adjusted to account for variation in the frequency of administration and the pharmacokinetic behavior of the delivered agent(s).

Local delivery

As used herein, the term "local" encompasses application of a drug in or around a site of intended localized action, and may include for example topical delivery to the skin or other affected tissues, ophthalmic delivery, intrathecal (IT), intracerebroventricular (ICV), intra-articular, intracavity, intracranial or intravesicular administration, placement or irrigation. Local administration may be preferred to enable administration of a lower dose, to avoid systemic side effects, and for more accurate control of the timing of delivery and concentration of the active agents at the site of local delivery. Local administration provides a known concentration at the target site, regardless of interpatient variability in metabolism, blood flow, etc. Improved dosage control is also provided by the direct mode of delivery.

Local delivery of a MASP-3 inhibitory antibody or a MASP-2 inhibitory agent may be achieved in the context of surgical methods for treating a disease or condition, such as for example during procedures such as arterial bypass surgery, atherectomy, laser procedures, ultrasonic procedures, balloon angioplasty and stent placement. For example, a MASP-3 inhibitory antibody or a MASP-2 inhibitory agent can be administered to a subject in conjunction with a balloon angioplasty procedure. A balloon angioplasty procedure involves inserting a catheter having a deflated balloon into an artery. The deflated balloon is positioned in proximity to the atherosclerotic plaque and is inflated such that the plaque is compressed against the vascular wall. As a result, the balloon surface is in contact with the layer of vascular endothelial cells on the surface of the blood vessel. The MASP-3 inhibitory antibody or MASP-2 inhibitory agent may be attached to the balloon angioplasty catheter in a manner that permits release of the agent at the site of the atherosclerotic plaque. The agent may be attached to the balloon catheter in accordance with standard procedures known in the art. For example, the agent may be stored in a compartment of the balloon catheter until the balloon is inflated, at which point it is released into the local environment. Alternatively, the agent may be impregnated on the balloon surface, such that it contacts the cells of the arterial wall as the balloon is inflated. The agent may also be delivered in a perforated balloon catheter such as those disclosed in Flugelman, M.Y., et al., *Circulation 85*:1110-1117, (1992). See also published PCT Application WO 95/23161 for an exemplary procedure for attaching a therapeutic protein to a balloon angioplasty catheter. Likewise, the MASP-3 inhibitory agent or MASP-2 inhibitory agent may be included in a gel or polymeric coating applied to a stent, or may be incorporated into the material of the stent, such that the stent elutes the MASP-3 inhibitory agent or MASP-2 inhibitory agent after vascular placement.

MASP-3 inhibitory antibodies used in the treatment of arthritides and other musculoskeletal disorders may be locally delivered by intra-articular injection. Such compositions may suitably include a sustained release delivery vehicle. As a further example of instances in which local delivery may be desired, MASP-3 inhibitory compositions used in the treatment of urogenital conditions may be suitably instilled intravesically or within another urogenital structure.

XX. TREATMENT REGIMENS

In prophylactic applications, the pharmaceutical compositions are administered to a subject susceptible to, or otherwise at risk of, an alternative pathway associated disease or disorder, for example, an alternative pathway disease or disorder selected from the group

consisting of paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria (PNH), age-related macular degeneration (AMD), ischemia-reperfusion injury, arthritis, disseminated intravascular coagulation, thrombotic microangiopathy (including hemolytic uremic syndrome (HUS), atypical hemolytic uremic syndrome (aHUS) and thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura (TTP)), asthma, dense deposit disease, pauci-immune necrotizing crescentic glomerulonephritis, traumatic brain injury, aspiration pneumonia, endophthalmitis, neuromyelitis optica, Behcet's disease, multiple sclerosis, Guillain Barre Syndrome, Alzheimer's disease, Amylotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS), lupus nephritis, systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE), Diabetic retinopathy, Uveitis, Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD), C3 glomerulopathy, transplant rejection, Graft-versus-host disease (GVHD), hemodialysis, sepsis, Systemic inflammatory response syndrome (SIRS), Acute Respiratory Distress Syndrome (ARDS), ANCA vasculitis, Anti-phospholipid syndrome, Atherosclerosis, IgA Nephropathy and Myasthenia Gravis., in an amount sufficient to eliminate or reduce the risk of developing symptoms of the condition. In therapeutic applications, the pharmaceutical compositions are administered to a subject suspected of, or already suffering from, an alternative pathway-related disease or disorder, such as an alternative pathway disease or disorder selected from the group consisting of paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria (PNH), age-related macular degeneration (AMD), ischemia-reperfusion injury, arthritis, disseminated intravascular coagulation, thrombotic microangiopathy (including hemolytic uremic syndrome (HUS), atypical hemolytic uremic syndrome (aHUS) or thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura (TTP)), asthma, dense deposit disease, pauci-immune necrotizing crescentic glomerulonephritis, traumatic brain injury, aspiration pneumonia, endophthalmitis, neuromyelitis optica, Behcet's disease, multiple sclerosis, Guillain Barre Syndrome, Alzheimer's disease, Amylotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS), lupus nephritis, systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE), Diabetic retinopathy, Uveitis, Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD), C3 glomerulopathy, transplant rejection, Graft-versus-host disease (GVHD), hemodialysis, sepsis, Systemic inflammatory response syndrome (SIRS), Acute Respiratory Distress Syndrome (ARDS), ANCA vasculitis, Anti-phospholipid syndrome, Atherosclerosis, IgA Nephropathy and Myasthenia Gravis, in a therapeutically effective amount sufficient to relieve, or at least partially reduce, the symptoms of the condition.

In one embodiment, the pharmaceutical composition comprising a high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory antibody is administered to a subject suffering from, or at risk for developing PNH. In accordance with this the subject's red blood cells are opsonized by fragments of C3 in the absence of the composition, and administration of the composition to

the subject increases the survival of red blood cells in the subject. In one embodiment, the subject exhibits one or more symptoms in the absence of the composition selected from the group consisting of (i) below normal levels of hemoglobin, (ii) below normal levels of platelets; (iii) above normal levels of reticulocytes, and (iv) above normal levels of bilirubin, and administration of the composition to the subject improves at least one or more of the symptoms, resulting in (i) increased, normal, or nearly normal levels of hemoglobin (ii) increased, normal or nearly normal levels of platelets, (iii) decreased, normal or nearly normal levels of reticulocytes, and/or (iv) decreased, normal or nearly normal levels of bilirubin.

In both prophylactic and therapeutic regimens for the treatment, prevention or reduction in severity of a disease or condition selected from the group consisting of paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria (PNH), age-related macular degeneration (AMD), ischemia-reperfusion injury, arthritis, disseminated intravascular coagulation, thrombotic microangiopathy (including hemolytic uremic syndrome (HUS), atypical hemolytic uremic syndrome (aHUS) or thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura (TTP)), asthma, dense deposit disease, pauci-immune necrotizing crescentic glomerulonephritis, traumatic brain injury, aspiration pneumonia, endophthalmitis, neuromyelitis optica and Behcet's disease, compositions comprising high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory antibodies and optionally MASP-2 inhibitory agents may be administered in several dosages until a sufficient therapeutic outcome has been achieved in the subject. In one embodiment of the invention, the high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory antibody and/or MASP-2 inhibitory agent may be administered to an adult patient (e.g., an average adult weight of 70 kg) in a dosage of from 0.1 mg to 10,000 mg, more suitably from 1.0 mg to 5,000 mg, more suitably 10.0 mg to 2,000 mg, more suitably 10.0 mg to 1,000 mg and still more suitably from 50.0 mg to 500 mg, or 10 to 200 mg. For pediatric patients, dosage can be adjusted in proportion to the patient's weight.

Application of the high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory antibodies and optional MASP-2 inhibitory compositions of the present invention may be carried out by a single administration of the composition (e.g., a single composition comprising MASP-3 and optionally MASP-2 inhibitory agents, or bispecific or dual inhibitory agents, or co-administration of separate compositions), or a limited sequence of administrations, for treatment of an alternative pathway-related disease or disorder, such as a disease or disorder selected form the group consisting of paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria (PNH), age-related macular degeneration (AMD), ischemia-reperfusion injury, arthritis, disseminated intravascular coagulation, thrombotic microangiopathy (including hemolytic uremic syndrome (HUS), atypical

hemolytic uremic syndrome (aHUS) or thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura (TTP)), asthma, dense deposit disease, pauci-immune necrotizing crescentic glomerulonephritis, traumatic brain injury, aspiration pneumonia, endophthalmitis, neuromyelitis optica, Behcet's disease, multiple sclerosis, Guillain Barre Syndrome, Alzheimer's disease, Amylotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS), lupus nephritis, systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE), Diabetic retinopathy, Uveitis, Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD), C3 glomerulopathy, transplant rejection, Graft-versus-host disease (GVHD), hemodialysis, sepsis, Systemic inflammatory response syndrome (SIRS), Acute Respiratory Distress Syndrome (ARDS), ANCA vasculitis, Anti-phospholipid syndrome, Atherosclerosis, IgA Nephropathy and Myasthenia Gravis.

Alternatively, the composition may be administered at periodic intervals such as daily, biweekly, weekly, every other week, monthly or bimonthly over an extended period of time for as determined by a physician for optimal therapeutic effect.

In some embodiments, a first composition comprising at least one high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory antibody and a second composition comprising at least one MASP-2 inhibitory agent are administered to a subject suffering from, or at risk for developing a disease or condition selected from the group consisting of paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria (PNH), age-related macular degeneration (AMD), ischemia-reperfusion injury, arthritis, disseminated intravascular coagulation, thrombotic microangiopathy (including hemolytic uremic syndrome (HUS), atypical hemolytic uremic syndrome (aHUS) or thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura (TTP)), asthma, dense deposit disease, pauci-immune necrotizing crescentic glomerulonephritis, traumatic brain injury, aspiration pneumonia, endophthalmitis, neuromyelitis optica, Behcet's disease, multiple sclerosis, Guillain Barre Syndrome, Alzheimer's disease, Amylotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS), lupus nephritis, systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE), Diabetic retinopathy, Uveitis, Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD), C3 glomerulopathy, transplant rejection, Graft-versus-host disease (GVHD), hemodialysis, sepsis, Systemic inflammatory response syndrome (SIRS), Acute Respiratory Distress Syndrome (ARDS), ANCA vasculitis, Anti-phospholipid syndrome, Atherosclerosis, IgA Nephropathy and Myasthenia Gravis.

In one embodiment, the first composition comprising at least one high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory antibody and a second composition comprising at least one MASP-2 inhibitory agent are administered simultaneously (i.e., within a time separation of no more than about 15 minutes or less, such as no more than any of 10, 5 or 1 minute). In one embodiment, the first composition comprising at least one high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory antibody and a

second composition comprising at least one MASP-2 inhibitory agent are administered sequentially (i.e., the first composition is administered either prior to or after the administration of the second composition, wherein the time separation of administration is more than 15 minutes). In some embodiments, the first composition comprising at least one high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory antibody and a second composition comprising at least one MASP-2 inhibitory agent are administered concurrently (i.e., the administration period of the first composition overlaps with the administration of the second composition). For example, in some embodiments, the first composition and/or the second composition are administered for a period of at least one, two, three or four weeks or longer. In one embodiment, at least one high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory antibody and at least one MASP-2 inhibitory agent are combined in a unit dosage form. In one embodiment, a first composition comprising at least one high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory antibody and a second composition comprising at least one MASP-2 inhibitory agent are packaged together in a kit for use in treatment of an alternative pathway-related disease or condition, such as paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria (PNH), age-related macular degeneration (AMD), ischemia-reperfusion injury, arthritis, disseminated intravascular coagulation, thrombotic microangiopathy (including hemolytic uremic syndrome (HUS), atypical hemolytic uremic syndrome (aHUS) or thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura (TTP)), asthma, dense deposit disease, pauci-immune necrotizing crescentic glomerulonephritis, traumatic brain injury, aspiration pneumonia, endophthalmitis, neuromyelitis optica, Behcet's disease, multiple sclerosis, Guillain Barre Syndrome, Alzheimer's disease, Amylotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS), lupus nephritis, systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE), Diabetic retinopathy, Uveitis, Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD), C3 glomerulopathy, transplant rejection, Graft-versus-host disease (GVHD), hemodialysis, sepsis, Systemic inflammatory response syndrome (SIRS), Acute Respiratory Distress Syndrome (ARDS), ANCA vasculitis, Anti-phospholipid syndrome, Atherosclerosis, IgA Nephropathy or Myasthenia Gravis.

In some embodiments, the subject suffering from PNH, age-related macular degeneration (AMD), ischemia-reperfusion injury, arthritis, disseminated intravascular coagulation, thrombotic microangiopathy (including hemolytic uremic syndrome (HUS), atypical hemolytic uremic syndrome (aHUS) or thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura (TTP)), asthma, dense deposit disease, pauci-immune necrotizing crescentic glomerulonephritis, traumatic brain injury, aspiration pneumonia, endophthalmitis, neuromyelitis optica, Behcet's disease, multiple sclerosis, Guillain Barre Syndrome, Alzheimer's disease, Amylotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS), lupus nephritis, systemic lupus

erythematosus (SLE), Diabetic retinopathy, Uveitis, Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD), C3 glomerulopathy, transplant rejection, Graft-versus-host disease (GVHD), hemodialysis, sepsis, Systemic inflammatory response syndrome (SIRS), Acute Respiratory Distress Syndrome (ARDS), ANCA vasculitis, Anti-phospholipid syndrome, Atherosclerosis, IgA Nephropathy and Myasthenia Gravis has previously undergone, or is currently undergoing treatment with a terminal complement inhibitor that inhibits cleavage of complement protein C5. In some embodiments, the method comprises administering to the subject a composition of the invention comprising a high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory antibody and optionally a MASP-2 inhibitor and further administering to the subject a terminal complement inhibitor that inhibits cleavage of complement protein C5. In some embodiments, the terminal complement inhibitor is a humanized anti-C5 antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof. In some embodiments, the terminal complement inhibitor is eculizumab.

XXI. EXAMPLES

The following examples merely illustrate the best mode now contemplated for practicing the invention, but should not be construed to limit the invention. All literature citations herein are expressly incorporated by reference.

EXAMPLE 1

This Example demonstrates that MASP-2 deficient mice are protected from *Neisseria meningitidis* induced mortality after infection with either *N. meningitidis* serogroup A or *N. meningitidis* serogroup B.

Methods:

MASP-2 knockout mice (MASP-2 KO mice) were generated as described in Example 1 of US 7,919,094, hereby incorporated herein by reference. 10-week-old MASP-2 KO mice (n=10) and wild-type (WT) C57/BL6 mice (n=10) were inoculated by intraperitoneal (i.p.) injection with a dosage of 2.6×10^7 CFU of *N. meningitidis* serogroup A Z2491 in a volume of 100 µl. The infective dose was administered to mice in conjunction with iron dextran at a final concentration of 400 mg/kg. Survival of the mice after infection was monitored over a 72-hour time period.

In a separate experiment, 10-week-old MASP-2 KO mice (n=10) and WT C57/BL6 mice (n=10) were inoculated by i.p. injection with a dosage of 6×10^6 CFU of *N.*

meningitidis serogroup B strain MC58 in a volume of 100 µL. The infective dose was administered to mice in conjunction with iron dextran at a final dose of 400 mg/kg. Survival of the mice after infection was monitored over a 72-hour time period. An illness score was also determined for the WT and MASP-2 KO mice during the 72-hour time period after infection, based on the illness scoring parameters described below in **TABLE 5**, which is based on the scheme of Fransen et al. (2010) with slight modifications.

TABLE 5: Illness Scoring associated with clinical signs in infected mice

Signs	Score
Normal	0
Slightly ruffled fur	1
Ruffled fur, slow and sticky eyes	2
Ruffled fur, lethargic and eyes shut	3
Very sick and no movement after stimulation	4
Dead	5

Blood samples were taken from the mice at hourly intervals after infection and analyzed to determine the serum level (log cfu/mL) of *N. meningitidis* in order to verify infection and determine the rate of clearance of the bacteria from the serum.

Results:

FIGURE 6 is a Kaplan-Meyer plot graphically illustrating the percent survival of MASP-2 KO and WT mice after administration of an infective dose of 2.6 x 10^7 cfu of *N. meningitidis* serogroup A Z2491. As shown in **FIGURE 6**, 100% of the MASP-2 KO mice survived throughout the 72-hour period after infection. In contrast, only 80% of the WT mice (p=0.012) were still alive 24 hours after infection, and only 50% of the WT mice were still alive at 72 hours after infection. These results demonstrate that MASP-2-deficient mice are protected from *N. meningitidis* serogroup A Z2491-induced mortality.

FIGURE 7 is a Kaplan-Meyer plot graphically illustrating the percent survival of MASP-2 KO and WT mice after administration of an infective dose of 6 x 10^6 cfu of *N. meningitidis* serogroup B strain MC58. As shown in **FIGURE 7**, 90% of the MASP-2 KO mice survived throughout the 72-hour period after infection. In contrast, only 20% of the WT mice (p=0.0022) were still alive 24 hours after infection. These results demonstrate that MASP-2-deficient mice are protected from *N. meningitidis* serogroup B strain MC58-induced mortality.

FIGURE 8 graphically illustrates the log cfu/mL of *N. meningitidis* serogroup B strain MC58 recovered at different time points in blood samples taken from the MASP-2 KO and WT mice after i.p. infection with 6x10^6 cfu of *N. meningitidis* serogroup B strain MC58

(n=3 at different time points for both groups of mice). The results are expressed as Means±SEM. As shown in **FIGURE 8**, in WT mice the level of *N. meningitidis* in the blood reached a peak of about 6.0 log cfu/mL at 24 hours after infection and dropped to about 4.0 log cfu/mL by 36 hours after infection. In contrast, in the MASP-2 KO mice, the level of *N. meningitidis* reached a peak of about 4.0 log cfu/mL at 12 hours after infection and dropped to about 1.0 log cfu/mL by 36 hours after infection (the symbol "*" indicates $p<0.05$; the symbol "**" indicates $p=0.0043$). These results demonstrate that although the MASP-2 KO mice were infected with the same dose of *N. meningitidis* serogroup B strain MC58 as the WT mice, the MASP-2 KO mice have enhanced clearance of bacteraemia as compared to WT.

FIGURE 9 graphically illustrates the average illness score of MASP-2 KO and WT mice at 3, 6, 12 and 24 hours after infection with $6x10^6$ cfu of *N. meningitidis* serogroup B strain MC58. As shown in **FIGURE 9**, the MASP-2-deficient mice showed high resistance to the infection, with much lower illness scores at 6 hours (symbol "*" indicates $p=0.0411$), 12 hours (symbol "**" indicates $p=0.0049$) and 24 hours (symbol "***" indicates $p=0.0049$) after infection, as compared to WT mice. The results in **FIGURE 9** are expressed as means±SEM.

In summary, the results in this Example demonstrate that MASP-2-deficient mice are protected from *N. meningitides*-induced mortality after infection with either *N. meningitidis* serogroup A or *N. meningitidis* serogroup B.

EXAMPLE 2

This Example demonstrates that the administration of MASP-2 antibody after infection with *N. meningitidis* increases the survival of mice infected with *N. meningitidis*.

Background/Rationale:

As described in Example 24 of US Patent 7,919,094, incorporated herein by reference, rat MASP-2 protein was utilized to pan a Fab phage display library, from which Fab2 #11 was identified as a functionally active antibody. Full-length antibodies of the rat IgG2c and mouse IgG2a isotypes were generated from Fab2 #11. The full-length MASP-2 antibody of the mouse IgG2a isotype was characterized for pharmacodynamic parameters (as described in Example 38 of US Patent 7,919,094).

In this Example, the mouse MASP-2 full-length antibody derived from Fab2 #11 was analyzed in the mouse model of *N. meningitidis* infection.

Methods:

The mouse IgG2a full-length MASP-2 antibody isotype derived from Fab2 #11, generated as described above, was tested in the mouse model of *N. meningitidis* infection as follows.

1. Administration of mouse-MASP-2 monoclonal antibodies (MoAb) after infection

9-week-old C57/BL6 Charles River mice were treated with inhibitory mouse MASP-2 antibody (1.0 mg/kg) (n=12) or control isotype antibody (n=10) at 3 hours after i.p. injection with a high dose ($4x10^6$ cfu) of *N. meningitidis* serogroup B strain MC58.

Results:

FIGURE 10 is a Kaplan-Meyer plot graphically illustrating the percent survival of mice after administration of an infective dose of $4x10^6$ cfu of *N. meningitidis* serogroup B strain MC58, followed by administration 3 hours post-infection of either inhibitory MASP-2 antibody (1.0 mg/kg) or control isotype antibody. As shown in **FIGURE 10**, 90% of the mice treated with MASP-2 antibody survived throughout the 72-hour period after infection. In contrast, only 50% of the mice treated with isotype control antibody survived throughout the 72-hour period after infection. The symbol "*" indicates p=0.0301, as determined by comparison of the two survival curves.

These results demonstrate that administration of a MASP-2 antibody is effective to treat and improve survival in subjects infected with N. *meningitidis.*

As demonstrated herein, the use of MASP-2 antibody in the treatment of a subject infected with *N. meningitidis* is effective when administered within 3 hours post-infection, and is expected to be effective within 24 hours to 48 hours after infection. Meningococcal disease (either meningococcemia or meningitis) is a medical emergency, and therapy will typically be initiated immediately if meningococcal disease is suspected (i.e., before *N. meningitidis* is positively identified as the etiological agent).

In view of the results in the MASP-2 KO mouse demonstrated in EXAMPLE 1, it is believed that administration of MASP-2 antibody prior to infection with *N. meningitidis* would also be effective to prevent or ameliorate the severity of infection.

EXAMPLE 3

This Example demonstrates the complement-dependent killing of *N. meningitidis* in human sera is MASP-3-dependent.

Rationale:

Patients with decreased serum levels of functional MBL display increased susceptibility to recurrent bacterial and fungal infections (Kilpatrick et al., *Biochim Biophys Acta* 1572:401-413 (2002)). It is known that *N. meningitidis* is recognized by MBL, and it has been shown that MBL-deficient sera do not lyse *N. meningitidis*.

In view of the results described in Examples 1 and 2, a series of experiments were carried out to determine the efficacy of administration of MASP-2 antibody to treat *N. meningitidis* infection in complement-deficient and control human sera. Experiments were carried out in a high concentration of serum (20%) in order to preserve the complement pathway.

Methods:

1. Serum bactericidal activity in various complement-deficient human sera and in human sera treated with human MASP-2 antibody

The following complement-deficient human sera and control human sera were used in this experiment:

TABLE 6: Human serum samples tested (as shown in FIGURE 11)

Sample	Serum type
A	Normal human sera (NHS) + human MASP-2 Ab
B	NHS + isotype control Ab
C	MBL -/- human serum
D	NHS
E	Heat-Inactivated (HI) NHS

A recombinant antibody against human MASP-2 was isolated from a combinatorial Antibody Library (Knappik, A., et al., *J. Mol. Biol. 296*:57-86 (2000)), using recombinant human MASP-2A as an antigen (Chen, C.B. and Wallis, *J. Biol. Chem. 276*:25894-25902 (2001)). An anti-human scFv fragment that potently inhibited lectin pathway-mediated activation of C4 and C3 in human plasma (IC_{50}~20 nM) was identified and converted to a full-length human IgG4 antibody.

N. meningitidis serogroup B-MC58 was incubated with the different sera show in **TABLE 6**, each at a serum concentration of 20%, with or without the addition of inhibitory human MASP-2 antibody (3 µg in 100 µl total volume) at 37°C with shaking. Samples were taken at the following time points: 0-, 30-, 60- and 90-minute intervals, plated out and then viable counts were determined. Heat-inactivated human serum was used as a negative control.

Results:

FIGURE 11 graphically illustrates the log cfu/mL of viable counts of *N. meningitidis* serogroup B-MC58 recovered at different time points in the human sera samples shown in **TABLE 6**. **TABLE 7** provides the Student's t-test results for **FIGURE 11**.

TABLE 7: Student's t-test Results for **FIGURE 11** (time point 60 minutes)

	Mean Diff. (Log)	**Significant? P<0.05?**	**P value summary**
A vs B	-0.3678	Yes	***(0.0002)
A vs C	-1.1053	Yes	***(p<0.0001)
A vs D	-0.2111	Yes	**(0.0012)
C vs D	1.9	Yes	***(p<0.0001)

As shown in **FIGURE 11** and **TABLE 7**, complement-dependent killing of *N. meningitidis* in human 20% serum was significantly enhanced by the addition of the human MASP-2 inhibitory antibody.

2. Serum bactericidal activity in various complement-deficient human sera

The following complement-deficient human sera and control human sera were used in this experiment:

TABLE 8: Human serum samples tested (as shown in **FIGURE 12**)

Sample	**Serum Type**
A	Normal human serum (NHS)
B	Heat-inactivated NHS
C	MBL -/-
D	MASP-3 -/- (MASP-1 +)

Note: The MASP-3 -/- (MASP-1 +) serum in sample D was taken from a subject with 3MC syndrome, which is a unifying term for the overlapping Carnevale, Mingarelli, Malpuech and Michels syndromes. As further described in Example 4, the mutations in exon 12 of the MASP-1/3 gene render the serine protease domain of MASP-3, but not MASP-1 dysfunctional. As described in Example 10, pro-factor D is preferentially present in 3MC serum, whereas activated factor D is preferentially present in normal human serum.

N. meningitidis serogroup B-MC58 was incubated with different complement-deficient human sera, each at a serum concentration of 20%, at 37°C with shaking. Samples were taken at the following time points: 0-, 15-, 30-, 45-, 60-, 90- and 120-minute intervals, plated out and then viable counts were determined. Heat-inactivated human serum was used as a negative control.

Results:

FIGURE 12 graphically illustrates the log cfu/mL of viable counts of *N. meningitidis* serogroup B-MC58 recovered at different time points in the human sera samples shown in **TABLE 8**. As shown in **FIGURE 12**, the WT (NHS) serum has the highest level of bactericidal activity for *N. meningitidis*. In contrast, the MBL -/- and MASP-3 -/- (which is MASP-1-sufficient) human sera do not have any bactericidal activity. These results indicate that complement-dependent killing of *N. meningitidis* in human 20% (v/v) serum is MASP-3- and MBL-dependent. **TABLE 9** provides the Student's t-test results for **FIGURE 12**.

TABLE 9: Student's t-test Results for **FIGURE 12**

Comparison	**Time Point (min)**	**Mean Diff. (Log)**	**Significant? P<0.05?**	**P value Summary**
A vs B	60	-0.8325	Yes	***(p<0.0001)
A vs B	90	-1.600	Yes	***(p<0.0001)
A vs C	60	-1.1489	Yes	***(p<0.0001)
A vs C	90	-1.822	Yes	***(p<0.0001)
A vs D	60	-1.323	Yes	***(0.0005)
A vs D	90	-2.185	Yes	***(p<0.0001)

In summary, the results shown in **FIGURE 12** and **TABLE 9** demonstrate that complement-dependent killing of *N. meningitidis* in 20% human serum is MASP-3- and MBL-dependent.

3. Complement-dependent killing of *N. meningitidis* in 20% (v/v) mouse sera deficient of MASP-2, MASP-1/3 or MBL A/C.

The following complement-deficient mouse sera and control mouse sera were used in this experiment:

TABLE 10: Mouse serum samples tested (as shown in **FIGURE 13**)

Sample	**Serum Type**

A	WT
B	MASP-2 -/-
C	MASP-1/3 -/-
D	MBL A/C -/-
E	WT heat-inactivated (HIS)

N. meningitidis serogroup B-MC58 was incubated with different complement-deficient mouse sera, each at a serum concentration of 20%, at 37°C with shaking. Samples were taken at the following time points: 0-, 15-, 30-, 60-, 90- and 120-minute intervals, plated out and then viable counts were determined. Heat-inactivated human serum was used as a negative control.

Results:

FIGURE 13 graphically illustrates the log cfu/mL of viable counts of *N. meningitidis* serogroup B-MC58 recovered at different time points in the mouse serum samples shown in **TABLE 10**. As shown in **FIGURE 13**, the MASP-2 -/- mouse sera have a higher level of bactericidal activity for *N. meningitidis* than WT mouse sera. In contrast, the MASP-1/3 -/- mouse sera do not have any bactericidal activity. The symbol "**" indicates p=0.0058, the symbol "***" indicates p=0.001. **TABLE 11** provides the Student's t-test results for **FIGURE 13**.

TABLE 11: Student's t-test Results for **FIGURE 13**

Comparison	**Time point**	**Mean Diff. (LOG)**	**Significant? (p<0.05)?**	**P value summary**
A vs. B	60 min.	0.39	yes	** (0.0058)
A vs. B	90 min.	0.6741	yes	*** (0.001)

In summary, the results in this Example demonstrate that MASP-2 -/- serum has a higher level of bactericidal activity for *N. meningitidis* than WT serum and that complement-dependent killing of *N. meningitidis* in 20% serum is MASP-3- and MBL-dependent.

EXAMPLE 4

This Example describes a series of experiments that were carried out to determine the mechanism of the MASP-3-dependent resistance to *N. meningitidis* infection observed in MASP-2 KO mice, as described in Examples 1-3.

Rationale:

In order to determine the mechanism of MASP-3-dependent resistance to *N. meningitidis* infection observed in MASP-2 KO mice (described in Examples 1-3 above), a series of experiments were carried out as follows.

1. MASP-1/3-deficient mice are not deficient of lectin pathway functional activity (also referred to as "LEA-2")

Methods:

In order to determine whether MASP-1/3-deficient mice are deficient of lectin pathway functional activity (also referred to as LEA-2), an assay was carried out to measure the kinetics of C3 convertase activity in plasma from various complement-deficient mouse strains tested under lectin activation pathway-specific assay conditions (1% plasma), as described in Schwaeble W. et al., *PNAS* vol 108(18):7523-7528 (2011), hereby incorporated herein by reference.

Plasma was tested from WT, C4-/-, MASP-1/3-/-; Factor B-/-, and MASP-2-/- mice as follows.

To measure C3 activation, microtiter plates were coated with mannan (1 μg/well), zymosan (1 μg/well) in coating buffer (15 mM Na_2Co_3, 35 mM $NaHCO_3$), or immune complexes, generated *in situ* by coating with 1% human serum albumin (HSA) in coating buffer then adding sheep anti-HAS serum (2 μg/mL) in TBS (10mM Tris, 140 mM NaCl, pH 7.4) with 0.05% Tween 20 and 5 mM Ca^{++}. Plates were blocked with 0.1% HSA in TBS and washed three times with TBS/Tween20/Ca^{++}. Plasma samples were diluted in 4 mM barbital, 145 mM NaCl, 2 mM $CaCl_2$, 1 mM $MgCl_2$, pH 7.4, added to the plates and incubated for 1.5 h at 37°C. After washing, bound C3b was detected using rabbit anti-human C3c (Dako), followed by alkaline phosphatase-conjugated goat anti-rabbit IgG and p-nitrophenyl phosphate.

Results:

The kinetics of C3 activation (as measured by C3b deposition on mannan-coated plates with 1% serum) under lectin pathway-specific conditions is shown in **FIGURE 14**. No C3 cleavage was seen in MASP-2-/- plasma. Factor B-/- (Factor B -/-) plasma cleaved C3 at half the rate of WT plasma, likely due to the loss of the amplification loop. A

significant delay in the lectin pathway-dependent conversion of C3 to C3b was seen in C4-/- ($T_{1/2}$=33min) as well as in MASP-1/3-/- deficient plasma ($T_{1/2}$=49 min). This delay of C3 activation in MASP-1/3-/- plasma has been shown to be MASP-1- rather than MASP-3-dependent. (See Takahashi M. et al., *J Immunol* 180:6132-6138 (2008)). These results demonstrate that MASP-1/3-deficient mice are not deficient of lectin pathway functional activity (also referred to as "LEA-2").

2. Effect of hereditary MASP-3 deficiency on alternative pathway activation.

Rationale:

The effect of hereditary MASP-3 deficiency on alternative pathway activation was determined by testing serum of a MASP-3-deficient patient with 3MC syndrome caused by a frame-shift mutation in the exon encoding the serine protease of MASP-3. The 3MC syndrome is a unifying term for the overlapping Carneavale, Mingarelli, Malpuech and Michels syndromes. These rare autosomal recessive disorders exhibit a spectrum of developmental features, including characteristic facial dysmorphism, cleft lip and/or palate, craniosynostosis, learning disability and genital, limb and vesicorenal abnormalities. Rooryck et al., *Nature Genetics* 43:197-203 (2011) studied 11 families with 3MC syndrome and identified two mutated genes, COLEC11 and MASP-1. The mutations in the MASP-1 gene render the exon encoding the serine protease domain of MASP-3, but not the exons encoding the serine protease of MASP-1, dysfunctional. Therefore, 3MC patients with mutations in the exon encoding the serine protease of MASP-3 are deficient of MASP-3 but sufficient in MASP-1.

Methods:

MASP-3-deficient serum was obtained from a 3MC patient, the mother and father of the 3MC patient (both heterozygous for the allele bearing a mutation that renders the exon encoding the MASP-3 serine protease domain dysfunctional), as well as from a C4-deficient patient (deficient in both human C4 genes) and an MBL-deficient subject. An alternative pathway assay was carried out under traditional AP-specific conditions (BBS/ Mg^{++}/EGTA, without Ca^{++}, wherein BBS = barbital buffered saline containing sucrose), as described in Bitter-Suermann et al., *Eur. J. Immunol* 11:291-295 (1981)), on zymosan-coated microtiter plates at serum concentrations ranging from 0.5 to 25% and C3b deposition was measured over time.

Results:

FIGURE 15 graphically illustrates the level of alternative pathway-driven C3b deposition on zymosan-coated microtiter plates as a function of serum concentration in serum

samples obtained from MASP-3-deficient, C4-deficient and MBL-deficient subjects. As shown in **FIGURE 15**, MASP-3-deficient patient serum has residual alternative pathway (AP) activity at high serum concentrations (25%, 12.5%, 6.25% serum concentrations), but a significantly higher AP_{50} (i.e., 9.8% of serum needed to achieve 50% of maximum C3 deposition).

FIGURE 16 graphically illustrates the level of alternative pathway-driven C3b deposition on zymosan-coated microtiter plates under "traditional" alternative pathway-specific (AP-specific) conditions (*i.e.*, BBS/EGTA/Mg^{++} without Ca^{++}) as a function of time in 10% human serum samples obtained from MASP-3-deficient, C4-deficient and MBL-deficient human subjects.

TABLE 12 below summarizes the AP_{50} results shown in **FIGURE 15** and the half-times for C3b deposition shown in **FIGURE 16**.

TABLE 12: Summary of Results shown in FIGURES 15 and 16

Serum type	AP_{50} (%)	$T_{1/2}$ (min)
MASP-3-deficient (3MC patient)	9.8	37.4
Mother of 3MC patient (heterozygous)	4.3	17.2
Father of 3MC patient (heterozygous)	4.3	20.9
C4-deficient	4.0	11.6
MBL-deficient	4.8	11.0

Note: In BBS/ Mg^{++}/EGTA buffer, the lectin pathway-mediated effects are deficient due to absence of Ca^{++} in this buffer.

In summary, under the conditions of these assays, the alternative pathway is significantly compromised in the 3MC patient.

3. Measurement of C3b deposition on mannan, zymosan and S. pneumonia D39 in mouse sera deficient of MASP-2 or MASP-1/3.

Methods:

C3b deposition was measured on mannan, zymosan and *S. pneumonia* D39-coated microtiter plates using mouse serum concentrations ranging from 0% to 20% obtained from MASP-2-/-, MASP-1/3-/- and WT mice. The C3b deposition assays were carried out under either "traditional" alternative pathway-specific conditions (*i.e.* BBS/EGTA/Mg^{++} without

Ca^{++}), or under physiological conditions allowing both the lectin pathway and the alternative pathway to function (*i.e.*, BBS/Mg^{++}/Ca^{++}).

Results:

FIGURE 17A graphically illustrates the level of C3b deposition on mannan-coated microtiter plates as a function of serum concentration in serum samples obtained from WT, MASP-2-deficient, and MASP-1/3-deficient mice under traditional alternative pathway-specific conditions (*i.e.*, BBS/EGTA/Mg^{++} without Ca^{++}), or under physiological conditions allowing both the lectin pathway and the alternative pathway to function (BBS/Mg^{++}/Ca^{++}). **FIGURE 17B** graphically illustrates the level of C3b deposition on zymosan-coated microtiter plates as a function of serum concentration in serum samples from WT, MASP-2-deficient, and MASP-1/3-deficient mice under traditional AP-specific conditions (*i.e.*, BBS/EGTA/Mg^{++} without Ca^{++}), or under physiological conditions allowing both the lectin pathway and the alternative pathway to function (BBS/Mg^{++}/Ca^{++}). **FIGURE 17C** graphically illustrates the level of C3b deposition on *S. pneumoniae* D39-coated microtiter plates as a function of serum concentration in serum samples from WT, MASP-2-deficient, and MASP-1/3-deficient mice under traditional AP-specific conditions (*i.e.*, BBS/EGTA/Mg^{++} without Ca^{++}), or under physiological conditions allowing both the lectin pathway and the alternative pathway to function (BBS/Mg^{++}/Ca^{++}).

FIGURE 18A graphically illustrates the results of a C3b deposition assay in highly diluted sera carried out on mannan-coated microtiter plates under traditional AP-specific conditions (*i.e.* BBS/EGTA/Mg^{++} without Ca^{++}) or under physiological conditions allowing both the lectin pathway and the alternative pathway to function (BBS/Mg^{++}/Ca^{++}), using serum concentrations ranging from 0 % up to 1.25%. **FIGURE 18B** graphically illustrates the results of a C3b deposition assay carried out on zymosan-coated microtiter plates under traditional AP-specific conditions (*i.e.* BBS/EGTA/Mg^{++} without Ca^{++}) or under physiological conditions allowing both the lectin pathway and the alternative pathway to function (BBS/EGTA/Mg^{++}/Ca^{++}), using serum concentrations ranging from 0 % up to 1.25%. **FIGURE 18C** graphically illustrates the results of a C3b deposition assay carried out on *S. pneumoniae* D39-coated microtiter plates under traditional AP-specific conditions (*i.e.* BBS/EGTA/Mg^{++} without Ca^{++}) or under physiological conditions allowing both the lectin pathway and the alternative pathway to function (BBS/EGTA/Mg^{++}/Ca^{++}), using serum concentrations ranging from 0 % up to 1.25%.

As shown in **FIGURES 18A-C**, C3b deposition assays were also carried out under traditional alternative pathway-specific conditions (*i.e.* BBS/EGTA/Mg^{++} without Ca^{++}) or

under physiological conditions allowing both the lectin pathway and the alternative pathway to function (BBS/Mg^{++}/Ca^{++}), using higher dilutions ranging from 0 % up to 1.25% serum on mannan-coated plates (**FIGURE 18A**); zymosan-coated plates (**FIGURE 18B**) and *S. pneumoniae* D39-coated plates (**FIGURE 18C**). The alternative pathway tails off under higher serum dilutions, so the activity observed in the MASP-1/3-deficient serum in the presence of Ca^{++} is MASP-2-mediated LP activity, and the activity in MASP-2-deficient serum in the presence of Ca^{++} is MASP-1/3-mediated residual activation of the AP.

Discussion:

The results described in this Example demonstrate that a MASP-2 inhibitor (or MASP-2 KO) provides significant protection from *N. meningitidis* infection by promoting MASP-3-driven alternative pathway activation. The results of the mouse serum bacteriolysis assays and the human serum bacteriolysis assays further show, by monitoring the serum bactericidal activity against *N. meningitidis*, that bactericidal activity against *N. meningitidis* is absent in MBL-deficient (mouse MBL A and MBL C double-deficient and human MBL-deficient sera).

FIGURE 1 illustrates the new understanding of the lectin pathway and alternative pathway based on the results provided herein. **FIGURE 1** delineates the role of LEA-2 in both opsonization and lysis. While MASP-2 is the initiator of "downstream" C3b deposition (and resultant opsonization) in multiple lectin-dependent settings physiologically (**FIGURE 18A**, **18B**, **18C**), it also plays a role in lysis of serum-sensitive bacteria. As illustrated in **FIGURE 1**, the proposed molecular mechanism responsible for the increased bactericidal activity of MASP-2-deficient or MASP-2-depleted serum/plasma for serum-sensitive pathogens such as *N. meningitidis* is that, for the lysis of bacteria, lectin pathway recognition complexes associated with MASP-1 and MASP-3 have to bind in close proximity to each other on the bacterial surface, thereby allowing MASP-1 to cleave MASP-3. In contrast to MASP-1 and MASP-2, MASP-3 is not an auto-activating enzyme, but, in many instances, requires activation/cleavage by MASP-1 to be converted into its enzymatically active form.

As further shown in **FIGURE 1**, activated MASP-3 can then cleave C3b-bound factor B on the pathogen surface to initiate the alternative pathway activation cascade by formation of the enzymatically active alternative pathway C3 and C5 convertase C3bBb and C3bBb(C3b)n, respectively. MASP-2-bearing lectin-pathway activation complexes have no part in the activation of MASP-3 and, in the absence or after depletion of MASP-2, all-lectin pathway activation complexes will either be loaded with MASP-1 or MASP-3. Therefore, in the absence of MASP-2, the likelihood is markedly increased that on the microbial surface

MASP-1 and MASP-3-bearing lectin-pathway activation complexes will come to sit in close proximity to each other, leading to more MASP-3 being activated and thereby leading to a higher rate of MASP-3-mediated cleavage of C3b-bound factor B to form the alternative pathway C3 and C5 convertases C3bBb and C3bBb(C3b)n on the microbial surface. This leads to the activation of the terminal activation cascades C5b-C9 that forms the Membrane Attack Complex, composed of surface-bound C5b associated with C6, C5bC6 associated with C7, C5bC6C7 associated with C8, and C5bC6C7C8, leading to the polymerization of C9 that inserts into the bacterial surface structure and forms a pore in the bacterial wall, which will lead to osmolytic killing of the complement-targeted bacterium.

The core of this novel concept is that the data provided herein clearly show that the lectin-pathway activation complexes drive the two distinct activation routes, as illustrated in **FIGURE 1**.

EXAMPLE 5

This Example demonstrates the inhibitory effect of MASP-2 deficiency and/or MASP-3 deficiency on lysis of red blood cells from blood samples obtained from a mouse model of paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria (PNH).

Background/Rationale:

Paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria (PNH), also referred to as Marchiafava-Micheli syndrome, is an acquired, potentially life-threatening disease of the blood, characterized by complement-induced intravascular hemolytic anemia. The hallmark of PNH is the chronic complement-mediated intravascular hemolysis that is a consequence of unregulated activation of the alternative pathway of complement due to the absence of the complement regulators CD55 and CD59 on PNH erythrocytes, with subsequent hemoglobinuria and anemia. Lindorfer, M.A., et al., *Blood 115*(11) (2010), Risitano, A.M, *Mini-Reviews in Medicinal Chemistry*, 11:528-535 (2011). Anemia in PNH is due to destruction of red blood cells in the bloodstream. Symptoms of PNH include red urine, due to appearance of hemoglobin in the urine, back pain, fatigue, shortness of breath and thrombosis. PNH may develop on its own, referred to as "primary PNH" or in the context of other bone marrow disorders such as aplastic anemia, referred to as "secondary PNH". Treatment for PNH includes blood transfusion for anemia, anticoagulation for thrombosis and the use of the monoclonal antibody eculizumab (Soliris®), which protects blood cells against immune destruction by inhibiting the complement system (Hillmen P. et al., *N. Engl. J. Med. 350*(6):552-9 (2004)). Eculizumab (Soliris®) is a humanized monoclonal antibody that targets the complement component C5, blocking its cleavage by C5 convertases, thereby preventing the production of C5a and the assembly of MAC. Treatment of PNH patients with eculizumab has resulted in a reduction of intravascular hemolysis, as measured by lactate dehydrogenase (LDH), leading to hemoglobin stabilization and transfusion independence in about half of the patients (Hillmen P, et al., Mini-Reviews in Medicinal Chemistry, vol 11(6) (2011)). While nearly all patients undergoing therapy with eculizumab achieve normal or almost normal LDH levels (due to control of intravascular hemolysis), only about one third of the patients reach a hemoglobin value about 11gr/dL, and the remaining patients on eculizumab continue to exhibit moderate to severe (*i.e.,* transfusion-dependent) anemia, in about equal proportions (Risitano A.M. et al., *Blood* 113:4094-100 (2009)). As described in Risitano et al., Mini-Reviews in *Medicinal Chemistry* 11:528-535 (2011), it was demonstrated that PNH patients on eculizumab contained C3 fragments bound to a substantial portion of their PNH erythrocytes (while untreated patients did not), leading to the

conclusion that membrane-bound C3 fragments work as opsonins on PNH erythrocytes, resulting in their entrapment in the reticuloendothelial cells through specific C3 receptors and subsequent extravascular hemolysis. Therefore, therapeutic strategies in addition to the use of eculizumab are needed for those patients developing C3 fragment-mediated extravascular hemolysis because they continue to require red cell transfusions.

This Example describes methods to assess the effect of MASP-2- and MASP-3-deficient serum on lysis of red blood cells from blood samples obtained from a mouse model of PNH and demonstrates the efficacy of MASP-2 inhibition and/or MASP-3 inhibition to treat subjects suffering from PNH, and also supports the use of inhibitors of MASP-2 and/or inhibitors of MASP-3 (including dual or bispecific MASP-2/MASP-3 inhibitors) to ameliorate the effects of C3 fragment-mediated extravascular hemolysis in PNH subjects undergoing therapy with a C5 inhibitor such as eculizumab.

Methods:

PNH animal model:

Blood samples were obtained from gene-targeted mice with deficiencies of Crry and C3 (Crry/C3-/-) and CD55/CD59-deficient mice. These mice are missing the respective surface complement regulators on their erythrocytes and these erythrocytes are, therefore, susceptible to spontaneous complement autolysis as are PNH human blood cells.

In order to sensitize these erythrocytes even more, these cells were used with and without coating by mannan and then tested for hemolysis in WT C56/BL6 plasma, MBL null plasma, MASP-2 -/- plasma, MASP-1/3 -/- plasma, human NHS, human MBL -/- plasma, and NHS treated with human MASP-2 antibody.

1. Hemolysis assay of Crry/C3 and CD55/CD59 double-deficient murine erythrocytes in MASP-2-deficient/depleted sera and controls

Day 1. Preparation of murine RBC (± mannan coating).

Materials included: fresh mouse blood, BBS/$Mg^{++/}$ Ca^{++} (4.4 mM barbituric acid, 1.8 mM sodium barbitone, 145 mM NaCl, pH 7.4, 5mM Mg^{++}, 5mM Ca^{++}), chromium chloride, $CrCl_3 \cdot 6H_20$ (0.5mg/mL in BBS/Mg^{++}/Ca^{++}) and mannan, 100 µg/mL in BBS/Mg^{++}/Ca^{++}.

Whole blood (2 mL) was spun down for 1-2 min at 2000xg in a refrigerated centrifuge at 4°C. The plasma and buffy coat were aspirated off. The sample was then washed 3x by re-suspending RBC pellet in 2 mL ice-cold BBS/gelatin/Mg^{++}/Ca^{++} and repeating centrifugation step. After the third wash, the pellet was re-suspended in 4 mL BBS/Mg^{++}/Ca^{++}. A 2 mL aliquot of the RBC was set aside as an uncoated control. To the remaining 2 mL, 2 mL CrCl3 and 2 mL mannan were added and the sample was incubated with gentle mixing at RT for 5 minutes. The reaction was terminated by adding 7.5 mL BBS/gelatin/Mg^{++}/Ca^{++}. The sample was spun down as above, re-suspended in 2 mL BBS/gelatin/Mg^{++}/Ca^{++} and washed a further two times as above, then stored at 4°C.

Day 2. Hemolysis assay

Materials included BBS/gelatin/Mg^{++}/Ca^{++} (as above), test sera, 96-well round-bottomed and flat-bottomed plates and a spectrophotometer that reads 96-well plates at 410-414 nm.

The concentration of the RBC was first determined and the cells were adjusted to 10^9/mL, and stored at this concentration. Before use, the cells were diluted in assay buffer to 10^8/mL, and then 100 µL per well was used. Hemolysis was measured at 410-414 nm (allowing for greater sensitivity than 541nm). Dilutions of test sera were prepared in ice-cold BBS/gelatin/Mg^{++}/Ca^{++}. 100µL of each serum dilution was pipetted into round-bottomed plate. 100 µL of appropriately diluted RBC preparation was added (i.e., 10^8/mL), incubated at 37°C for about 1 hour, and observed for lysis. (The plates may be photographed at this point.) The plate was then spun down at maximum speed for 5 minutes. 100 µL of the fluid phase was aspirated, transferred to flat-bottom plates, and the OD was recorded at 410-414 nm. The RBC pellets were retained (these can be subsequently lysed with water to obtain an inverse result).

Experiment #1

Fresh blood was obtained from CD55/CD59 double-deficient mice and blood of Crry/C3 double-deficient mice and erythrocytes were prepared as described in detail in the above protocol. The cells were split and half of the cells were coated with mannan and the

other half were left untreated, adjusting the final concentration to 10^8/mL, of which 100 µL was used in the hemolysis assay, which was carried out as described above.

Results of Experiment #1: The lectin pathway is involved in erythrocyte lysis in the PNH animal model

In an initial experiment, it was determined that non-coated WT mouse erythrocytes were not lysed in any mouse serum. It was further determined that mannan-coated Crry-/- mouse erythrocytes were slowly lysed (more than 3 hours at 37 degrees) in WT mouse serum, but they were not lysed in MBL null serum. (Data not shown).

It was determined that mannan-coated Crry-/- mouse erythrocytes were rapidly lysed in human serum but not in heat-inactivated NHS. Importantly, mannan-coated Crry-/- mouse erythrocytes were lysed in NHS diluted down to 1/640 (i.e., 1/40, 1/80, 1/160, 1/320 and 1/640 dilutions all lysed). (Data not shown). In this dilution, the alternative pathway does not work (AP functional activity is significantly reduced below 8% serum concentration).

Conclusions from Experiment #1

Mannan-coated Crry-/- mouse erythrocytes are very well lysed in highly diluted human serum with MBL but not in that without MBL. The efficient lysis in every serum concentration tested implies that the alternative pathway is not involved or needed for this lysis. The inability of MBL-deficient mouse serum and human serum to lyse the mannan-coated Crry-/- mouse erythrocytes indicates that the classical pathway also has nothing to do with the lysis observed. As lectin pathway recognition molecules are required (i.e., MBL), this lysis is mediated by the lectin pathway.

Experiment #2

Fresh blood was obtained from the Crry/C3 and CD55/CD59 double-deficient mice and mannan-coated Crry-/- mouse erythrocytes were analyzed in the haemolysis assay as described above in the presence of the following human serum: MASP-3 -/-; MBL null; WT; NHS pretreated with human MASP-2 antibody; and heat-inactivated NHS as a control.

Results of Experiment #2: MASP-2 inhibitors and MASP-3 deficiency prevents erythrocyte lysis in PNH animal model

With the mannan-coated Crry-/- mouse erythrocytes, NHS was incubated in the dilutions diluted down to 1/640 (i.e., 1/40, 1/80, 1/160, 1/320 and 1/640), human MBL-/- serum, human MASP-3-deficient serum (from 3MC patient), and NHS pretreated with MASP-2 mAb, and heat-inactivated NHS as a control.

The ELISA microtiter plate was spun down and the non-lysed erythrocytes were collected on the bottom of the round-well plate. The supernatant of each well was collected and the amount of hemoglobin released from the lysed erythrocytes was measured by reading the OD415 nm in an ELISA reader.

It was observed that MASP-3-/- serum did not lyse mannan-coated mouse erythrocytes at all. In the control heat-inactivated NHS (negative control), as expected, no lysis was observed. MBL-/- human serum lysed mannan-coated mouse erythrocytes at 1/8 and 1/16 dilutions. MASP-2-antibody-pretreated NHS lysed mannan-coated mouse erythrocytes at 1/8 and 1/16 dilutions while WT human serum lysed mannan-coated mouse erythrocytes down to dilutions of 1/32.

FIGURE 19 graphically illustrates hemolysis (as measured by hemoglobin release of lysed mouse erythrocytes (Crry/C3-/-) into the supernatant measured by photometry) of mannan-coated murine erythrocytes by human serum over a range of serum dilutions in serum from MASP-3-/-, heat-inactivated (HI) NHS, MBL-/-, NHS pretreated with MASP-2 antibody, and NHS control.

FIGURE 20 graphically illustrates hemolysis (as measured by hemoglobin release of lysed mouse erythrocytes (Crry/C3-/-) into the supernatant measured by photometry) of mannan-coated murine erythrocytes by human serum over a range of serum concentration in serum from MASP-3-/-, heat-inactivated (HI) NHS, MBL-/-, NHS pretreated with MASP-2 antibody, and NHS control.

From the results shown in **FIGURE 19** and **20**, it is demonstrated that inhibiting MASP-3 will prevent any complement-mediated lysis of sensitized erythrocytes with deficient protection from autologous complement activation. MASP-2 inhibition with MASP-2 antibody significantly shifted the CH_{50} and was protective to some extent, but MASP-3 inhibition was more effective.

Experiment #3

Non-coated Crry-/- mouse erythrocytes obtained from fresh blood from the Crry/C3 and CD55/CD59 double-deficient mice were analyzed in the hemolysis assay as described

above in the presence of the following sera: MASP-3-/-; MBL-/-; WT; NHS pretreated with human MASP-2 antibody, and heat-inactivated NHS as a control.

Results:

FIGURE 21 graphically illustrates hemolysis (as measured by hemoglobin release of lysed WT mouse erythrocytes into the supernatant measured by photometry) of non-coated murine erythrocytes over a range of serum concentrations in human sera from a 3MC (MASP-3-/-) patient, heat inactivated (HI) NHS, MBL-/-, NHS pretreated with MASP-2 antibody, and NHS control. As shown in **FIGURE 21** and summarized in **TABLE 13**, it is demonstrated that inhibiting MASP-3 inhibits complement-mediated lysis of non-sensitized WT mouse erythrocytes.

FIGURE 22 graphically illustrates hemolysis (as measured by hemoglobin release of lysed mouse erythrocytes (CD55/59 -/-) into the supernatant measured by photometry) of non-coated murine erythrocytes by human serum over a range of serum concentrations in human sera from heat-inactivated (HI) NHS, MBL-/-, NHS pretreated with MASP-2 antibody, and NHS control. As shown in **FIGURE 22** and summarized in **TABLE 13**, it is demonstrated that inhibiting MASP-2 was protective to a limited extent.

TABLE 13: CH_{50} values expressed as serum concentrations

Serum	**WT**	**CD55/59 -/-**
3MC patient	No lysis	No lysis
Heat-inactivated NHS	No lysis	No lysis
MBL AO/XX donor (MBL deficient)	7.2%	2.1%
NHS + MASP-2 antibody	5.4%	1.5%
NHS	3.1%	0.73%

Note: "CH_{50}" is the point at which complement-mediated hemolysis reachs 50%.

In summary, the results in this Example demonstrate that inhibiting MASP-3 prevents any complement lysis of sensitized and non-sensitized erythrocytes with deficient protection from autologous complement activation. MASP-2 inhibition also is protective to some extent. Therefore, MASP-2 and MASP-3 inhibitors alone or in combination (*i.e.*, co-administered, administered sequentially) or MASP-2/MASP-3 bispecific or dual inhibitors may be used to treat subjects suffering from PNH, and may also be used to ameliorate (*i.e.*,

inhibit, prevent or reduce the severity of) extravascular hemolysis in PNH patients undergoing treatment with a C5 inhibitor such as eculizumab (Soliris®).

EXAMPLE 6

This Example describes a hemolysis assay testing mannan-coated rabbit erythrocytes for lysis in the presence of WT or MASP-1/3-/- mouse sera.

Methods:

1.Hemolysis assay of rabbit RBC (mannan coated) in mouse MASP-1/3-deficient sera and WT control sera

Day 1. Preparation of rabbit RBC.

Materials included: fresh rabbit blood, BBS/ Mg^{++}/Ca^{++} (4.4 mM barbituric acid, 1.8 mM sodium barbitone, 145 mM NaCl, pH 7.4, 5 mM Mg^{++}, 5 mM Ca^{++}), BBS/ Mg^{++}/Ca^{++} with 0.1% gelatin, chromium chloride contained in buffer; i.e., $CrCl_3.6\ H_2O$ (0.5 mg /mL in BBS/ Mg^{++}/Ca^{++}) and mannan, 100 µg/mL in BBS/ Mg^{++}/Ca^{++}.

1. Rabbit whole blood (2 mL) was split into two 1.5 mL eppendorf tubes and centrifuged for 3 minutes at 8000 rpm (approximately 5.9 rcf) in a refrigerated eppendorf centrifuge at 4°C. The RBC pellet was washed three times after re-suspending in ice-cold BBS/Mg^{++}/Ca^{++}. After the third wash, the pellet was re-suspended in 4 mL BBS/Mg^{++}/Ca^{++}. Two mL of this aliquot were added to a 15-mL falcon tube to be used as the uncoated control. The remaining 2 mL of the RBCs aliquot were diluted in 2 mL of $CrCl_3$ buffer, 2 mL of the mannan solution were added and the suspension was incubated at room temperature for 5 minutes with gentle mixing. The reaction was terminated by adding 7.5 mL of BBS/0.1% gelatin/Mg^{++}/Ca^{++} to the mixture. The erythrocytes were pelleted and the RBCs were washed twice with BBS/0.1% gelatin/Mg^{++}/Ca^{++} as described above. The RBCs suspension was stored in BBS/0.1% gelatin/ Mg^{++}/Ca^{++} at 4°C.

2. 100 µL of suspended RBCs were diluted with 1.4 mL water and spun down at 8000 rpm (approximately 5.9 rcf) for 3 minutes and the OD of the supernatant was adjusted to 0.7 at 541nm (an OD of 0.7 at 541nm corresponds to approximately 10^9 erythrocytes/mL).

3. The re-suspended RBCs were diluted with BBS/0.1% gelatin/Mg^{++}/Ca^{++} to a concentration of 10^8 /mL.

4. Dilutions of the test sera were prepared in ice-cold BBS/gelatin/ Mg^{++}/Ca^{++} and 100 µL of each serum dilution were pipetted into the corresponding well of round-bottom plate. 100 µL of appropriately diluted RBC (108/mL) were added to each well. As a control for complete lysis, purified water (100 µL) was mixed with the diluted RBC (100 µL) to

cause 100% lysis, while BBS/0.1% gelatin/ Mg^{++}/Ca^{++} without serum (100 µL) was used as a negative control. The plate was then incubated for 1 hour at 37°C.

5. The round-bottom plate was centrifuged at 3250 rpm for 5 minutes. The supernatant from each well (100 µL) was transferred into the corresponding wells of a flat-bottom plate and OD was read in an ELISA reader at 415-490nm. Results are reported as the ratio of the OD at 415 nm to that at 49 0nm.

Results:

FIGURE 23 graphically illustrates hemolysis (as measured by hemoglobin release of lysed rabbit erythrocytes into the supernatant measured by photometry) of mannan-coated rabbit erythrocytes by mouse serum over a range of serum concentrations in serum from MASP-1/3-/- and WT control. As shown in **FIGURE 23**, it is demonstrated that inhibiting MASP-3 prevents complement-mediated lysis of mannan-coated WT rabbit erythrocytes. These results further support the use of MASP-3 inhibitors for the treatment of one or more aspects of PNH as described in Example 5.

EXAMPLE 7

This Example describes the generation of MASP-1 and MASP-3 monoclonal antibodies using an *in vitro* system comprising a modified DT40 cell line, DTLacO.

Background/Rationale:

Antibodies against human MASP-1 and MASP-3 were generated using an *in vitro* system comprising a modified DT40 cell line, DTLacO, that permits reversible induction of diversification of a particular polypeptide, as further described in WO2009029315 and US2010093033. DT40 is a chicken B cell line that is known to constitutively mutate its heavy and light chain immunoglobulin (Ig) genes in culture. Like other B cells, this constitutive mutagenesis targets mutations to the V region of Ig genes, and thus, the CDRs of the expressed antibody molecules. Constitutive mutagenesis in DT40 cells takes place by gene conversion using as donor sequences an array of non-functional V gene segments (pseudo-V genes; ψV) situated upstream of each functional V region. Deletion of the ψV region was previously shown to cause a switch in the mechanism of diversification from gene conversion to somatic hypermutation, the mechanism commonly observed in human B cells. The DT40 chicken B cell lymphoma line has been shown to be a promising starting point for antibody evolution *ex vivo* (Cumbers, S.J. *et al. Nat Biotechnol* 20, 1129-1134 (2002); Seo, H. *et al. Nat Biotechnol* 23, 731-735 (2005)). DT40 cells proliferate robustly in culture, with an 8-10 hour doubling time (compared to 20-24 hr for human B cell lines), and they support

very efficient homologous gene targeting (Buerstedde, J.M. *et al. Embo J* 9, 921-927 (1990)). DT40 cells command enormous potential V region sequence diversity given that they can access two distinct physiological pathways for diversification, gene conversion and somatic hypermutation, which create templated and nontemplated mutations, respectively (Maizels, N. *Annu Rev Genet* 39, 23-46 (2005)). Diversified heavy and light chain immunoglobulins (Igs) are expressed in the form of a cell-surface displayed IgM. Surface IgM has a bivalent form, structurally similar to an IgG molecule. Cells that display IgM with specificity for a particular antigen can be isolated by binding either immobilized soluble or membrane displayed versions of the antigen. However, utility of DT40 cells for antibody evolution has been limited in practice because — as in other transformed B cell lines — diversification occurs at less than 1% the physiological rate.

In the system used in this example, as described in WO2009029315 and US2010093033, the DT40 cells were engineered to accelerate the rate of Ig gene diversification without sacrificing the capacity for further genetic modification or the potential for both gene conversion and somatic hypermutation to contribute to mutagenesis. Two key modifications to DT40 were made to increase the rate of diversification and, consequently, the complexity of binding specificities in our library of cells. First, Ig gene diversification was put under the control of the potent *E. coli* lactose operator/repressor regulatory network. Multimers consisting of approximately 100 polymerized repeats of the potent *E. coli* lactose operator (PolyLacO) were inserted upstream of the rearranged and expressed Igλ and IgH genes by homologous gene targeting. Regulatory factors fused to lactose repressor protein (LacI) can then be tethered to the LacO regulatory elements to regulate diversification, taking advantage of the high affinity ($k_D=10^{-14}$ M) of lactose repressor for operator DNA. DT40 PolyLacO-λ_R cells, in which PolyLacO was integrated only at Igλ, exhibited a 5-fold increase in Ig gene diversification rate relative to the parental DT40 cells prior to any engineering (Cummings, W.J. *et al. PLoS Biol* 5, e246 (2007)). Diversification was further elevated in cells engineered to carry PolyLacO targeted to both the Igλ and the IgH genes ("DTLacO"). DTLacO cells were demonstrated to have diversification rates 2.5- to 9.2-fold elevated relative to the 2.8% characteristic of the parental DT40 PolyLacO-λ_R LacI-HP1 line. Thus, targeting PolyLacO elements to both the heavy and light chain genes accelerated diversification 21.7-fold relative to the DT40 parental cell line. Tethering regulatory factors to the Ig loci not only alters the frequency of mutagenesis, but also can change the pathway of mutagenesis creating a larger collection of unique

sequence changes (Cummings et al. 2007; Cummings et al. 2008). Second, a diverse collection of sequence starting points for the tethered factor-accelerated Ig gene diversification was generated. These diverse sequence starting points were added to DTLacO by targeting rearranged Ig heavy-chain variable regions, isolated from a two month old chick, to the heavy chain locus. The addition of these heavy chain variable regions created a repertoire of 10^7 new starting points for antibody diversification. Building these new starting points into the DTLacO cell line permits the identification of clones that bind a particular target, and then rapid affinity maturation by the tethered factors. Following affinity maturation, a full-length, recombinant chimeric IgG is made by cloning the matured, rearranged heavy- and light-chain variable sequences (VH and Vλ; consisting of chicken framework regions and the complementarity determining regions or CDRs) into expression vectors containing human IgG1 and lambda constant regions. These recombinant mAbs are suitable for *in vitro* and *in vivo* applications, and they serve as the starting point for humanization.

Methods:

Selection for MASP-1 and MASP-3 antigen binding.

Initial selections were performed by binding DTLacO populations diversified by gene targeting to beads complexed with human MASP-1 (SEQ ID NO:8) and MASP-3 antigen (SEQ ID NO:2); and subsequent selections by FACS, using fluorescence-labeled soluble antigen (Cumbers, S.J. *et al. Nat Biotechnol* **20**, 1129-1134 (2002); Seo, H. *et al. Nat Biotechnol* **23**, 731-735 (2005). Because of the conserved amino acid sequence in the alpha chain that is shared between MASP-1 and MASP-3 (shown in **FIGURE 2**), and the distinct beta chain sequences (shown in **FIGURE 2**), separate, parallel screens for binders to MASP-1 and MASP-3 were carried out to identify MASP-1 specific mAbs, MASP-3 specific mAbs and also mAbs capable of binding to both MASP-1 and MASP-3 (dual-specific). Two forms of antigen were used to select and screen for binders. First, recombinant MASP-1 or MASP-3, either full-length or a fragment, fused to an Fc domain were bound to Dynal magnetic Protein G beads or used in FACS-based selections using a PECy5-labeled anti-human IgG(Fc) secondary antibody. Alternatively, recombinant versions of MASP-1 or MASP-3 proteins were directly labeled with Dylight flours and used for selections and screening.

Binding and affinity.

Recombinant antibodies were generated by cloning PCR-amplified V regions into a vector that supported expression of human IgG1 in 293F cells (Yabuki et al., *PLoS ONE*, 7(4):e36032 (2012)). Saturation binding kinetics were determined by staining DTLacO cells

expressing antibody binding MASP-1 or MASP-3 with various concentrations of fluorescent-labeled soluble antigen. Functional assays for MASP-3 specific activity including MASP-3-dependent C3b deposition and MASP-3-dependent factor D cleavage were carried out as described in Examples 8 and 9, respectively. A functional assay for MASP-1-specific activity, namely the inhibition of MASP-1-dependent C3b deposition was carried out as described below.

Results:

Numerous MASP-1 and MASP-3 binding antibodies were generated using the methods described above. Binding, as demonstrated by FACS analysis, is described for the representative clones M3J5 and M3M1, which were isolated in screens for MASP-3 binders.

FIGURE 24A is a FACS histogram of MASP-3 antigen/antibody binding for DTLacO clone M3J5. **FIGURE 24B** is a FACS histogram of MASP-3 antigen/antibody binding for DTLacO clone M3M1. In **FIGURES 24A** and **24B** the gray filled curves are IgG1-stained negative control, and thick black curves are MASP-3-staining.

FIGURE 25 graphically illustrates a saturation binding curve of clone M3J5 (Clone 5) for the MASP-3 antigen. As shown in **FIGURE 25**, the apparent binding affinity of the M3J5 antibody for MASP-3 is about 31 nM.

Sequence analysis of identified clones was performed using standard methods. All clones were compared to the common (DT40) VH and VL sequences and to each other. Sequences for the two afore-mentioned clones, M3J5 and M3M1 are provided in an alignment with two additional representative clones, D14 and 1E10, which were identified in screens for CCP1-CCP2-SP fragments of MASP-1 and MASP-3, respectively. D14 and 1E10 bind regions common to both MASP-1 and MASP-3.

FIGURE 26A is an amino acid sequence alignment of the VH regions of M3J5, M3M1, D14 and 1E10 to the chicken DT40 VH sequence.

FIGURE 26B is an amino acid sequence alignment of the VL regions of M3J5, M3M1, D14 and 1E10 to the chicken DT40 VL sequence.

The VH and VL amino acid sequence of each clone is provided below.

Heavy Chain Variable Region (VH) sequences

FIGURE 26A shows an amino acid alignment of the heavy-Chain Variable Region (VH) sequences for the parent DTLacO (SEQ ID NO:300), the MASP-3-binding clones M3J5 (SEQ ID NO:301), and M3M1 (SEQ ID NO:302), and the MASP-1/MASP-3 dual binding clones D14 (SEQ ID NO:306), and 1E10 (SEQ ID NO:308).

The Kabat CDRs in the VH sequences below are located at the following amino acid positions: H1:aa 31-35; H2:aa 50-62; and H3:aa 95-102.

The Chothia CDRs in the VH sequences below are located at the following amino acid positions: H1: aa 26-32; H2: aa 52-56; and H3: aa 95-101.

Parent DTLacO VH: (SEQ ID NO:300)

AVTLDESGGGLQTPGGALSLVCKASGFTFSSNAMGWVRQAPGKGLEWVAGIDDDG
SGTRYAPAVKGRATISRDNGQSTLRLQLNNLRAEDTGTYYCTKCAYSSGCDYEGGYI
DAWGHGTEVIVSS

Clone M3J5 VH: (SEQ ID NO:301)

AVTLDESGGGLQTPGG**G**LSLVCKASGFTFSSYAMGWMRQAPGKGLEYVAGIRSDGS
FTLYATAVKGRATISRDNGQSTVRLQLNNLRAEDTATYFCTRSGNVGDIDAWGHGT
EVIVSS

Clone M3M1 VH: (SEQ ID NO:302)

AVTLDESGGGLQTPGGGLSLVCKASGFDFSSYQMNWIRQAPGKGLEFVAAINRFGN
STGHGAAVKGRVTISRDDGQSTVRLQLSNLRAEDTATYYCAKGVYGYCGSYSCCG
VDTIDAWGHGTEVIVSS

Clone D14 VH: (SEQ ID NO:306)

AVTLDESGGGLQTPGGALSLVCKASGFTFSSYAMHWVRQAPGKGLEWVAGIYKSG
AGTNYAPAVKGRATISRDNGQSTVRLQLNNLRAEDTGTYYCAKTTGSGCSSGYRAE
YIDAWGHGTEVIVSS

Clone 1E10 VH: (SEQ ID NO:308)

AVTLDESGGGLQTPGGALSLVCKASGFTFSSYDMVWVRQAPGKGLEFVAGISRNDG
RYTEYGSAVKGRATISRDNGQSTVRLQLNNLRAEDTATYYCARDAGGSAYWFDAG
QIDAWGHGTEVIVSS

Light Chain Variable Region (VL) sequences

FIGURE 26B shows an amino acid alignment of the light-Chain Variable Region (VL) sequences for the parent DTLacO (SEQ ID NO:303) and the MASP-3-binding clones

M3J5 (SEQ ID NO:304), and M3M1 (SEQ ID NO:305), and the MASP-1/MASP-3 dual binding clones D14 (SEQ ID NO:307) and 1E10 (SEQ ID NO:309).

Parent DTLacO VL: (SEQ ID NO:303)
ALTQPASVSANLGGTVKITCSGGGSYAGSYYYGWYQQKSPGSAPVTVIYDNDKRPS
DIPSRFSGSLSGSTNTLTITGVRADDEAVYFCGSADNSGAAFGAGTTLTVL

Clone M3J5 VL: (SEQ ID NO:304)
ALTQPASVSANPGETVKITCSGGYSGYAGSYYYGWYQQKAPGSAPVTLIYYNNKRP
SDIPSRFSGSLSGSTNTLTITGVRADDEAVYFCGSADNSGAAFGAGTTLTVL

Clone M3M1 VL: (SEQ ID NO:305)
ALTQPASVSANPGETVKITCSGGGSYAGSYYYGWYQQKAPGSAPVTLIYYNNKRPS
DIPSRFSGSLSGSTNTLTITGVRADDEAVYFCGSADNSGAAFGAGTTLTVL

Clone D14 VL: (SEQ ID NO:307)
ALTQPASVSANPGETVKITCSGGGSYAGSYYYGWYQQKAPGSAPVTLIYYNNKRPS
DIPSRFSGSLSGSTNTLTITGVRADDEAVYFCGSADNSGAAFGAGTTLTVL

Clone 1E10 VL: (SEQ ID NO:309)
ALTQPASVSANPGETVKITCSGGGSYAGSYYYGWYQQKAPGSAPVTLIYYNNKRPS
DIPSRFSGSLSGSTNTLTITGVRADDEAVYFCGSADNSGAAFGAGTTLTVL

LEA-2 (MASP-2-dependent) Functional Assay

MASP-1 contributes to LEA-2 via its ability to activate MASP-2 (see **FIGURE 1**). The Wieslab® Complement System Screen MBL assay (Euro Diagnostica, Malmö, Sweden) measures C5b-C9 deposition under conditions that isolate LEA-2-dependent activation (i.e., traditional lectin pathway activity). The assay was carried out according to the manufacturer's instructions with representative clone 1E10 tested as a final concentration of 400 nM.

FIGURE 27 is a bar graph showing the inhibitory activity of the mAb 1E10 in comparison to the positive serum provided with the assay kit, as well as an isotype control antibody. As shown in **FIGURE 27**, mAb 1E10 demonstrates partial inhibition of LEA-2-dependent activation (via inhibition of MASP-1-dependent activation of MASP-2), whereas

the isotype control antibody does not. Stronger inhibition should be achieved by continued affinity maturation of this antibody for MASP-1 binding using the tethered factors in the DTLacO system.

LEA-1 (MASP-3-dependent) Function Assays for representative mAbs are described below in Examples 8 and 9.

Summary of Results:

The above results showed that the DTLacO platform permitted rapid *ex vivo* discovery of MASP-1 and MASP-3 monoclonal antibodies with inhibitory properties on LEA-1 (as shown below in Examples 8 and 9) and on LEA-2 (as shown in this Example).

EXAMPLE 8

Analysis of the complement pathway in 3MC serum with *S. aureus*

Background/Rationale:

It was determined that MASP-3 is not activated through exposure to non-immobilized fluid-phase mannan, zymosan A or N-acetyl cysteine either in the presence or absence of normal human serum. However, it was determined that recombinant and native MASP-3 are activated on the surface of heat-inactivated *S. aureus* in the presence and absence of normal human serum (NHS) or heat-inactivated human serum (HIS) (data not shown). It was also determined that C3b deposition occurs on the surface of *S. aureus* in the presence of normal human serum, and that the deposition can be monitored using a flow cytometer. Therefore, the alternative pathway (AP) response to *S. aureus* was measured as described in this Example as a means of assessing the contribution of MASP-3 to LEA-1.

Methods:

Recombinant MASP-3: polynucleotide sequences encoding full length recombinant human MASP-3, a truncated serine protease (SP) active version of MASP-3 (CCP1-CCP2-SP), and a SP-inactivated form of MASP-3 (S679A) were cloned into the pTriEx7 mammalian expression vector (Invivogen). The resulting expression constructs encode the full length MASP-3 or the CCP1-CCP2-SP fragment with an amino-terminal Streptag and a carboxy-terminal His_6 tag. The expression constructs were transfected into Freestyle 293-F or Expi293F cells (Invitrogen) according to the protocols provided by the manufacturer. After three to four days of culture in 5% CO_2 at 37°C, recombinant proteins were purified utilizing Streptactin affinity chromatography.

Recombinant MASP-1: the full length or truncated CCP1-CCP2-SP forms of recombinant MASP-1 with or without the stabilizing R504Q (Dobo et al., *J. Immunol*

183:1207, 2009) or SP inactivating (S646A) mutations and bearing an amino-terminal Steptag and a carboxy-terminal His6 tag were generated as described for recombinant MASP-3 above.

1. C3b deposition and factor B cleavage on S. aureus in 3MC (human) serum

An initial experiment was carried out to demonstrate that the flow cytometry assay is able to detect the presence or absence of AP-driven C3b deposition (AP-C3b) as follows. Five percent of the following sera: normal human serum, factor B (Factor B)- depleted human serum, factor D-depleted human serum and properdin-depleted human serum (obtained from Complement Technology, Tyler, Texas, USA) were mixed with test antibody in either Mg^{++}/EGTA buffer or EDTA at 4°C overnight. Heat-killed *S. aureus* (10^8/reaction) was added to each mixture to a total volume of 100 µL and rotated at 37°C for 40 minutes. Bacteria were washed in washing buffer, the bacterial pellet was re-suspended in washing buffer and a 80 µL aliquot of each sample was analyzed for C3b deposition on the bacterial surface, which was detected with anti-human C3c (Dako, UK) using flow cytometry.

The results of the flow cytometry detection of C3b are shown in **FIGURE 28A**. As shown in **FIGURE 28A**, panel 1, normal human serum in the presence of EDTA, which is known to inactivate the AP, no C3b deposition was observed (negative control). In normal human serum treated with Mg^{++}/EGTA, only lectin-independent complement pathways can function. In panel 2, Mg^{++}/EGTA buffer is used, therefore the AP is active, and AP-driven C3b deposition is observed (positive control). As shown in panel 3, 4 and 5, in factor B-depleted, factor D-depleted and properdin-depleted serum, respectively, no alternative pathway driven C3b deposition is observed, as expected. These results demonstrate that the assay is capable of detecting AP-dependent C3b deposition.

A C3b deposition on *S. aureus* assay was carried out as described above to assess the ability of recombinant MASP-3 to reconstitute the AP (LEA-1) in human 3MC serum, which is deficient in MASP-3 (Rooryck C, et al., *Nat Genet.* 43(3):197-203 (2011)). The following combinations of reagents were tested.

1. 5% normal human serum +EDTA
2. 5% normal human serum +Mg/EGTA
3. 5% human 3MC (MASP-$3^{-/-}$) serum + Mg^{++}/EGTA
4. 5% human 3MC (MASP-$3^{-/-}$) serum + Mg^{++}/EGTA plus active full-length rMASP-3
5. 5% human 3MC (MASP-$3^{-/-}$) serum + Mg^{++}/EGTA plus truncated active rMASP-3 (CCP1/CCP2/SP)

6. 5% human 3MC (MASP-3$^{-/-}$) serum + Mg^{++}/EGTA plus inactive rMASP-3 (S679A)
7. 5% human 3MC (MASP-3$^{-/-}$) serum + Mg^{++}/EGTA plus active full length rMASP-1

The various mixtures of 5% serum and recombinant proteins (5 μg of each) as shown above were incubated in the specified buffer conditions (either Mg^{++}/EGTA buffer or EDTA) at 4°C overnight. After the incubation overnight, 10^8 heat-killed *S. aureus* were added to each mixture in a total volume of 100 μL and rotated at 37°C for 40 minutes. Bacteria were washed and re-suspended in washing buffer and an 80 μl aliquot of each sample was analyzed for C3b deposition by FACS. The remaining 20 μL aliquot of each sample was used to measure factor B cleavage by Western blot using anti-factor B antibody as described below.

The results of the flow cytometery detection of C3b are shown in **FIGURE 28B**. Panel numbers correspond to the numbers designated for each of the reagent combination outlined above. The negative control (panel 1) and positive control (panel 2) show the absence and presence of C3b deposition, as expected. Panel 3 shows that AP-driven C3b deposition is absent in 3MC serum. Panels 4 and 5 show that active full length rMASP-3 (panel 4) and active rMASP-3 (CCP1-CCP2-SP) (panel 5) both restore AP-driven C3b deposition in 3MC serum. Panel 6 shows that inactive rMASP-3 (S679A) does not restore AP-driven C3b deposition in 3MC serum. Panel 7 shows that rMASP-1 does not restore AP-driven C3b deposition in 3MC serum.

Taken together, these results demonstrate that MASP-3 is required for AP-driven C3b deposition on *S. aureus* in human serum.

MASP-3-dependent Activation of Factor B

In order to analyze MASP-3-dependent activation of Factor B, the various mixtures of 5% serum (either normal human serum or 3MC patient serum) and recombinant proteins as shown above were assayed as described above. From each reaction mixture, 20 μL were removed and added to protein sample loading buffer. The samples were heated at 70°C for 10 minutes and loaded onto an SDS-PAGE gel. Western blot analysis was performed using a Factor B polyclonal antibody (R&D Systems). Activation of Factor B was apparent by the formation of two lower molecular weight cleavage products (Bb and Ba) derived from the higher molecular weight pro-Factor B protein.

FIGURE 29 shows the results of a Western blot analysis to determine factor B cleavage in response to *S. aureus* in 3MC serum in the presence or absence of rMASP-3. As shown in lane 1, the normal human serum in the presence of EDTA (negative control) demonstrates very little Factor B cleavage relative to normal human serum in the presence of Mg^{++}/EGTA, shown in lane 2 (positive control). As shown in lane 3, 3MC serum demonstrates very little Factor B cleavage in the presence of Mg^{++}/EGTA. However, as shown in lane 4, Factor B cleavage is restored by the addition and pre-incubation of full-length, recombinant MASP-3 protein (5 μg) to the 3MC serum.

Assay to determine the effect of rMASP-3 on pro-factor D in factor B/C3(H2O) Cleavage

The following assay was carried out to determine the minimal requirement for MASP-3-dependent activation/cleavage of factor B.

$C3(H_2O)$ (200ng), purified plasm factor B (20 μg), recombinant pro-factor D (200 ng) and recombinant human MASP-3 (200 ng) were mixed together in various combinations (as shown in **FIGURE 30**), in a total volume of 100 μL in BBS/Ca^{++}/ Mg^{++} and incubated at 30°C for 30 minutes. The reaction was stopped by adding 25 uL of SDS loading dye containing 5% 2-mercaptoethanol. After boiling at 95°C for 10 minutes under shaking (300 rpm), the mixture was spun down at 1400 rpm for 5 minutes and 20 uL of the supernatant was loaded and separated on a 10% SDS gel. The gel was stained with Coomassie brilliant blue.

Results:

FIGURE 30 shows a Comassie-stained SDS-PAGE gel in which factor B cleavage is analyzed. As shown in lane 1, factor B cleavage is most optimal in the presence of C3, MASP-3 and pro-factor D. As shown in lane 2, C3 is absolutely required; however, as shown in lanes 4 and 5, either MASP-3 or pro-factor D are able to mediate factor B cleavage, as long as C3 is present.

Analysis of the ability of MASP-3 mAbs to inhibit MASP-3-dependent AP-driven C3b deposition

As described in this Example it was demonstrated that MASP-3 is required for AP-driven C3b deposition on *S. aureus* in human serum. Therefore, the following assay was carried out to determine if a representative MASP-3 mAb identified as described in Example 7, could inhibit activity of MASP-3. Active, recombinant MASP-3 (CCP1-CCP2-SP) fragment protein (250 ng) was pre-incubated with an isotype control mAb, mAb1A5 (control obtained from the DTLacO platform that does not bind MASP-3 or MASP-1), or mAbD14 (binds

MASP-3) at three different concentrations (0.5, 2 and 4 μM) for 1 hour on ice. The enzyme-mAb mixture was exposed to 5% 3MC serum (MASP-3 deficient) and $5x10^7$ heat-killed *S. aureus* in a final reaction volume of 50 μL. The reactions were incubated at 37°C for 30 minutes, and then stained for the detection of C3b deposition. The stained bacterial cells were analyzed by a flow cytometer.

FIGURE 31 graphically illustrates the mean fluorescent intensities (MFI) of C3b staining obtained from the three antibodies plotted as a function of mAb concentration in 3MC serum with the presence of rMASP-3. As shown in **FIGURE 31**, mAbD14 demonstrates inhibition of C3b deposition in a concentration-dependent manner. In contrast, neither of the control mAbs inhibited C3b deposition. These results demonstrate that mAbD14 is able to inhibit MASP-3-dependent C3b deposition. Improved inhibitory activity for mAbD14 is expected following continued affinity maturation of this antibody for MASP-3 binding using the tethered factors in the DTLacO system.

Summary of Results:

In summary, the results in this Example demonstrate a clear defect of the AP in serum deficient for MASP-3. Thus, MASP-3 has been demonstrated to make a critical contribution to the AP, using factor B activation and C3b deposition as functional end-points. Furthermore, addition of functional, recombinant MASP-3, including the catalytically-active C-terminal portion of MASP-3 corrects the defect in factor B activation and C3b deposition in the serum from the 3MC patient. Conversely, as further demonstrated in this Example, addition of a MASP-3 antibody (e.g., mAbD14) in 3MC serum with rMASP-3 inhibits AP-driven C3b deposition. A direct role of MASP-3 in Factor B activation, and therefore the AP, is demonstrated by the observation that recombinant MASP-3, along with C3, is sufficient to activate recombinant factor B.

EXAMPLE 9

This Example demonstrates that MASP-1 and MASP-3 activate factor D.

Methods:

Recombinant MASP-1 and MASP-3 were tested for their ability to cleave two different recombinant versions of pro-factor D. The first version (pro-factor D-His) lacks an N-terminal tag, but has a C-terminal His tag. Thus, this version of pro-factor D contains the 5 amino acid pro-peptide that is removed by cleavage during activation. The second version (ST-pro-factor D-His) has a Strep-TagII sequence on the N-terminus, thus increasing the

cleaved N-terminal fragment to 15 amino acids. ST-pro-factor D also contains a His_6 tag at the C-terminus. The increased length of the propeptide of ST-pro-factor D-His improves the resolution between the cleaved and uncleaved forms by SDS-PAGE compared to the resolution possible with the pro-factor D-HIS form.

Recombinant MASP-1 or MASP-3 proteins (2 μg) was added to either pro-factor D-His or ST-pro-factor D-His substrates (100 ng) and incubated for 1 hour at 37°C. The reactions were electrophoresed on a 12% Bis-Tris gel to resolve pro-factor D and the active factor D cleavage product. The resolved proteins were transferred to a PVDF membrane and analyzed by Western blot by detection with a biotinylated factor D antibody (R&D Systems).

Results:

FIGURE 32 shows the Western blot analysis of pro-factor D substrate cleavage.

TABLE 14: Lane Description for Western Blot shown in FIGURE 32

Experimental conditions	Lane 1	Lane 2	Lane 3	Lane 4	Lane 5
Pro-Factor D	+	+	+	+	+
rMASP-3 (full-length)	-	+	–	–	–
rMASP-3a (S679A)	-	-	+	-	-
rMASP-1A (S646A)	-	-	-	+	-
rMASP-1 (CCP-1-CCP2-SP)	-	-	-	-	+

As shown in **FIGURE 32**, only full length MASP-3 (lane 2) and the MASP-1 CCP1-CCP2-SP) fragment (lane 5) cleaved ST-pro-factor D-His_6. The catalytically-inactive full length MASP-3 (S679A; lane 3) and MASP-1 (S646A; lane 3) failed to cleave either substrate. Identical results were obtained with the pro-factor D-His_6 polypeptide (not shown). The comparison of a molar excess of MASP-1 (CCP1-CCP2-SP) relative to MASP-3 suggests that MASP-3 is a more effective catalyst of pro-factor D cleavage than is MASP-1, as least under the condtions described herein.

Conclusions: Both MASP-1 and MASP-3 are capable of cleaving and activating factor D. This activity directly connects LEA-1 with the activation of the AP. More specifically,

activation of factor D by MASP-1 or MASP-3 will lead to factor B activation, C3b deposition, and likely opsonization and/or lysis.

Assay for Inhibition of MASP-3-dependent Cleavage of pro-factor D with MASP-3 antibodies

An assay was carried out to determine the inhibitory effect of representative MASP-3 and MASP-1 mAbs, identified as described in Example 7, on MASP-3-dependent factor D cleavage as follows. Active, recombinant MASP-3 protein (80 ng) was pre-incubated with 1 μg of representative mAbs D14, M3M1 and a control antibody (which binds specifically to MASP-1, but not to MASP-3) at room temperature for 15 minutes. Pro-factor D with an N-terminal Strep-tag (ST-pro-factor D-His, 70 ng) was added and the mixture was incubated at 37°C for 75 minutes. The reactions were then electrophoresed, blotted and stained with anti-factor D as described above.

FIGURE 33 is a Western blot showing the partial inhibitory activity of the mAbs D14 and M3M1 in comparison to a control reaction containing only MASP-3 and ST-pro-factor D-His (no mAb; lane 1), as well as a control reaction containing a mAb obtained from the DTLacO library that binds MASP-1, but not MASP-3 (lane 4). As shown in **FIGURE 33**, in the absence of an inhibitory antibody, MASP-3 cleaves approximately 50% of pro-factor D into factor D (lane 1). The control MASP-1 specific antibody (lane 4) does not change the ratio of pro-factor D to factor D. In contrast, as shown in lanes 2 and 3, both mAb D14 and mAb M3M1 inhibit MASP-3-dependent cleavage of pro-factor D to factor D, resulting in a reduction in factor D generated.

Conclusions: These results demonstrate that MASP-3 mAbs D14 and M3M1 are able to inhibit MASP-3-dependent factor D cleavage. Improved inhibitory activity for mAbD14 and mAb M3M1 is expected following continued affinity maturation of these antibodies for MASP-3 binding using the tethered factors in the DTLacO system.

EXAMPLE 10

This Example demonstrates that MASP-3 deficiency prevents complement-mediated lysis of mannan-coated WT rabbit erythrocytes.

Background/Rationale:

As described in Examples 5 and 6 herein, the effect of MASP-2- and MASP-3-deficient serum on lysis of red blood cells from blood samples obtained from a mouse model of PNH demonstrated the efficacy of MASP-2 inhibition and/or MASP-3 inhibition to treat subjects suffering from PNH, and also supported the use of inhibitors of MASP-2 and/or

inhibitors of MASP-3 (including dual or bi-specific MASP-2/MASP-3 inhibitors) to ameliorate the effects of C3 fragment-mediated extravascular hemolysis in PNH subjects undergoing therapy with a C5 inhibitor such as eculizumab.

As described in this Example, C3b deposition experiments and hemolysis experiments were carried out in MASP-3 deficient serum from additional 3MC patients, confirming the results obtained in Examples 5 and 6. In addition, experiments were carried out which demonstrated that addition of rMASP-3 to 3MC serum was able to reconstitute C3b deposition and hemolytic activity.

Methods:

MASP-3-deficient serum was obtained from three different 3MC patients as follows:

3MC Patient 1: contains an allele bearing a mutation that renders the exon encoding the MASP-3 serine protease domain dysfunctional, supplied along with the mother and father of the 3MC patient (both heterozygous for the allele bearing a mutation that renders the exon encoding the MASP-3 serine protease domain dysfunctional),

3MC Patient 2: Has C1489T (H497Y) mutation in exon 12 of MASP-1, the exon that encodes the serine protease domain of MASP-3, resulting in nonfunctional MASP-3, but functional MASP-1 proteins.

3MC Patient 3: Has a confirmed defect in the MASP-1 gene, resulting in nonfunctional MASP-3 and nonfunctional MASP-1 proteins.

Experiment #1: C3b Deposition Assay

An AP assay was carried out under traditional AP-specific conditions (BBS/ Mg^{++}/EGTA, without Ca^{++}, wherein BBS= barbital buffered saline containing sucrose), as described in Bitter-Suermann et al., *Eur. J. Immunol* 11:291-295 (1981)), on zymosan-coated microtiter plates at serum concentrations ranging from 0.5 to 25% and C3b deposition was measured over time.

Results:

FIGURE 34 graphically illustrates the level of AP-driven C3b deposition on zymosan-coated microtiter plates as a function of serum concentration in serum samples obtained from MASP-3-deficient (3MC), C4-deficient and MBL-deficient subjects. As shown in **FIGURE 34**, and summarized below in **TABLE 15**, MASP-3-deficient patient sera from Patient 2 and Patient 3 have residual AP activity at high concentrations (25%, 12.5%, 6.25% serum concentrations), but a significantly higher AP_{50} (i.e., 8.2% and 12.3% of serum needed to achieve 50% of maximum C3 deposition).

FIGURE 35A graphically illustrates the level of AP-driven C3b deposition on zymosan-coated microtiter plates under "traditional" AP-specific conditions (i.e., BBS/EGTA/Mg^{++} without Ca^{++}) as a function of time in 10% human serum samples obtained from MASP-3 deficient, C4-deficient and MBL-deficient human subjects.

TABLE 15 below summarizes the AP_{50} results shown in **FIGURE 34** and the half-times for C3b deposition shown in **FIGURE 35A**.

TABLE 15: Summary of Results shown in **FIGURES 34** and **35A**

Serum type	**AP_{50} (%)**	**$T_{1/2}$ (min)**
Normal	4.5	26.3
MBL-deficient (MBL-/-)	5.7	27.5
C4-deficient (C4-/-)	5.1	28.6
3MC (Patient 3)	8.2	58.2
3MC (Patient 2)	12.3	72.4

Note: In BBS/Mg^{++}/EGTA buffer, the lectin pathway-mediated effects are deficient due to absence of Ca^{++} in this buffer.

Experiment #2: Analysis of pro-factor D cleavage in 3MC patient sera by Western Blot

Methods: Serum was obtained from 3MC patient #2 (MASP-3 (-/-), MASP-1 (+/+)) and from 3MC patient #3 (MASP-3 (-/-), MASP-1 (-/-)). The patient sera, along with sera from normal donors (W), were separated by SDS-polyacrylamide gel and the resolved proteins were blotted to a polyvinylidine fluoride membrane. Human pro-factor D (25,040 Da) and/or mature factor D (24,405 Da) were detected with a human factor D-specific antibody.

Results: The results of the Western blot are shown in FIGURE 35B. As shown in FIGURE 35B, in the sera from normal donors (W), the factor D antibody detected a protein of a size consistent with mature factor D (24,405 Da). As further shown in FIGURE 35B, the factor D antibody detected a slightly larger protein in the sera from 3MC patient #2 (P2) and 3MC patient #3 (P3), consistent with the presence of pro-factor D (25,040 Da) in these 3MC patients.

Experiment #3: Wieslab Complement Assays with 3MC patient sera

Methods: Sera obtained from 3MC patient #2 (MASP-3 (-/-), MASP-1 (+/+)) and from 3MC patient #3 (MASP-3 (-/-), MASP-1 (-/-)) were also tested for classical, lectin and alternative pathway activity using the Wieslab Complement System Screen (Euro-Diagnostica, Malmö, Sweden) according to the manufacturer's instructions. Normal human serum was tested in parallel as a control.

Results: FIGURE 35C graphically illustrates the results of the Weislab classical, lectin and alternative pathway assays with plasma obtained from 3MC patient #2, 3MC patient #3, and normal human serum. As shown in FIGURE 35C, under conditions of the Wieslab assay, the classical, alternative, and MBL (lectin) pathways are all functional in the normal human serum. In serum from 3MC patient #2 (MASP-3 (-/-), MASP-1 (+/+)), the classical pathway and lectin pathway are functional, however there is no detectable alternative pathway activity. In serum from 3MC patient #3 (MASP-3 (-/-), MASP-1 (-/-)), the classical pathway is functional, however there is no detectable lectin pathway activity and no detectable alternative pathway activity.

The result in FIGURES 35B and 35C further support our understanding of the role of MASP-1 and MASP-3 in the LEA-1 and LEA-2 pathways. Specifically, the absence of the alternative pathway with a nearly fully functional lectin pathway in serum from Patient 2, who lacks only MASP-3, confirms that MASP-3 is essential for activation of the alternative pathway. Serum from Patient 3, who lacks both MASP-1 and MASP-3, has lost the ability to activate the lectin pathway as well as the alternative pathway. This result confirms the requirement of MASP-1 for a functional LEA-2 pathway, and is consistent with Example 7, and the literature demonstrating that MASP-1 activates MASP-2. The apparent inability of both sera to activate pro-factor D is also consistent with the data described in Example 9 demonstrating that MASP-3 cleaves pro-factor D. These observations are consistent with the LEA-1 and LEA-2 pathways as diagrammed in Figure 1.

Experiment #4: Hemolysis assay testing mannan-coated rabbit erythrocytes for lysis in the presence of human normal or 3MC serum (in the absence of Ca^{++})

Methods:

Preparation of rabbit RBC in the absence of Ca^{++} (i.e., by using EGTA)

Rabbit whole blood (2 mL) was split into two 1.5 mL eppendorf tubes and centrifuged for 3 minutes at 8000 rpm (approximately 5.9 rcf) in a refrigerated eppendorf centrifuge at 4°C. The RBC pellet was washed three times after re-suspending in ice-cold BBS/ Mg^{++}/Ca^{++} (4.4 mM barbituric acid, 1.8 mM sodium barbitone, 145 mM NaCl, pH 7.4, 5 mM Mg^{++}, 5 mM Ca^{++}). After the third wash, the pellet was re-suspended in 4 mL BBS/

Mg^{++}/Ca^{++}. The erythrocytes were pelleted and the RBCs were washed with BBS/0.1% gelatin/Mg^{++}/Ca^{++} as described above. The RBCs suspension was stored in BBS/0.1% gelatin/ Mg^{++}/Ca^{++} at 4°C. Then, 100 µL of suspended RBCs were diluted with 1.4 mL water and spun down at 8000 rpm (approximately 5.9 rcf) for 3 minutes and the OD of the supernatant was adjusted to 0.7 at 541nm (an OD of 0.7 at 541nm corresponds to approximately 10^9 erythrocytes/ml). After that, 1 mL of the resuspended RBCs at OD 0.7 were added to 9 ml of BBS/Mg^{++}/EGTA in order to achieve a concentration of 10^8 erythrocytes/ml. Dilutions of the test sera or plasma were prepared in ice-cold BBS, Mg^{++}, EGTA and 100 µL of each serum or plasma dilution was pipetted into the corresponding well of round-bottom plate. 100 µL of appropriately diluted RBC (10^8 erythrocytes/ml) were added to each well. Nano-water was used to produce the positive control (100% lysis), while a dilution with BBS/Mg^{++}/EGTA without serum or plasma was used as a negative control. The plate was then incubated for 1 hour at 37°C. The round bottom plate was spun down at 3750 rpm for 5 minutes. Then, 100 µL of the supernatant from each well was transferred into the corresponding wells of a flat-bottom plate and OD was read at 415-490 nm.

Results:

FIGURE 36 graphically illustrates the percent hemolysis (as measured by hemoglobin release of lysed rabbit erythrocytes into the supernatant measured by photometry) of mannan-coated rabbit erythrocytes over a range of serum concentrations in serum from normal subjects and from two 3MC patients (Patient 2 and Patient 3), measured in the absence of Ca^{++}. As shown in **FIGURE 36**, it is demonstrated that MASP-3 deficiency reduces the percentage of complement-mediated lysis of mannan-coated erythrocytes as compared to normal human serum. The differences between the two curves from the normal human serum and the two curves from the 3MC patients is significant (p=0.013, Friedman test).

TABLE 16 below summarizes the AP_{50} results shown in **FIGURE 36**.

TABLE 16: Summary of Results shown in **FIGURE 36**

Serum type	**AP_{50} (%)**
Normal human serum #1	7.1
Normal human serum #2	8.6
3MC Patient #2	11.9
3MC Patient #3	14.3

It is noted that when the serum samples shown in **TABLE 16** were pooled, the AP_{50} value for normal human serum = 7.9 and the AP_{50} value for 3MC serum = 12.8 (p=0.031, Wilcox matched-pairs signed rank test).

Experiment #5: Reconstitution of human 3MC serum by recombinant MASP-3 restores AP-driven C3b deposition on zymosan coated plates

Methods:

An AP assay was carried out under traditional AP-specific conditions (BBS/Mg^{++}/EGTA, without Ca^{++}, wherein BBS=barbital buffered saline containing sucrose), as described in Bitter-Suermann et al., *Eur. J. Immunol* 11:291-295 (1981)), on zymosan-coated microtiter plates in the following serum samples (1) 5% human serum from 3MC Patient #2 with full length active rMASP-3 added in at a range of 0 to 20 µg/mL; (2) 10% human serum from 3MC Patient #2 with full length active rMASP-3 added in at a range of 0 to 20 µg/mL; and (3) 5% human serum from 3MC Patient #2 with inactive rMASP-3A (S679A) added in at a range of 0 to 20 µg/mL.

Results:

FIGURE 37 graphically illustrates the level of AP-driven C3b deposition on zymosan-coated microtiter plates as a function of the concentration of rMASP-3 protein added to serum samples obtained from human 3MC Patient #2 (MASP-3-deficient). As shown in **FIGURE 37**, active recombinant MASP-3 protein reconstitutes AP-driven C3b deposition on zymosan-coated plates in a concentration-dependent manner. As further shown in **FIGURE 37**, no C3b deposition was observed in the 3MC serum containing inactive rMASP-3 (S679A).

Experiment #6: Reconstitution of human 3MC serum by recombinant MASP-3 restores hemolytic activity in 3MC patient serum

Methods:

A hemolytic assay was carried out using rabbit RBC using the methods described above in Experiment #2 with the following test sera at a range of 0 to 12% serum: (1) normal human serum; (2) 3MC patient serum; (3) 3MC patient serum plus active full length rMASP-3 (20 µg/ml); and (4) heat-inactivated human serum.

Results:

FIGURE 38 graphically illustrates the percent hemolysis (as measured by hemoglobin release of lysed rabbit erythrocytes into the supernatant measured by photometry) of mannan-coated rabbit erythrocytes over a range of serum concentrations in

(1) normal human serum; (2) 3MC patient serum; (3) 3MC patient serum plus active full length rMASP-3 (20 μg/ml); and (4) heat-inactivated human serum, measured in the absence of Ca^{++}. As shown in **FIGURE 38**, the percent lysis of rabbit RBC is significantly increased in 3MC serum including rMASP-3 as compared to the percent lysis in 3MC serum without rMASP-3 (p=0.0006).

FIGURE 39 graphically illustrates the percentage of rabbit erythrocyte lysis in 7% human serum from 3MC Patient 2 and from 3MC Patient 3 containing active rMASP-3 at a concentration range of 0 to 110 μg/ml in BBS/Mg^{++}/EGTA. As shown in **FIGURE 39**, the percentage of rabbit RBC lysis is restored with the amount of rMASP-3 in a concentration-dependent manner up to 100% activity.

Experiment #7: Serum of MASP-3 deficient (3MC) patient has functional MASP-2 if MBL is present

Methods:

A C3b deposition assay was carried out using Mannan-coated ELISA plates under to examine whether 3MC serum is deficient in LEA-2. Citrate plasma was diluted in BBS buffer in serial dilutions (starting at 1:80, 1:160, 1: 320, 1:640, 1:1280, 1:2560) and plated on Mannan-coated plates. Deposited C3b was detected using a chicken anti-human C3b assay. LEA-2 driven C3b deposition (the plasma dilutions are to high for the AP and LEA-1 to work) on Mannan-coated ELISA plates was evaluated as a function of human serum concentration in serum from a normal human subject (NHS), from two 3MC patients (Patient 2 and Patient 3), from the parents of Patient 3 and from a MBL-deficient subject.

Results:

FIGURE 40 graphically illustrates the level of LEA-2-driven (i.e., MASP-2-driven) C3b deposition on Mannan-coated ELISA plates as a function of the concentration of human serum diluted in BBS buffer, for serum from a normal human subject (NHS), from two 3MC patients (Patient 2 and Patient 3), from the parents of Patient 3 and from a MBL-deficient subject. These data indicate that Patient 2 is MBL sufficient. However, Patient 3 and the mother of Patient 3 are MBL deficient, and therefore their serum does not deposit C3b on Mannan via LEA-2. Replacement of MBL in these sera restores LEA-2 mediated C3b deposition in the serum of Patient 3 (who is homozygous for the SNP leading to MASP-3 deficiency) and his mother (who is heterozygous for the mutant MASP-3 allele) (data not shown). This finding demonstrates that 3MC serum is not deficient in LEA-2, but rather appears to have functional MASP-2.

Overall summary and Conclusions:

These results demonstrate that MASP-3 deficiency in human serum results in loss of AP activity, as manifested in reduced C3b deposition on zymosan-coated wells and reduced rabbit erythrocyte lysis. The AP can be restored in both assays by supplementing the sera with functional, recombinant human MASP-3.

EXAMPLE 11

This Example demonstrates that a chimeric mouse V region/human IgG4 constant region anti-human MASP-3 monoclonal antibody (mAb M3-1, also referred to as mAb 13B1) is a potent inhibitor of MASP-3-mediated Alternative Pathway Complement (APC) Activation.

Methods:

Generation of a chimeric mouse V region/human IgG constant region anti-human MASP-3 monoclonal antibody (mAb M3-1)

A murine anti-human MASP-3 inhibitory antibody (mAb M3-1) was generated by immunizing MASP-1/3 knockout mice with the human MASP-3 CCP1-CCP2-SP domain (aa 301-728 of SEQ ID NO:2) (see also Example 14). Briefly described, splenocytes from the immunized mice were fused with P3/NS1/1-Ag4-1 and supernatants from resulting hybridoma clones were screened for the production of antibodies that bind to human MASP-3 and for the ability to block MASP-3-mediated cleavage of complement pro-factor D (pro-CFD) to factor D (CFD). Monoclonal antibody (mAb) variable regions were isolated by RT-PCR, sequenced and cloned into human IgG4 expression vectors. Chimeric monoclonal antibodies were expressed in transiently transfected HEK293T cells, purified and tested for binding affinity to mouse and human MASP-3 and for the ability to inhibit MASP-3-mediated cleavage of pro-CFD to CFD.

The MASP-3 inhibitory monoclonal antibody M3-1 (13B1) comprises a heavy chain variable region (VH) set forth as SEQ ID NO:30 and a light chain variable region (VL) set forth as SEQ ID NO:45. The sequences of the variable regions of the M3-1 monoclonal antibody are provided below:

Heavy Chain Variable Region

Presented below is the heavy chain variable region (VH) sequence for mAb M3-1. The Kabat CDRs (31-35 (H1), 50-65 (H2) and 95-102 (H3) are underlined, which correspond to amino acid residues 31-35 (H1), 50-66 (H2) and 99-102 (H3) of SEQ ID NO:30.

mAb M3-1 heavy chain variable region (VH) (SEQ ID NO:30)

QVQLKQSGAELMKPGASVKLSCKATGYTFTGKWIEWVKQRPGHGLEWIGEILPGTGSTNYN
EKFKGKATFTADSSSNTAYMQLSSLTTEDSAMYYCLRSEDVWGTGTTVTVSS

Light Chain Variable Region

Presented below is the light chain variable region (VL) sequence for mAb M3-1. The Kabat CDRs (24-34 (H1), 50-56 (H2) and 89-97 (H3) are underlined, which correspond to amino acid residues 24-40 (L1); 56-62 (L2) and 95-102 (L3) of SEQ ID NO:45. These regions are the same whether numbered by the Kabat or Chothia system.

mAb M3-1 light chain variable region (VL) (SEQ ID NO:45)

DIVMTQSPSSLAVSAGEKVTMSCKSSQSLLNSRTRKNYLAWYQQKPGQSPKLLIYWASTRES
GVPDRFTGSGSGTDFTLTISSVQAEDLAVYYCKQSYNIPTFGGGTKLEIKR

mAb M3-1 VH CDRs

VHCDR1: GKWIE (SEQ ID NO:84)

VHCDR2: EILPGTGSTNYNEKFKG (SEQ ID NO:86)

VHCDR3: SEDV (SEQ ID NO:88)

mAb M3-1 VL CDRs

VLCDR1: KSSQSLLNSRTRKNYLA (SEQ ID NO:142)

VLCDR2: WASTRES (SEQ ID NO:144)

VLCDR3: KQSYNIPT (SEQ ID NO:161)

As shown above, MASP-3 monoclonal antibody M3-1 comprises (a) a heavy chain variable region comprising (i) VHCDR1 comprising SEQ ID NO:84, (ii) VHCDR2 comprising SEQ

ID NO:86 and (iii) VHCDR3 comprising SEQ ID NO:88; and (b) a light chain variable region comprising (i) VLCDR1 comprising SEQ ID NO:142, (ii) VLCDR2 comprising SEQ ID NO:144 and (iii) VLCDR3 comprising SEQ ID NO:161.

Binding of mAb M3-1 to recombinant forms of human and mouse MASP-3

A monovalent Fab version of M3-1 was tested for binding to recombinant, full-length human and mouse MASP-3 protein in an ELISA experiment. Binding affinity determinations were made by coating 96-well plates with an anti-MASP-3 capture antibody that binds the protein from multiple species. The capture antibody has been shown to bind the CCP1-CCP2 region of MASP-1 and MASP-3. Full-length versions of human and mouse protein were immobilized on ELISA plates coated with the capture antibody, and varying concentrations of M3-1 Fab were allowed to bind to the target protein in separate wells. Bound M3-1 was detected using an anti-kappa light chain antibody that is conjugated to HRP (Novus Biologicals NBP1-75064), and was visualized with the TMB substrate reagent set (BD Biosciences 555214).

FIGURE 41 graphically illustrates a representative example of a binding experiment that was performed with human MASP-3 in which the M3-1 Fab (also referred to as 13B1) shows an apparent binding affinity (EC_{50}) of about 0.117 nM to the human protein.

FIGURE 42 graphically illustrates a representative example of a binding experiment that was performed with mouse MASP-3 in which the M3-1 Fab shows an apparent binding affinity (EC_{50}) of about 0.214 nM to the mouse protein.

These results demonstrate that mAb M3-1 (13B1) has a high binding affinity for both human and mouse MASP-3.

Demonstration that mAb M3-1 is capable of inhibiting Alternative Pathway Complement (APC) Activation and Measurement of the *in vitro* potency of mAb M3-1

As described in the present disclosure, it has been determined that MASP-3 is a key regulator of the APC, at least in part due to its requirement for the activation of CFD, a central APC enzyme. As also described in the present disclosure, MASP-3 circulates in the body at a relatively low concentration and has a slow catabolic rate, allowing for long-lasting

inhibition of the pro-inflammatory pathway through intravenous, subcutaneous and oral routes of MASP-3 antibody administration. The following experiment was carried out to determine the efficacy of mAb M3-1 for inhibiting MASP-3-mediated CFD maturation and inhibition of APC in human serum. Normal human serum contains predominantly active or processed (i.e., mature) CFD, so we performed experiments in which CFD-depleted human serum (Complement Technology A336) was reconstituted with a recombinant, unprocessed form of CFD (pro-CFD). Thus, in this experimental system, APC activation requires the processing of pro-CFD into active CFD.

The APC was induced by the addition of zymosan particles, which function as an activating surface for complement deposition. Varying concentrations of mAb M3-1 were added to the serum prior to the addition of recombinant pro-CFD and zymosan. The mixtures were incubated at 37°C for 75 minutes, and the APC activity was measured by the flow cytometric detection of complement factor Bb (Quidel A252) on the surface of the zymosan particles.

FIGURE 43 graphically illustrates the level of complement factor Bb deposition on zymosan particles (determined by flow cytometric detection measured in MFI units) in the presence of varying concentrations of mAb M3-1 in CFD-depleted human serum. As shown in FIGURE 43, mAb M3-1 shows potent inhibition of the APC in 10% human serum, with an IC_{50} of 0.311 nM in this experimental example.

These results demonstrate that MASP-3 plays a key role in APC activation in an *in vitro* model in human serum, and further demonstrate that mAb M3-1 is a potent inhibitor of the APC.

Inhibition of the APC by mAb M3-1 *in vivo*:

In order to determine the efficacy of mAb M3-1 for inhibiting the APC *in vivo*, a group of mice (n = 4) received a single intravenous tail vein injection of 10 mg/kg mAb M3-1. Blood collected from the animals was used to prepare serum, providing a matrix for the flow cytometric assessment of APC activity in an *ex vivo* assay measuring the level of C3 (also C3b and iC3b) deposition on zymosan particles. Serum prepared from blood harvested at a pre-dose timepoint and multiple post-dose time points (96 hrs, 1 week, and 2 weeks) was diluted to 7.5% and zymosan particles were added to induce the APC. Antibody-treated mice

were compared to a group of control mice (n = 4) that were given a single intravenous dose of vehicle.

FIGURE 44 graphically illustrates the level of C3 deposition on zymosan particles at various time points after a single dose of mAb M3-1 (10 mg/kg i.v.) in wild-type mice. As shown in FIGURE 44, in the pre-dose time point the two conditions show comparable levels of APC activity. At 96 hours and the two later time points, the mAb M3-1 treated group shows essentially complete APC inhibition, while the APC activity of the vehicle-treated group remains unabated. As shown in FIGURE 44, a single dose of mAb M3-1 administered intravenously to mice led to near-complete ablation of systemic APC activity for at least 14 days.

These results demonstrate that mAb M3-1 is a potent inhibitor of the APC *in vivo* in a mouse model.

EXAMPLE 12

This Example demonstrates that chimeric mouse V region/human IgG4 constant region anti-human MASP-3 monoclonal antibody (mAb M3-1, also referred to as mAb 13B1) provides a clear benefit to survival of red blood cells lacking Crry in a mouse model associated with paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria (PNH).

Methods:

The chimeric mouse V region/human IgG4 constant region anti-human MASP-3 monoclonal antibody (mAb M3-1) was generated as described in Example 11 and Example 14. As further described in Example 11, it was determined that mAb M3-1 is a potent inhibitor of the APC in a mouse model *in vivo*. This Example describes the analysis of mAb M3-1 for efficacy in a murine model associated with PNH.

Analysis of mAb M3-1 for efficacy in a murine model associated with PNH

In a mouse model associated with PNH, red blood cells (RBCs) from Crry-deficient mice lacking the major cell surface repressor of the APC in mouse were obtained for use as donor cells. RBCs obtained from a wild-type (WT) donor mouse were run in parallel. These donor RBCs were differentially labeled with fluorescent lipophilic dyes (Sigma): WT (red),

and Crry- (green). In two different experiments, the labelled WT and Crry- donor cells were mixed 1:1 and injected intravenously into wild-type recipient mice and percent WT and Crry-deficient RBC survival (relative to the early time point) in the recipient mice were determined by flow cytometric assessment of 20,000 live cell events. In the first experiment, multiple pre-dose treatments of mAb M3-1 antibody were given, and the effect of the mAb M3-1 was compared to that of another inhibitory complement antibody mAb BB5.1 (available from Hycult Biotech), which is a C5 inhibitory antibody that has shown efficacy in multiple mouse studies (Wang et al., *PNAS* vol 92:8955-8959, 1995; Hugen et al., *Kidney Int* 71(7):646-54, 2007). Administration of a C5 inhibitor is the current standard of treatment for human patients with PNH. In the second experiment, a single pre-treatment dose of mAb M3-1 was evaluated.

In the first experiment, three different groups of mice (n = 4 per condition) were assessed: vehicle-treated condition, mAb M3-1-treated condition, and mAb BB5.1 (mAb blocking mouse C5)-treated condition. Labeled cells were injected into mice on "day 0", and multiple doses of both M3-1 and BB5.1 were administered as follows: mAb M3-1 was administered intravenously (10 mg/kg) on days -11, -4, -1, and +6. The mAb BB5.1 was administered by intraperitoneal injection (40 mg/kg) on days -1, +3, +6, and +10. The vehicle treatment followed the same dosing schedule as mAb M3-1.

FIGURE 45 graphically illustrates the percent survival of donor RBCs (WT or Crry-) over a period of 14 days in WT recipient mice treated with mAb M3-1 (10 mg/kg on days -11, 04, -1 and +6), mAb BB5.1 treated, or vehicle treated mice. As shown in FIGURE 45, compared to WT RBCs that showed survival typical of RBCs in mice in the vehicle-treated animals, Crry-deficient RBCs had rapid clearance (more than 75% cleared within 24 hours). Treatment of mice with mAb BB5.1 provided no improvement over vehicle treatment in Crry-deficient RBC survival. In contrast, mAb M3-1 treatment caused a dramatic improvement of Crry-deficient RBC survival over both mAb BB5.1 and vehicle-treated animals. The protective effect of mAb M3-1 was observed throughout the duration of the experiment.

In the second study, differentially labeled WT (red)- and Crry- (green) RBCs were evaluated in two different groups of WT mice (n = 4 per condition): vehicle-treated and mAb M3-1-treated. A single dose of either vehicle or antibody (20 mg/kg) was given to the

recipient mice by intravenous administration six days (day -6) before the labeled donor cells were injected into the recipient mice. The labeled donor RBCs were then analyzed for percent survival in the recipient mice at incremental time points after injection over a 16-day period.

FIGURE 46 graphically illustrates the percent survival of donor RBCs (WT or Crry-) over a period of 16 days in WT recipient mice treated with a single dose of mAb M3-1 (20 mg/kg on day -6) or vehicle-treated mice. As shown in FIGURE 46, a single pre-treatment dose of mAb M3-1 demonstrated improved survival of Crry- RBCs as compared to the survival of Crry- RBCs in vehicle-treated mice. At 96 hours post injection, approximately 90% of the vehicle-treated WT RBCs survived under the control conditions, whereas only 5% of the Crry- RBCs survived in the vehicle-treated WT mice. In contrast to the vehicle-treated mice, 40% of the Crry- RBCs survived in the mice treated with mAb M3-1.

Taken together, these results demonstrate that the MASP-3 inhibitory antibody mAb M3-1 provides a clear benefit to survival of RBCs lacking Crry, a key surface complement inhibitor in a mouse model associated with PNH.

EXAMPLE 13

This Example describes a study demonstrating that a chimeric MASP-3 inhibitory monoclonal antibody (mAb M3-1, also referred to as mAb 13B1) reduces clinical scores in collagen antibody-induced arthritis (CAIA), a murine model of rheumatoid arthritis (RA).

Background/Rationale:

CAIA is a well-established animal model of arthritis. In additional to providing insight into RA, the pathology of the CAIA model has an established connection with the APC. Banda and coworkers have demonstrated improved outcomes in the CAIA model in mice carrying deficiencies in components of the APC, such as factor B and factor D (Banda et al., *J. Immunol* vol 177:1904-1912, 2006 and Banda et al., *Clinical & Exp Imunol* vol 159:100-108, 2009). APC mouse knock-outs demonstrate lower arthritis (disease) scores, lower incidence, and less C3 and factor H deposition in synovium and surrounding tissues relative to WT controls. Additionally, disease activity scores, complement C3 tissue deposition in the joint, and histopathologic injury scores were markedly decreased in MASP1/3 knock-out mice

(Banda et al., *J Immunol* vol 185:5598-5606, 2010). Therefore, the MASP-3 inhibitory antibody mAb M3-1 was analyzed for efficacy in the CAIA.

Methods:

The chimeric MASP-3 monoclonal antibody (mAb M3-1) was generated as described in Example 11 and Example 14. As further described in Example 11, it was determined that mAb M3-1 is a potent inhibitor of the APC in a mouse model *in vivo*.

mAb M3-1 was tested in the CAIA model as follows. Wild-type mice (n=7) were injected intravenously with 3 mg of a cocktail of anti-collagen antibodies on day 0. The mice were dosed intraperitoneally with *E. coli* lipopolysaccharide (LPS) (25 µg/mouse) on day +3. As described in Nandakumar et al. (*Am J Pathol* 163(5):1827-1837, 2003), arthritis typically occurs in this model on days +3 through +10. Terminal serum samples were collected on day +14. mAb M3-1 (5 mg/kg and 20 mg/kg) was dosed on days -12, -5, +1 and day +7. Vehicle (PBS) was injected as a negative control.

Clinical scores were evaluated for each mouse on all 4 paws on study days 0 through 14 using the following scoring standards:

0= normal
1= 1 hind and/or fore paw joint affected or minimal diffuse erythema and swelling
2= 2 hind and/or fore paw joints affected or mild diffuse erythema and swelling
3= 3 hind and/or fore paw joints affected or moderate diffuse erythema and swelling
4= marked diffuse erythema and swelling, or 4 digit joints affected
5= severe diffuse erythema and severe swelling of entire paw, unable to flex digits.

The incidence = % mice within a treatment group showing arthritic symptoms was also determined.

The results are shown in FIGURE 47 (clinical scores) and FIGURE 48 (incidence of arthritis). FIGURE 47 graphically illustrates the clinical scores of the mice treated with mAb M3-1 (5 mg/kg or 20 mg/kg) or vehicle over a 14-day time course. FIGURE 48 graphically illustrates the percent incidence of arthritis of the mice treated with mAb M3-1 (5 mg/kg or 20 mg/kg) or vehicle over a 14-day time course. As shown in FIGURE 47, mAb M3-1 demonstrates a clear therapeutic benefit for both endpoints starting at day 5 and lasting throughout the duration of the study. As shown in FIGURE 48, while the incidence of

disease reached 100% in the vehicle-treated animals, two-thirds of the animals in the 5 mg/kg mAb M3-1 condition remained disease-free. Additionally, only one of the animals (i.e., only one in a total n = 7) demonstrated any arthritic symptoms in the 20 mg/kg mAb M3-1 condition.

The results of this study demonstrate that the MASP-3 inhibitory antibody mAb M3-1 provides a clear therapeutic benefit in the CAIA model, a well-established murine model of rheumatoid arthritis (RA) and a model strongly linked to APC activation. As shown in Example 11, a single dose of mAb M3-1 administered intravenously to mice led to near-complete ablation of systemic APC activity for at least 14 days. As shown in this Example, in the animal model induced by administration of auto-antibodies against mouse connective tissue, mAb M3-1 reduced the incidence and severity of clinical arthritis scores in a dose-dependent fashion. Compared to control-treated animals, mAb M3-1 reduced the incidence and severity of the disease by approximately 80% at the highest dose tested. Therefore, it is expected that administration of a MASP-3 inhibitory antibody, such as mAb M3-1 will be an effective therapy in patients suffering from arthritis, such as rheumatoid arthritis, osteoarthritis, juvenile rheumatoid arthritis, infection-related arthritis, psoriatic arthritis, as well as ankylosing spondylitis and Bechcet's disease.

EXAMPLE 14

This Example describes the generation of high affinity anti-human MASP-3 inhibitory antibodies.

Background/Rationale:

A limited number of antibodies specific for MASP-3 have been described (Thiel et al., *Mol. Immunol.* 43:122, 2006; Moller-Kristensen et al., *Int. Immunol.* 19:141, 2006; Skjoedt et al., *Immunobiol* 215:921, 2010). These antibodies were useful for detection assays such as Western blotting, immunoprecipitation, and as capture or detection reagents in ELISA assays. However, the antibodies described in Thiel et al., 2006, Moller-Kristensen et al., 2006 and Skjoedt et al., 2010 have not been found to inhibit MASP-3 catalytic activity.

MASP-3 antibodies were also generated previously, as described in Example 7 herein (also published as Example 15 in WO2013/192240) by screening a chicken antibody library

in a modified DT40 cell line, DTLacO, for MASP-3 binding molecules. These antibodies bound to human MASP-3 in the nanomolar range with an EC_{50} between 10 nM and 100 nM and partially inhibited cleavage of pro-CFD by MASP-3.

This Example describes the generation of anti-human MASP-3 inhibitory antibodies with unusually strong binding affinity (i.e., subnanomolar binding affinity, ranging from ≤500 pM to 20 pM). The antibodies described in this Example specifically bind to human MASP-3 with high affinity (e.g., ≤ 500 pM), inhibit Factor D maturation, and do not bind to human MASP-1 (SEQ ID NO:8).

Methods:

1. **Generation of chimeric mouse V region/human IgG constant region anti-human MASP-3 monoclonal antibodies**

Seven to fourteen-week old C57BL/6, MASP-1/3 knockout mice were immunized with either the human MASP-3 CCP1/CCP2/SP polypeptide (amino acid residues 299-728 of SEQ ID NO:2) including a StrepTag II epitope tag on the N-terminus; or were immunized with the human MASP-3 SP domain (amino acid residues 450-728 of SEQ ID NO:2), including StrepTagII on the N-terminus, using the Sigma Adjuvant System (Sigma-Aldrich, St Louis, MO). The mice were injected intraperitoneally with 50 µg of immunogen per mouse. The immunized mice were boosted 14 days later with additional immunogen in adjuvant. Thereafter, for several weeks, the mice were boosted every 14 to 21 days with immunogen in PBS. Serum samples from the mice were periodically prepared from tail bleeds and tested by ELISA for the presence of antigen-specific antibodies. Mice with a significant antibody titer received a pre-fusion immunogen boost in PBS four days prior to splenic fusion. Three days prior to the fusion, the mice were treated subcutaneously at the base of the tail with 50 µg of a anti-CD40 agonist mAb in PBS (R&D Systems, Minneapolis, MN) to increase B cells numbers (see Rycyzyn et al., *Hybridoma* 27:25-30, 2008). The mice were sacrificed and the spleen cells were harvested and fused to a selected murine myeloma cell line P3/NSI/1-AG4-1 (NS-1) (ATCC No. TIB18) using 50% polyethylene glycol or 50% polyethylene glycol plus 10% DMSO. The fusions generated hybridoma cells which were plated in 96 well tissue culture plates containing HAT (hypoxanthine, aminopterin and thymidine) medium to inhibit proliferation of non-fused cells, myeloma hybrids and spleen hybrids. After hybridoma selection, the culture supernatants were assayed for MASP-3

binding (ELISA) and inhibition of pro-Factor D activation. The positive hybridomas were identified and subcloned by serial dilution methods.

TABLE 17: Summary of Fusion Experiments

Fusion	Immunogen: Human MASP-3	Total hybridomas	MASP-3 Binding hybridomas	MASP-3 Functional hybridomas
1	SP	434	38	10
2	SP	279	13	0
3	CCP1/CCP2/SP	348	40	2
4	CCP1/CCP2/SP	319	60	2
5	CCP1/CCP2/SP	651	152	1
6	CCP1/CCP2/SP	1297	ND	1

Note: "ND" means this fusion was only screened for functional inhibition of pro-CFD activation.

Results:

As shown in TABLE 17, a total of 3328 hybridomas from immunized MASP1/3 KO mice were screened, of which >303 were found to bind to MASP-3 and of which 16 were found to bind to MASP-3 and to inhibit pro-CFD activation. mAb M3-1 (13B1) described in Example 11 is one of the 16 functional MASP-3 inhibitory antibodies described in TABLE 17. As described in Example 15, it was determined that all 16 functional MASP-3 inhibitory antibodies bind to human MASP-3 with unusually strong binding affinity ($\leq$ 500 pM).

Discussion:

This Example describes the generation of antibodies that inhibit human MASP-3 with unusually strong binding affinity (i.e., subnanomolar binding affinity, ranging from $\leq$500 pM to 20 pM) by immunizing MASP1/3 knockout mice. The antibodies described in this Example specifically bind to human MASP-3 with high affinity (e.g., $\leq$ 500 pM), inhibit Factor D maturation, and do not bind to human MASP-1. As described herein, the amino acid sequences of human, mouse and chicken MASP-3 revealed that the SP domain of MASP-3 is highly conserved, especially in the active site (see FIGURES 4 and 5). It is likely that the ability to generate MASP-3 inhibitory antibodies with unusually strong binding affinity in MASP1/3 KO mice, as described in this example, is due in part to avoidance of

immunological tolerance that may hamper the generation of highly potent MASP-3 catalytic site-specific antibodies in wild-type animals.

EXAMPLE 15

This Example describes the cloning and sequence analysis of high affinity anti-human MASP-3 inhibitory mAbs.

Methods:

Cloning and purification of recombinant antibodies:

The heavy chain and light chain variable regions were cloned from the hybridomas described in Examples 11 and 14 using RT-PCR and were sequenced. Mouse-human chimeric mAbs consisting of the mouse mAb variable regions fused to the human IgG4 heavy chain (SEQ ID NO:311) and kappa light chain (SEQ ID NO:313) constant regions were produced as recombinant proteins in Expi293F cells. The IgG4 constant hinge region (SEQ ID NO:311) contains the stabilizing S228P amino acid substitution. In one embodiment, the chimeric mAbs were fused to the human IgG4 constant hinge region (SEQ ID NO:312) which contains the S228P amino acid substitution and also a mutation that promotes FcRn interations at low pH.

The sequences of the heavy chain variable regions and light chain variable regions are shown in FIGURES 49A and 49B, respectively ("SIN" = "SEQ ID NO:" in FIGURE 49A and FIGURE 49B), and are included below. The complementarity regions (CDRs) and framework regions (FRs) of each are provided in TABLES 18-22 below.

FIGURE 50A is a dendrogram of the VH regions of high affinity anti-human MASP-3 inhibitory mAbs generated in MASP1/3 KO mice. **FIGURE 50B** is a dendrogram of the VL regions of high affinity anti-human MASP-3 inhibitory mAbs generated in MASP1/3 KO mice. As shown in FIGUREs 50A and 50B, several groups of related antibodies were identified.

Presented below is the heavy chain variable region (VH) sequence for each high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory antibody. The Kabat CDRs are underlined.

Heavy Chain Variable Regions:

4D5_VH: SEQ ID NO:24
QVQLKQSGPELVKPGASVKLSCKASGYTFTTDDINWVKQRPGQGLEWIGWIYPRDD
RTKYNDKFKDKATLTVDTSSNTAYMDLHSLTSEDSAVYFCSSLEDTYWGQGTLVAV
SS

1F3_VH: SEQ ID NO:25
QVQLKQSGPELVKPGASVKLSCKASGYTFTSNDINWVKQRPGQGLEWIGWIYPRDG
SIKYNEKFTDKATLTVDVSSSTAYMELHSLTSEDSAVYFCSGVEDSYWGQGTLVTVS
S

4B6_VH: SEQ ID NO:26
QVQLKQSGPELVKPGASVKLSCKASGYTFTSNDINWVKQRPGQGLEWIGWIYPRDG
TTKYNEEFTDKATLTVDVSSSTAFMELHSLTSEDSAVYFCSSVEDSYWGQGTLVTVS
S

1A10_VH: SEQ ID NO:27
QVQLKQSGPELVKPGASVKLSCKASGYTFTSNDINWVKQRPGQGLEWIGWIYPRDG
TTKYNEKFTDKATLTVDVSSSTAFMELHRLTSEDSAVYFCSSVEDSYWGQGTLVTVS
S

10D12_VH: SEQ ID NO:28
QIQLVQSGPELKKPGETVKISCKASGYIFTSYGMSWVRQAPGKGLKWMGWINTYSG
VPTYADDFKGRFAFSLETSARTPYLQINNLKNEDTATYFCARGGEAMDYWGQGTSV
TVSS

35C1_VH: SEQ ID NO:29
QIQLVQSGPELKTPGETVKISCKASGYIFTSYGITWVKQAPGKGLKWMGWINTYSGV
PTYADDFKGRFAFSLETSASTAYLQINNLKNEDTTTYFCTRGGDALDYWGQGTSVT
VSS

13B1_VH: SEQ ID NO:30

QVQLKQSGAELMKPGASVKLSCKATGYTFTGKWIEWVKQRPGHGLEWIGEILPGTG STNYNEKFKGKATFTADSSSNTAYMQLSSLTTEDSAMYYCLRSEDVWGTGTTVTVS S

1G4_VH: SEQ ID NO:31

QVQLKQSGAELMKPGASVKLACKATGYTFTGYWIEWIKQRPGQGLEWIGEMLPGS GSTHYNEKFKGKATFTADTSSNTAYMQLSGLTTEDSAIYYCVRSIDYWGQGTTLTVS S

1E7_VH: SEQ ID NO:32

QVQLKQSGPELARPWASVKISCQAFYTFSRRVHFAIRDTNYWMQWVKQRPGQGLE WIGAIYPGNGDTSYNQKFKGKATLTADKSSSTAYMQLSSLTSEDSAVYYCASGSHYF DYWGQGTTLTVSS

2D7_VH: SEQ ID NO:33

EVQLQQSGPELVKPGASVKVSCKASGYTLTDYYMNWVKQSHGKSLEWIGDVNPNN DGTTYNQKFKGRATLTVDKSSNTASMELRSLTSEDSAVYYCAICPFYYLGKGTHFD YWGQGTSLTVSS

49C11_VH: SEQ ID NO:34

EVQLQQSGPVLVKPGASGKMSCKASGYKFTDYYMIWVKQSHGKSLEWIGVIKIYNG GTSYNQKFKGKATLTVDKSSSTAYMELNSLTSEDSAVYYCARGPSLYDYDPYWYFD VWGTGTTVTVSS

15D9_VH: SEQ ID NO:35

QVQLKQSGTELMKPGASVNLSCKASGYTFTAYWIEWVKQRPGHGLEWIGEILPGSG TTNYNENFKDRATFTADTSSNTAYMQLSSLTSEDSAIYYCARSYYYASRWFAFWGQ GTLVTVSS

2F5_VH: SEQ ID NO:36

EVQLQQPGAELVKPGASVKMSCKASGYTFTSYWITWVKQRPGQGLEWIGDIYPGSG STNYNEKFKSKATLTVDTSSSTAYMQLSSLTSEDSAVYYCARRRYYATAWFAYWG QGTLVTVSS

1B11_VH: SEQ ID NO:37
QVQLKQSGAELVRPGASVKLSCKASGYTFTDYYINWVKQRPGQGLEWIARIYPGSG NTYYNEKFKGKATLTAEKSSSTAYMQLSSLTSEDSAVYFCARNYYISSPWFAYWGQ GTLVTVSS

2F2_VH: SEQ ID NO:38
QVQLKQSGAELVTPGASVKMSCKASGYTFTTYPIEWMKQNHGKSLEWIGNFHPYND DTKYNEKFKGKATLTVEKSSNTVYLELSRLTSDDSAVYFCARRVYYSYFWFGYWG HGTLVTVSS

11B6_VH: SEQ ID NO:39
QVQLKQSGAELVKPGASVKMSCKASGYTFTTYPIEWMKQNHGKSLEWIGNFHPYN GDSKYNEKFKGKATLTVEKSSSTVYLELSRLPSADSAIYYCARRHYAASPWFAHWG QGTLVTVSS

TABLE 18: MASP-3 Antibody VH Sequences (CDRs and FR regions, Kabat)

Antibody	HC FR1	HC CDR1
4D5	QVQLKQSGPELVKPGASVKLSCKASGYTFT (SEQ ID NO:55)	TDDIN (SEQ ID NO:56)
1F3	QVQLKQSGPELVKPGASVKLSCKASGYTFT (SEQ ID NO:55)	SNDIN (SEQ ID NO:62)
4B6	QVQLKQSGPELVKPGASVKLSCKASGYTFT (SEQ ID NO:55)	SNDIN (SEQ ID NO:62)
1A10	QVQLKQSGPELVKPGASVKLSCKASGYTFT (SEQ ID NO:55)	SNDIN (SEQ ID NO:62)
10D12	QIQLVQSGPELKKPGETVKISCKASGYIFT (SEQ ID NO:71)	SYGMS (SEQ ID NO:72)
35C1	QIQLVQSGPELKTPGETVKISCKASGYIFT (SEQ ID NO:78)	SYGIT (SEQ ID NO:79)
13B1	QVQLKQSGAELMKPGASVKLSCKATGYTFT (SEQ ID NO:83)	GKWIE (SEQ ID NO:84)
1G4	QVQLKQSGAELMKPGASVKLACKATGYTFT (SEQ ID NO:90)	GYWIE (SEQ ID NO:91)

2F5	EVQLQQPGAELVKPGASVKMSCKASGYTFT (SEQ ID NO:97)	SYWIT (SEQ ID NO:98)
1B11	QVQLKQSGAELVRPGASVKLSCKASGYTFT (SEQ ID NO:102)	DYYIN (SEQ ID NO:103)
1E7	QVQLKQSGPELARPWASVKISCQAFYTFSR (SEQ ID NO:108)	RVHFAIRDTNYWMQ (SEQ ID NO:109)
2F2	QVQLKQSGAELVTPGASVKMSCKASGYTFT (SEQ ID NO:113)	TYPIE (SEQ ID NO:114)
11B6	QVQLKQSGAELVKPGASVKMSCKASGYTFT (SEQ ID NO:120)	TYPIE (SEQ ID NO:114)
2D7	EVQLQQSGPELVKPGASVKVSCKASGYTLT (SEQ ID NO:124)	DYYMN (SEQ ID NO:125)
49C11	EVQLQQSGPVLVKPGASGKMSCKASGYKFT (SEQ ID NO:131)	DYYMI (SEQID NO:132)
15D9	QVQLKQSGTELMKPGASVNLSCKASGYTFT (SEQ ID NO:136)	AYWIE (SEQ ID NO:137)
Antibody	**HC FR2**	**HC CDR2**
4D5	WVKQRPGQGLEWIG (SEQ ID NO:57)	WIYPRDDRTKYNDKFKD (SEQ ID NO:58)
1F3	WVKQRPGQGLEWIG (SEQ ID NO:57)	WIYPRDGSIKYNEKFTD (SEQ ID NO:63)
4B6	WVKQRPGQGLEWIG (SEQ ID NO:57)	WIYPRDGTTKYNEEFTD (SEQ ID NO:67)
1A10	WVKQRPGQGLEWIG (SEQ ID NO:57)	WIYPRDGTTKYNEKFTD (SEQ ID NO:69)
10D12	WVRQAPGKGLKWMG (SEQ ID NO:73)	WINTYSGVPTYADDFKG (SEQ ID NO:74)
35C1	WVKQAPGKGLKWMG (SEQ ID NO:80)	WINTYSGVPTYADDFKG (SEQ ID NO:74)
13B1	WVKQRPGHGLEWIG (SEQ ID NO:85)	EILPGTGSTNYNEKFKG (SEQ ID NO:86)
1G4	WIKQRPGQGLEWIG (SEQ ID NO:92)	EMLPGSGSTHYNEKFKG (SEQ ID NO:93)
2F5	WVKQRPGQGLEWIG (SEQ ID NO:57)	DIYPGSGSTNYNEKFKS (SEQ ID NO:99)
1B11	WVKQRPGQGLEWIA (SEQ ID NO:104)	RIYPGSGNTYYNEKFKG (SEQ ID NO:105)
1E7	WVKQRPGQGLEWIG (SEQ ID NO:57)	AIYPGNGDTSYNQKFKG (SEQ ID NO:110)
2F2	WMKQNHGKSLEWIG	NFHPYNDDTKYNEKFKG

	(SEQ ID NO:115)	(SEQ ID NO:116)
11B6	WMKQNHGKSLEWIG (SEQ ID NO:115)	NFHPYNGDSKYNEKFKG (SEQ ID NO:121)
2D7	WVKQSHGKSLEWIG (SEQ ID NO:126)	DVNPNNDGTTYNQKFKG (SEQ ID NO:127)
49C11	WVKQSHGKSLEWIG (SEQ ID NO:126)	VIKIYNGGTSYNQKFKG (SEQ ID NO:133)
15D9	WVKQRPGHGLEWIG (SEQ ID NO:85)	EILPGSGTTNYNENFKD (SEQ ID NO:138)
Antibody	**HC FR3**	**HC CDR3**
4D5	KATLTVDTSSNTAYMDLHSLTSEDSAVYFCSS (SEQ ID NO:59)	LEDTY (SEQ ID NO:60)
1F3	KATLTVDVSSSTAYMELHSLTSEDSAVYFCSG (SEQ ID NO:64)	VEDSY (SEQ ID NO:65)
4B6	KATLTVDVSSSTAFMELHSLTSEDSAVYFCSS (SEQ ID NO:68)	VEDSY (SEQ ID NO:65)
1A10	KATLTVDVSSSTAFMELHRLTSEDSAVYFCSS (SEQ ID NO:70)	VEDSY (SEQ ID NO:65)
10D12	RFAFSLETSARTPYLQINNLKNEDTATYFCAR (SEQ ID NO:75)	GGEAMDY (SEQ ID NO:76)
35C1	RFAFSLETSASTAYLQINNLKNEDTTTYFCTR (SEQ ID NO:81)	GGDALDY (SEQ ID NO:82)
13B1	KATFTADSSSNTAYMQLSSLTTEDSAMYYCLR (SEQ ID NO:87)	SEDV (SEQ ID NO:88)
1G4	KATFTADTSSNTAYMQLSGLTTEDSAIYYCVR (SEQ ID NO:94)	SIDY (SEQ ID NO:95)
2F5	KATLTVDTSSSTAYMQLSSLTSEDSAVYYCAR (SEQ ID NO:100)	RRYYATAWFAY (SEQ ID NO:101)
1B11	KATLTAEKSSSTAYMQLSSLTSEDSAVYFCAR (SEQ ID NO:106)	NYYISSPWFAY (SEQ ID NO:107)
1E7	KATLTADKSSSTAYMQLSSLTSEDSAVYYCAS (SEQ ID NO:111)	GSHYFDY (SEQ ID NO:112)
2F2	KATLTVEKSSNTVYLELSRLTSDDSAVYFCAR (SEQ ID NO:117)	RVYYSYFWFGY (SEQ ID NO:118)
11B6	KATLTVEKSSSTVYLELSRLPSADSAIYYCAR (SEQ ID NO:122)	RHYAASPWFAH (SEQ ID NO:123)
2D7	RATLTVDKSSNTASMELRSLTSEDSAVYYCAI (SEQ ID NO:128	CPFYYLGKGTHFDY (SEQ ID NO:129)
49C11	KATLTVDKSSSTAYMELNSLTSEDSAVYYCAR	GPSLYDYDPYWYFDV

	(SEQ ID NO:134)	(SEQ ID NO:135)
15D9	RATFTADTSSNTAYMQLSSLTSEDSAIYYCAR (SEQ ID NO:139)	SYYYASRWFAF (SEQ ID NO:140)
Antibody	**HC FR4**	
4D5	WGQGTLVAVSS (SEQ ID NO:61)	
1F3	WGQGTLVTVSS (SEQ ID NO:66)	
4B6	WGQGTLVTVSS (SEQ ID NO:66)	
1A10	WGQGTLVTVSS (SEQ ID NO:66)	
10D12	WGQGTSVTVSS (SEQ ID NO:77)	
35C1	WGQGTSVTVSS (SEQ ID NO:77)	
13B1	WGTGTTVTVSS (SEQ ID NO:89)	
1G4	WGQGTTLTVSS (SEQ ID NO:96)	
2F5	WGQGTLVTVSS (SEQ ID NO:66)	
1B11	WGQGTLVTVSS (SEQ ID NO:66)	
1E7	WGQGTTLTVSS (SEQ ID NO:96)	
2F2	WGHGTLVTVSS (SEQ ID NO:119)	
11B6	WGQGTLVTVSS (SEQ ID NO:66)	
2D7	WGQGTSLTVSS (SEQ ID NO:130)	
49C11	WGTGTTVTVSS (SEQ ID NO:89)	
15D9	WGQGTLVTVSS (SEQ ID NO:66)	

Presented below are the light chain variable region (VL) sequences for the high affinity

MASP-3 inhibitory antibodies. The Kabat CDRs are underlined. These regions are the same whether numbered by the Kabat or Chothia system.

Light Chain Variable Regions:

4D5_VL: SEQ ID NO:40
DIVMTQSPSSLAVSAGEKVTMTCKSSQSLLNSRTRKNYLAWYQQKPGQSPKLLIYW
ASTRESGVPDRFTGSGSGTDFSLTISSVQAEDLAVYYCKQSYNLYTFGGGTKLEIKR

1F3_VL: SEQ ID NO:41
DIVMTQSPSSLAVSAGERVTMSCKSSQSLLISRTRKNYLSWYQQKPGQSPKLLIYWA
STRESGVPDRFTGSGSGTDFTLTISSVQAEDLAVYYCKQSYNLYTFGGGTKLEIKR

4B6_VL: SEQ ID NO:42 (SAME for 1A10_VL)
DIVMTQSPSSLAVSAGEKVTMSCKSSQSLLISRTRKNYLSWYQQKPGQSPKLLIYWA
STRESGVPDRFTGSGSGTDFTLTISSVQAEDLAVYYCKQSYNLYTFGGGTKLEIKR

10D12_VL: SEQ ID NO:43
DVLMTQTPLTLSVTIGQPASISCKSSQSLLDSDGKTYLNWLLQRPGQSPKRLIYLVSK
LDSGVPDRFTGSGSGTDFTLKISRVEAEDLGVYYCWQGTHFPWTFGGGTKLEIKR

35C1_VL: SEQ ID NO:44
DIVMTQAPLTLSVTIGQPASISCKSSQSLLDSDGKTYLSWLLQRPGQSPKRLIYLVSKL
DSGVPDRFTGSGSGTDFTLKISRVEAEDLGVYYCWQGTHFPYTFGGGTKLEIKR

13B1_VL: SEQ ID NO:45
DIVMTQSPSSLAVSAGEKVTMSCKSSQSLLNSRTRKNYLAWYQQKPGQSPKLLIYW
ASTRESGVPDRFTGSGSGTDFTLTISSVQAEDLAVYYCKQSYNIPTFGGGTKLEIKR

1G4_VL: SEQ ID NO:46
DVLMTQTPLSLPVSLGEQASISCRSSQSLVQSNGNTYLHWYLQKPGQSPKLLIYKVS
NRFSGVPDRFSGSGSGTDFTLKISRVEAEDLGVYFCSQSTHVPPTFGGGTKLEIKR

1E7_VL: SEQ ID NO:47

DIQLTQSPAILSVSPGERVSFSCRASQSIGTSIHWYQQRTNGSPRLLIKYASESISGIPSR FSGSGSGTDFTLSINSVESEDIADYYCQQSNSWPYTFGGGTKLEIKR

2D7_VL: SEQ ID NO:48

DIQMTQTPASLSASLGDRVTISCRASQDISNFLNWYQQKPNGTVKLLVFYTSRLHSG VPSRFSGSGSGAEHSLTISNLEQEDVATYFCQQGFTLPWTFGGGTKVEIKR

49C11_VL:SEQ ID NO:49

DVLMTQTPLSLPVSLGDQASFSCRSSQSLIHSNGNTYLHWYLQKPGQSPKLLIYKVSN RFSGVPDRFSGSGSGTDFTLKISRVEAEDLGVYFCSQSTHVPWTFGGGTKLEIKR

15D9_VL: SEQ ID NO:50

DIVMTQSQKFMSTSIGDRVSVTCRASQNVGPNLAWYQQKPGQSPKALIYSASYRFSG VPDRFTGSGSGTDFTLTISNVQSEDLAEYFCQQYNRYPFTFGSGTKLEIKR

2F5_VL: SEQ ID NO:51

DIVMTQSQKFMSTSVGDRVSITCKASQNVGTAVAWYQQKPGQSPKLLISSASNRYT GVPDRFTGSGSGTDFTLTISNMQSEDVADYFCQQYNSYPLTFGAGTKLELKR

1B11_VL: SEQ ID NO:52

DIVMTQSQKFMSTSVGDRVSVTCKASQNVGPNVAWYQQKPGQSPKALIYSASYRYS GVPDRFTGSGSGTDFTLTISNVQSEDLADYFCQQYNRYPLTFGAGTKLELKR

2F2_VL: SEQ ID NO:53

DIVMTQSQKFMSTSVGDRVNVTCKASQNVGTHVAWYQQKPGQSPKALIYSASYRY SGVPDRFTGSGSGTDFTLTISNVQSEDLAEYFCQQYNSYPRALTFGAGTKLELKR

11B6_VL: SEQ ID NO:54

DIVMTQSQKFMSTSVGDRVNVTCKASQNVGPTVAWYQQKPGQSPKALIYSASYRYS GVPDRFTGSGSGTDFTLTISNVHSEDLAEYFCQQYNSYPFTFGSGTKLEIKR

TABLE 19: MASP-3 Antibody VL Sequences (CDRs and FR regions, Kabat and Chothia)

Antibody	LC FR1	LC CDR1
4D5	DIVMTQSPSSLAVSAGEKVTMTC	KSSQSLLNSRTRKNYLA

	(SEQ ID NO:141)	(SEQ ID NO:142)
1F3	DIVMTQSPSSLAVSAGERVTMSC (SEQ ID NO:148)	KSSQSLLISRTRKNYLS (SEQ ID NO:149)
4B6	DIVMTQSPSSLAVSAGEKVTMSC (SEQ ID NO:151)	KSSQSLLISRTRKNYLS (SEQ ID NO:149)
1A10*	[used 4B6 LC: SEQ ID NO:151]	[used 4B6 LC: SEQ ID NO:149]
10D12	DVLMTQTPLTLSVTIGQPASISC (SEQ ID NO:152)	KSSQSLLDSDGKTYLN (SEQ ID NO:153)
35C1	DIVMTQAPLTLSVTIGQPASISC (SEQ ID NO:158)	KSSQSLLDSDGKTYLS (SEQ ID NO:159)
13B1	DIVMTQSPSSLAVSAGEKVTMSC (SEQ ID NO:151)	KSSQSLLNSRTRKNYLA (SEQ ID NO:142)
1G4	DVLMTQTPLSLPVSLGEQASISC (SEQ ID NO:162)	RSSQSLVQSNGNTYLH (SEQ ID NO:163)
2F5	DIVMTQSQKFMSTSVGDRVSITC (SEQ ID NO:168)	KASQNVGTAVA (SEQ ID NO:169)
1B11	DIVMTQSQKFMSTSVGDRVSVTC (SEQ ID NO:175)	KASQNVGPNVA (SEQ ID NO:176)
1E7	DIQLTQSPAILSVSPGERVSFSC (SEQ ID NO:181)	RASQSIGTSIH (SEQ ID NO:182)
2F2	DIVMTQSQKFMSTSVGDRVNVTC (SEQ ID NO:187)	KASQNVGTHVA (SEQ ID NO:188)
11B6	DIVMTQSQKFMSTSVGDRVNVTC (SEQ ID NO:187)	KASQNVGPTVA (SEQ ID NO:191)
2D7	DIQMTQTPASLSASLGDRVTISC (SEQ ID NO:195)	RASQDISNFLN (SEQ ID NO:196)
49C11	DVLMTQTPLSLPVSLGDQASFSC (SEQ ID NO:202)	RSSQSLIHSNGNTYLH (SEQ ID NO:203)
15D9	DIVMTQSQKFMSTSIGDRVSVTC (SEQ ID NO:205)	RASQNVGPNLA (SEQ ID NO:206)
Antibody	**LC FR2**	**LC CDR2**
4D5	WYQQKPGQSPKLLIY (SEQ ID NO:143)	WASTRES (SEQ ID NO:144)
1F3	WYQQKPGQSPKLLIY (SEQ ID NO:143)	WASTRES (SEQ ID NO:144)

4B6	WYQQKPGQSPKLLIY (SEQ ID NO:143)	WASTRES (SEQ ID NO:144)
1A10	[used 4B6 LC: SEQ ID NO:143]	[used 4B6 LC: SEQ ID NO:144]
10D12	WLLQRPGQSPKRLIY (SEQ ID NO:154)	LVSKLDS (SEQ ID NO:155)
35C1	WLLQRPGQSPKRLIY (SEQ ID NO:154)	LVSKLDS (SEQ ID NO:155)
13B1	WYQQKPGQSPKLLIY (SEQ ID NO:143)	WASTRES (SEQ ID NO:144)
1G4	WYLQKPGQSPKLLIY (SEQ ID NO:164)	KVSNRFS (SEQ ID NO:165)
2F5	WYQQKPGQSPKLLIS (SEQ ID NO:170)	SASNRYT (SEQ ID NO:171)
1B11	WYQQKPGQSPKALIY (SEQ ID NO:177)	SASYRYS (SEQ ID NO:178)
1E7	WYQQRTNGSPRLLIK (SEQ ID NO:183)	YASESIS (SEQ ID NO:184)
2F2	WYQQKPGQSPKALIY (SEQ ID NO:177)	SASYRYS (SEQ ID NO:178)
11B6	WYQQKPGQSPKALIY (SEQ ID NO:177)	SASYRYS (SEQ ID NO:178)
2D7	WYQQKPNGTVKLLVF (SEQ ID NO:197)	YTSRLHS (SEQ ID NO:198)
49C11	WYLQKPGQSPKLLIY (SEQ ID NO:164)	KVSNRFS (SEQ ID NO:165)
15D9	WYQQKPGQSPKALIY (SEQ ID NO:177)	SASYRFS (SEQ ID NO:207)
Antibody	**LC FR3**	**LC CDR3**
4D5	GVPDRFTGSGSGTDFSLTISSVQAEDLAVYYC (SEQ ID NO:145)	KQSYNLYT (SEQ ID NO:146)
1F3	GVPDRFTGSGSGTDFTLTISSVQAEDLAVYYC (SEQ ID NO:150)	KQSYNLYT (SEQ ID NO:146)
4B6	GVPDRFTGSGSGTDFTLTISSVQAEDLAVYYC (SEQ ID NO:150)	KQSYNLYT (SEQ ID NO:146)
1A10	[used 4B6 LC:	[used 4B6 LC:

	SEQ ID NO:150]	SEQ ID NO:146]
10D12	GVPDRFTGSGSGTDFTLKISRVEAEDLGVYYC (SEQ ID NO:156)	WQGTHFPWT (SEQ ID NO:157)
35C1	GVPDRFTGSGSGTDFTLKISRVEAEDLGVYYC (SEQ ID NO:156)	WQGTHFPYT (SEQ ID NO:160)
13B1	GVPDRFTGSGSGTDFTLTISSVQAEDLAVYYC (SEQ ID NO:150)	KQSYNIPT (SEQ ID NO:161)
1G4	GVPDRFSGSGSGTDFTLKISRVEAEDLGVYFC (SEQ ID NO:166)	SQSTHVPPT (SEQ ID NO:167)
2F5	GVPDRFTGSGSGTDFTLTISNMQSEDVADYFC (SEQ ID NO:172)	QQYNSYPLT (SEQ ID NO:173)
1B11	GVPDRFTGSGSGTDFTLTISNVQSEDLADYFC (SEQ ID NO:179)	QQYNRYPLT (SEQ ID NO:180)
1E7	GIPSRFSGSGSGTDFTLSINSVESEDIADYYC (SEQ ID NO:185)	QQSNSWPYT (SEQ ID NO:186)
2F2	GVPDRFTGSGSGTDFTLTISNVQSEDLAEYFC (SEQ ID NO:189)	QQYNSYPRALT (SEQ ID NO:190)
11B6	GVPDRFTGSGSGTDFTLTISNVHSEDLAEYFC (SEQ ID NO:192)	QQYNSYPFT (SEQ ID NO:193)
2D7	GVPSRFSGSGSGAEHSLTISNLEQEDVATYFC (SEQ ID NO:199)	QQGFTLPWT (SEQ ID NO:200)
49C11	GVPDRFSGSGSGTDFTLKISRVEAEDLGVYFC (SEQ ID NO:166)	SQSTHVPWT (SEQ ID NO:204)
15D9	GVPDRFTGSGSGTDFTLTISNVQSEDLAEYFC (SEQ ID NO:189)	QQYNRYPFT (SEQ ID NO:208)
Antibody	**LC FR4**	
4D5	FGGGTKLEIKR (SEQ ID NO:147)	
1F3	FGGGTKLEIKR (SEQ ID NO:147)	
4B6	FGGGTKLEIKR (SEQ ID NO:147)	
1A10	[used 4B6 LC: SEQ ID NO:147]	
10D12	FGGGTKLEIKR (SEQ ID NO:147)	

35C1	FGGGTKLEIKR (SEQ ID NO:147)	
13B1	FGGGTKLEIKR (SEQ ID NO:147)	
1G4	FGGGTKLEIKR (SEQ ID NO:147)	
2F5	FGAGTKLELKR (SEQ ID NO:174)	
1B11	FGAGTKLELKR (SEQ ID NO:174)	
1E7	FGGGTKLEIKR (SEQ ID NO:147)	
2F2	FGAGTKLELKR (SEQ ID NO:174)	
11B6	FGSGTKLEIKR (SEQ ID NO:194)	
2D7	FGGGTKVEIKR (SEQ ID NO:201)	
49C11	FGGGTKLEIKR (SEQ ID NO:147)	
15D9	FGSGTKLEIKR (SEQ ID NO:194)	

*Note: the light chain for mAb 1A10 was not identified, so the light chain from 4B6 was used with the 1A10 HC.

TABLE 20: Consensus Sequences for Group IA HC CDRs:

Antibody	**Region**	**Sequence**
4D5	HC-CDR1	TDDIN (SEQ ID NO:56)
1F3	HC-CDR1	SNDIN (SEQ ID NO:62)
4B6	HC-CDR1	SNDIN (SEQ ID NO:62)
1A10	HC-CDR1	SNDIN (SEQ ID NO:62)
Consensus	HC-CDR1	XXDIN (SEQ ID NO:209) wherein X at position 1 is S or T; and X at position 2 is N or D
4D5	HC-CDR2	WIYPRDDRTKYNDKFKD (SEQ ID NO:58)
1F3	HC-CDR2	WIYPRDGSIKYNEKFTD (SEQ ID NO:63)
4B6	HC-CDR2	WIYPRDGTTKYNEEFTD (SEQ ID NO:67)
1A10	HC-CDR2	WIYPRDGTTKYNEKFTD (SEQ ID NO:69)
Consensus	HC-CDR2	WIYPRDXXXKYNXXFXD (SEQ ID NO:210)

		wherein X at position 7 is G or D; X at position 8 is S, T or R; X at position 9 is I or T; X at position 13 is E or D; X at position 14 is K or E; X at position 16 is T or K
4D5	HC-CDR3	LEDTY (SEQ ID NO:60)
1F3	HC-CDR3	VEDSY (SEQ ID NO:65)
4B6	HC-CDR3	VEDSY (SEQ ID NO:65)
1A10	HC-CDR3	VEDSY (SEQ ID NO:65)
Consensus	HC-CDR3	XEDXY (SEQ ID NO:211) wherein X at position 1 is L or V, and wherein X at position 4 is T or S

TABLE 21: Consensus Sequences for Group IA LC CDRs:

Antibody	Region	Sequence
4D5	LC-CDR1	KSSQSLLNSRTRKNYLA (SEQ ID NO:142)
4D5-NQ	LC-CDR1	KSSQSLLQSRTRKNYLA (SEQ ID NO:257)
4D5-NA	LC-CDR1	KSSQSLLASRTRKNYLA (SEQ ID NO:258)
4D5-ST	LC-CDR1	KSSQSLLNTRTRKNYLA (SEQ ID NO:259)
1F3	LC-CDR1	KSSQSLLISRTRKNYLS (SEQ ID NO:149)
4B6	LC-CDR1	KSSQSLLISRTRKNYLS (SEQ ID NO:149)
Consensus*	LC-CDR1	KSSQSLLXXRTRKNYLX (SEQ ID NO:212) wherein X at position 8 is N, I, Q or A; wherein X at position 9 is S or T; and wherein X at position 17 is A or S
4D5	LC-CDR2	WASTRES (SEQ ID NO:144)
1F3	LC-CDR2	WASTRES (SEQ ID NO:144)
4B6	LC-CDR2	WASTRES (SEQ ID NO:144)
Consensus	LC-CDR2	WASTRES (SEQ ID NO:144)
4D5	LC-CDR3	KQSYNLYT (SEQ ID NO:146)
1F3	LC-CDR3	KQSYNLYT (SEQ ID NO:146)
4B6	LC-CDR3	KQSYNLYT (SEQ ID NO:146)
Consensus	LC-CDR3	KQSYNLYT (SEQ ID NO:146)

*Note: CDR-L1 consensus includes variants generated as described in Example 19.

TABLE 22 Consensus Sequences for Group IB HC CDRs:

Antibody	Region	Sequence
10D12	HC-CDR1	SYGMS (SEQ ID NO:72)
35C1	HC-CDR1	SYGIT (SEQ ID NO:79)
Consensus	HC-CDR1	SYGXX (SEQ ID NO:213) wherein X at position 4 is M or I; and wherein X at position 5 is S or T
10D12	HC-CDR2	WINTYSGVPTYADDFKG (SEQ ID NO:74)
35C1	HC-CDR2	WINTYSGVPTYADDFKG (SEQ ID NO:74)
Consensus	HC-CDR2	WINTYSGVPTYADDFKG (SEQ ID NO:74)

10D12	HC-CDR3	GGEAMDY (SEQ ID NO:76)
35C1	HC-CDR3	GGDALDY (SEQ ID NO:82)
Consensus	HC-CDR3	GGXAXDY (SEQ ID NO:214) wherein X at position 3 is E or D; and wherein X at position 5 is M or L

TABLE 23 Consensus Sequences for Group IB LC CDRs:

Antibody	**Region**	**Sequence**
10D12	LC-CDR1	KSSQSLLDSDGKTYLN (SEQ ID NO:153)
10D12-DE	LC-CDR1	KSSQSLLDSEGKTYLN (SEQ ID NO:261)
10D12-DA	LC-CDR1	KSSQSLLDSAGKTYLN (SEQ ID NO:262)
10D12-GA	LC-CDR1	KSSQSLLDSDAKTYLN (SEQ ID NO:263)
35C1	LC-CDR1	KSSQSLLDSDGKTYLS (SEQ ID NO:159)
Consensus*	LC-CDR1	KSSQSLLDSXXKTYLX (SEQ ID NO:215) Wherein X at position 10 is D, E or A; Wherein X at position 11 is G or A; and wherein X at position 16 is N or S
10D12	LC-CDR2	LVSKLDS (SEQ ID NO:155)
35C1	LC-CDR2	LVSKLDS (SEQ ID NO:155)
Consensus	LC-CDR2	LVSKLDS (SEQ ID NO:155)
10D12	LC-CDR3	WQGTHFPWT (SEQ ID NO:157)
35C1	LC-CDR3	WQGTHFPYT (SEQ ID NO:160)
Consensus	LC-CDR3	WQGTHFPXT **(SEQ ID NO: 216)** Wherein X at position 8 is W or Y

*Note: CDR-L1 consensus includes variants generated as described in Example 19.

DNA encoding mouse mAb heavy and light chains:

SEQ ID NO:217: DNA encoding 4D5 heavy chain variable region (parental)
CAGGTGCAGCTGAAGCAGTCTGGACCTGAGCTGGTGAAGCCTGGGGCTTCAGTG
AAGTTGTCCTGCAAGGCTTCTGGCTACACCTTCACAACCGACGATATAAACTGGG
TGAAGCAGAGGCCTGGACAGGGACTTGAGTGGATTGGATGGATTTATCCTAGAG
ATGATAGAACTAAGTACAATGACAAGTTCAAGGACAAGGCCACATTGACTGTAG
ACACATCTTCCAACACAGCGTACATGGACCTCCACAGCCTGACATCTGAGGACTC
TGCGGTCTATTTCTGTTCAAGCCTCGAGGATACTTACTGGGGCCAAGGGACTCTG
GTCGCTGTCTCTTCA

SEQ ID NO:218: DNA encoding 1F3 heavy chain variable region (parental)
CAGGTGCAGCTGAAGCAGTCTGGACCTGAGCTGGTGAAGCCTGGGGCTTCAGTG
AAGTTGTCCTGCAAGGCTTCTGGCTACACCTTCACAAGTAACGATATAAACTGGG
TGAAGCAGAGGCCTGGACAGGGACTTGAGTGGATTGGATGGATTTATCCTAGAG
ATGGGAGTATTAAATATAATGAGAAATTCACGGACAAGGCCACATTGACAGTTG
ACGTATCCTCCAGCACAGCGTACATGGAGCTCCACAGCCTGACATCTGAGGACTC

TGCGGTCTATTTCTGTTCAGGTGTCGAGGATTCTTACTGGGGCCAAGGGACTCTG
GTCACTGTCTCTTCA

SEQ ID NO:219: DNA encoding 4B6 heavy chain variable region (parental)
CAGGTGCAGCTGAAGCAGTCTGGACCTGAACTGGTGAAGCCTGGGGCTTCAGTG
AAATTGTCCTGCAAGGCTTCTGGCTACACCTTCACAAGTAACGATATAAACTGGG
TGAAACAGAGGCCTGGACAGGGACTTGAGTGGATTGGATGGATTTATCCTAGAG
ATGGTACTACTAAGTACAATGAGGAGTTCACGGACAAGGCCACATTGACTGTTG
ACGTATCCTCCAGCACAGCGTTCATGGAGCTCCACAGCCTGACATCTGAGGACTC
TGCTGTCTATTTCTGTTCAAGTGTCGAGGATTCTTACTGGGGCCAAGGGACTCTG
GTCACTGTCTCTTCA

SEQ ID NO:220: DNA encoding 1A10 heavy chain variable region (parental)
CAGGTGCAGCTGAAGCAGTCTGGACCTGAGCTGGTGAAGCCTGGGGCTTCAGTG
AAGTTGTCCTGCAAGGCTTCTGGCTACACCTTCACAAGTAACGATATAAACTGGG
TGAAGCAGAGGCCTGGACAGGGACTTGAGTGGATTGGATGGATTTATCCTAGAG
ATGGTACTACTAAGTACAATGAGAAGTTCACGGACAAGGCCACATTGACTGTTG
ACGTATCCTCCAGCACAGCGTTCATGGAGCTCCACAGGCTGACATCTGAGGACTC
TGCGGTCTATTTCTGTTCAAGTGTCGAGGATTCTTACTGGGGCCAAGGGACTCTG
GTCACTGTCTCTTCA

SEQ ID NO:221: DNA encoding 10D12 heavy chain variable region (parental)
CAGATCCAGTTGGTACAGTCTGGACCTGAGCTGAAGAAGCCTGGAGAGACAGTC
AAGATCTCCTGCAAGGCTTCTGGGTATATTTTCACAAGCTATGGAATGAGCTGGG
TGAGACAGGCTCCAGGAAAGGGTTTAAAGTGGATGGGCTGGATAAACACCTACT
CTGGAGTGCCAACATATGCTGATGACTTCAAGGGACGGTTTGCCTTCTCTTTGGA
AACCTCTGCCAGAACTCCCTATTTGCAGATCAACAACCTCAAAAATGAGGACAC
GGCTACATATTTCTGCGCAAGAGGGGGCGAAGCTATGGACTACTGGGGTCAAGG
AACCTCAGTCACCGTCTCCTCA

SEQ ID NO:222: DNA encoding 35C1 heavy chain variable region (parental)
CAGATCCAGTTGGTACAGTCTGGACCTGAGCTGAAGACGCCAGGAGAGACAGTC
AAGATCTCCTGCAAGGCTTCTGGGTATATCTTCACATCCTATGGAATTACCTGGG
TGAAACAGGCTCCAGGAAAGGGTTTAAAGTGGATGGGCTGGATAAACACCTACT
CTGGAGTGCCAACATATGCTGATGACTTCAAGGGACGGTTTGCCTTCTCTTTGGA
AACGTCTGCCAGCACTGCCTATTTGCAGATCAACAACCTCAAAAATGAGGACAC
GACTACATATTTCTGTACAAGAGGGGGTGATGCTTTGGACTACTGGGGTCAAGGA
ACCTCAGTCACCGTCTCCTCA

SEQ ID NO:223: DNA encoding 13B1 heavy chain variable region (parental)
CAGGTGCAGCTGAAGCAGTCTGGAGCTGAGCTGATGAAGCCTGGGGCCTCAGTG
AAGCTTTCCTGCAAGGCTACTGGCTACACATTCACTGGCAAGTGGATAGAGTGGG
TAAAACAGAGGCCTGGACATGGCCTAGAGTGGATTGGAGAGATTTTACCTGGAA
CTGGTAGTACTAACTACAATGAGAAGTTCAAGGGCAAGGCCACATTCACTGCAG
ACTCATCCTCCAACACAGCCTACATGCAACTCAGCAGCCTGACAACTGAAGACTC
TGCTATGTATTATTGTTTAAGATCCGAGGATGTCTGGGGCACAGGGACCACGGTC
ACCGTCTCCTCA

SEQ ID NO:224: DNA encoding 1G4 heavy chain variable region (parental)
CAGGTGCAGCTGAAGCAGTCTGGAGCTGAGCTGATGAAGCCTGGGGCCTCAGTG
AAGCTTGCCTGCAAGGCTACTGGCTACACATTCACTGGCTACTGGATAGAGTGGA
TAAAGCAGAGGCCTGGACAAGGCCTTGAGTGGATTGGAGAGATGTTACCTGGAA

GTGGTAGTACTCACTACAATGAGAAGTTCAAGGGTAAGGCCACATTCACTGCAG
ATACATCCTCCAACACAGCCTACATGCAACTCAGCGGCCTGACAACTGAGGACT
CTGCCATCTATTACTGTGTAAGAAGCATAGACTACTGGGGCCAAGGCACCACTCT
CACAGTCTCCTCA

SEQ ID NO:225: DNA encoding 1E7 heavy chain variable region (parental)
CAGGTGCAGCTGAAGCAGTCTGGGCCTGAGCTGGCAAGGCCTTGGGCTTCAGTG
AAGATATCCTGCCAGGCTTTCTACACCTTTTCCAGAAGGGTGCACTTTGCCATTA
GGGATACCAACTACTGGATGCAGTGGGTAAAACAGAGGCCTGGACAGGGTCTGG
AATGGATCGGGGCTATTTATCCTGGAAATGGTGATACTAGTTACAATCAGAAGTT
CAAGGGCAAGGCCACATTGACTGCAGACAAATCCTCCAGCACAGCCTACATGCA
ACTCAGCAGCCTGACATCTGAGGACTCTGCGGTCTATTACTGTGCATCCGGTAGC
CACTACTTTGACTACTGGGGCCAAGGCACCACTCTCACAGTCTCCTCA

SEQ ID NO:226: DNA encoding 2D7 heavy chain variable region (parental)
GAGGTCCAGCTGCAACAATCTGGGCCTGAGCTGGTGAAGCCTGGGGCTTCAGTG
AAGGTATCCTGTAAGGCTTCTGGATACACGCTCACTGACTACTACATGAACTGGG
TGAAGCAGAGCCATGGAAAGAGCCTTGAGTGGATTGGAGATGTTAATCCTAACA
ATGATGGTACTACCTACAACCAGAAATTCAAGGGCAGGGCCACATTGACTGTAG
ACAAGTCTTCCAACACAGCCTCCATGGAGCTCCGCAGCCTGACATCTGAGGACTC
TGCAGTCTACTACTGTGCAATATGCCCCTTTTATTACCTCGGTAAAGGGACCCAC
TTTGACTACTGGGGCCAAGGCACCTCTCTCACAGTCTCCTCA

SEQ ID NO:227: DNA encoding 49C11 heavy chain variable region (parental)
GAGGTCCAGCTGCAACAATCTGGACCTGTGCTGGTGAAGCCTGGGGCTTCAGGG
AAGATGTCCTGTAAGGCTTCTGGATACAAATTCACTGACTACTATATGATCTGGG
TGAAGCAGAGCCATGGAAAGAGCCTTGAGTGGATTGGAGTTATTAAAATTTATA
ACGGTGGTACGAGCTACAACCAGAAGTTCAAGGGCAAGGCCACATTGACTGTTG
ACAAGTCCTCCAGCACAGCCTACATGGAGCTCAACAGCCTGACATCTGAGGACT
CTGCAGTCTATTACTGTGCAAGAGGGCCATCTCTCTATGATTACGACCCTTACTG
GTACTTCGATGTCTGGGGCACAGGGACCACGGTCACCGTCTCCTCA

SEQ ID NO:228: DNA encoding 15D9 heavy chain variable region (parental)
CAGGTGCAGCTGAAGCAGTCTGGAACTGAGCTGATGAAGCCTGGGGCCTCAGTG
AACCTTTCCTGCAAGGCTTCTGGCTACACATTCACTGCCTACTGGATAGAGTGGG
TAAAGCAGAGGCCTGGACATGGCCTTGAGTGGATTGGAGAGATTTTACCTGGAA
GTGGTACTACTAACTACAATGAGAACTTCAAGGACAGGGCCACATTCACTGCAG
ATACATCCTCCAACACAGCCTACATGCAACTCAGCAGCCTGACAAGTGAGGACT
CTGCCATCTATTACTGTGCAAGATCCTATTACTACGCTAGTAGATGGTTTGCTTTC
TGGGGCCAAGGGACTCTGGTCACTGTCTCTTCA

SEQ ID NO:229: DNA encoding 2F5 heavy chain variable region (parental)
GAGGTCCAGCTGCAGCAGCCTGGGGCTGAGCTTGTGAAGCCTGGGGCTTCAGTG
AAGATGTCCTGTAAGGCTTCTGGCTACACCTTCACCAGCTACTGGATAACCTGGG
TGAAGCAGAGGCCTGGACAAGGCCTTGAGTGGATTGGAGATATTTATCCTGGTA
GTGGTAGTACTAACTACAATGAGAAGTTCAAGAGCAAGGCCACACTGACTGTAG
ACACATCCTCCAGCACAGCCTACATGCAGCTCAGCAGCCTGACATCTGAGGACTC
TGCGGTCTATTACTGTGCAAGAAGGAGATACTACGCTACGGCCTGGTTTGCTTAC
TGGGGCCAAGGGACTCTGGTCACTGTCTCTTCA

SEQ ID NO:230: DNA encoding 1B11 heavy chain variable region (parental)

CAGGTGCAGCTGAAGCAGTCTGGGGCTGAGCTGGTGAGGCCTGGGGCTTCAGTG
AAGCTGTCCTGCAAGGCTTCTGGCTACACTTTCACTGACTACTATATAAACTGGG
TGAAGCAGAGGCCTGGACAGGGACTTGAGTGGATTGCAAGGATTTATCCTGGAA
GTGGTAATACTTACTACAATGAGAAGTTCAAGGGCAAGGCCACACTGACTGCAG
AAAAATCCTCCAGCACTGCCTACATGCAGCTCAGCAGCCTGACATCTGAGGACTC
TGCTGTCTATTTCTGTGCAAGAAATTACTACATTAGTAGTCCCTGGTTTGCTTACT
GGGGCCAAGGGACTCTGGTCACTGTCTCTTCA

SEQ ID NO:231: DNA encoding 2F2 heavy chain variable region (parental)
CAGGTGCAGCTGAAGCAGTCTGGGGCTGAGCTAGTGACGCCTGGAGCCTCAGTG
AAGATGTCCTGCAAGGCTTCTGGCTACACCTTCACTACCTATCCTATAGAGTGGA
TGAAACAGAATCATGGAAAGAGCCTAGAGTGGATTGGAAATTTTCATCCTTACA
ATGATGATACTAAGTACAATGAAAAGTTCAAGGGCAAGGCCACATTGACTGTAG
AAAAATCCTCTAACACAGTCTACTTGGAGCTCAGCCGATTAACATCTGATGACTC
TGCTGTTTATTTCTGTGCAAGGAGGGTCTACTATAGTTACTTCTGGTTTGGTTACT
GGGGCCACGGGACTCTGGTCACTGTCTCTTCA

SEQ ID NO:232: DNA encoding 11B6 heavy chain variable region (Parental)
CAGGTGCAGCTGAAGCAGTCTGGGGCTGAGCTAGTGAAACCTGGAGCCTCAGTG
AAGATGTCCTGCAAGGCTTCTGGCTACACCTTCACTACCTATCCTATAGAGTGGA
TGAAGCAGAATCATGGGAAGAGCCTAGAGTGGATTGGAAATTTTCATCCTTACA
ATGGTGATTCTAAGTACAATGAAAAGTTCAAGGGCAAGGCCACCTTGACTGTAG
AAAAATCCTCTAGCACAGTCTACTTAGAACTCAGCCGATTACCATCTGCTGACTC
TGCTATTTATTACTGTGCAAGGAGGCACTACGCTGCTAGTCCCTGGTTTGCTCACT
GGGGCCAAGGGACTCTGGTCACTGTCTCTTCA

DNA encoding light chain variable region (mouse mAbs):

SEQ ID NO:233: DNA encoding 4D5 light chain variable region (parental)
GACATTGTGATGACCCAGTCTCCATCCTCCCTGGCTGTGTCAGCAGGAGAGAAGG
TCACTATGACCTGCAAATCCAGTCAGAGTCTGCTCAACAGTAGAACCCGAAAGA
ACTACTTGGCTTGGTACCAGCAGAAACCAGGGCAGTCTCCTAAACTGCTGATCTA
CTGGGCATCCACTAGGGAATCTGGGGTCCCTGATCGCTTCACAGGCAGTGGATCT
GGGACAGATTTCTCTCTCACCATCAGCAGTGTGCAGGCTGAAGACCTGGCAGTTT
ATTACTGCAAGCAATCTTATAATCTGTACACGTTCGGAGGGGGGACCAAGCTGG
AAATAAAACGG

SEQ ID NO:234: DNA encoding 1F3 light chain variable region (parental)
GACATTGTGATGACCCAGTCTCCATCCTCCCTGGCTGTGTCAGCAGGAGAGAGGG
TCACTATGAGCTGCAAATCCAGTCAGAGTCTGCTCATCAGTAGAACCCGAAAGA
ACTATTTGTCTTGGTACCAGCAGAAACCAGGGCAGTCTCCTAAACTGCTGATCTA
CTGGGCATCCACTAGGGAATCTGGGGTCCCTGATCGCTTCACAGGCAGTGGATCT
GGGACAGATTTCACTCTCACCATCAGCAGTGTACAGGCTGAAGACCTGGCAGTTT
ATTACTGCAAGCAATCTTATAATCTGTACACGTTCGGCGGGGGGACCAAGCTGGA
AATAAAACGG

SEQ ID NO:235: DNA encoding 4B6/1A10 light chain variable region (parental)
GACATTGTGATGACCCAGTCTCCATCCTCCCTGGCTGTGTCAGCAGGAGAGAAGG
TCACTATGAGCTGCAAATCCAGTCAGAGTCTGCTCATCAGTAGAACCCGAAAGA
ACTATTTGTCTTGGTACCAGCAGAAACCAGGGCAGTCTCCTAAACTGCTGATCTA
TTGGGCATCCACTAGGGAATCTGGGGTCCCTGATCGCTTCACAGGCAGTGGATCT

GGGACAGATTTCACTCTCACCATCAGCAGTGTACAGGCTGAAGACCTGGCAGTTT
ATTACTGCAAACAATCTTATAATCTGTACACGTTCGGCGGGGGGACCAAGCTGGA
AATCAAACGG

SEQ ID NO:236: DNA encoding 10D12 light chain variable region (parental)
GATGTTTTGATGACCCAAACTCCACTCACTTTGTCGGTTACCATTGGACAACCAG
CCTCCATCTCTTGCAAGTCAAGTCAGAGCCTCTTAGATAGTGATGGAAAGACATA
TTTGAATTGGTTGTTACAGAGGCCAGGCCAGTCTCCAAAGCGCCTAATCTATCTG
GTGTCTAAACTGGACTCTGGAGTCCCTGACAGGTTCACTGGCAGTGGATCAGGGA
CAGATTTCACACTGAAAATCAGCAGAGTGGAGGCTGAGGATTTGGGAGTTTATT
ATTGCTGGCAAGGTACACATTTTCCGTGGACGTTCGGTGGAGGCACCAAGCTGGA
AATCAAACGG

SEQ ID NO:237: DNA encoding 35C1 light chain variable region (parental)
GATATTGTGATGACGCAGGCTCCACTCACTTTGTCGGTTACCATTGGACAACCAG
CCTCCATCTCTTGCAAGTCAAGTCAGAGCCTCTTAGATAGTGATGGAAAGACATA
TTTGAGTTGGTTGTTACAGAGGCCAGGCCAGTCTCCAAAGCGCCTAATCTATCTG
GTGTCTAAACTGGACTCTGGAGTCCCTGACAGGTTCACTGGCAGTGGATCAGGGA
CAGATTTCACACTGAAAATCAGCAGAGTGGAGGCTGAGGATTTGGGAGTTTATT
ATTGCTGGCAAGGTACACATTTTCCGTACACGTTCGGAGGGGGGACCAAGCTGG
AAATAAAACGG

SEQ ID NO:238: DNA encoding 13B1 light chain variable region (parental)
GACATTGTGATGACCCAGTCTCCATCCTCCCTGGCTGTGTCAGCAGGAGAGAAGG
TCACTATGAGCTGCAAATCCAGTCAGAGTCTGCTCAACAGTAGAACCCGAAAGA
ACTACTTGGCTTGGTACCAGCAGAAACCAGGGCAGTCTCCTAAACTGCTGATCTA
CTGGGCATCCACTAGGGAATCTGGGGTCCCTGATCGCTTCACAGGCAGTGGATCT
GGAACAGATTTCACTCTCACCATCAGCAGTGTGCAGGCTGAAGACCTGGCAGTTT
ATTACTGCAAGCAATCTTATAATATTCCGACGTTCGGTGGAGGCACCAAGCTGGA
AATCAAACGG

SEQ ID NO:239: DNA encoding 1G4 light chain variable region (parental)
GATGTTTTGATGACCCAAACTCCACTCTCCCTGCCTGTCAGTCTTGGAGAACAAG
CCTCCATCTCTTGCAGATCAAGTCAGAGCCTTGTACAAAGTAATGGAAACACCTA
TTTACATTGGTACCTGCAGAAGCCAGGCCAGTCTCCAAAGCTCCTGATCTACAAA
GTTTCCAACCGATTTTCTGGGGTCCCAGACAGGTTCAGTGGCAGTGGATCAGGGA
CAGATTTCACACTCAAGATCAGCAGAGTGGAGGCTGAGGATCTGGGAGTTTATTT
CTGCTCTCAAAGTACACATGTTCCTCCGACGTTCGGTGGAGGCACCAAGCTGGAA
ATCAAACGG

SEQ ID NO:240: DNA encoding 1E7 light chain variable region (parental)
GACATCCAGCTGACTCAGTCTCCAGCCATCCTGTCTGTGAGTCCAGGAGAAAGAG
TCAGTTTCTCCTGCAGGGCCAGTCAGAGCATTGGCACAAGCATACACTGGTATCA
GCAAAGAACAAATGGTTCTCCAAGGCTTCTCATAAAGTATGCTTCTGAGTCTATC
TCTGGGATCCCTTCCAGGTTTAGTGGCAGTGGATCAGGGACAGATTTTACTCTTA
GCATCAACAGTGTGGAGTCTGAAGATATTGCAGATTATTACTGTCAACAAAGTAA
TAGCTGGCCGTACACGTTCGGAGGGGGGACCAAGCTGGAAATAAAACGG

SEQ ID NO:241: DNA encoding 2D7 light chain variable region (parental)
GATATCCAGATGACACAGACTCCAGCCTCCCTGTCTGCCTCTCTGGGAGACAGAG
TCACCATCAGTTGTAGGGCAAGTCAGGACATTAGCAATTTTTTAAACTGGTATCA
ACAGAAACCGAATGGAACTGTTAAACTCCTAGTCTTCTACACATCAAGATTACAC

TCAGGAGTCCCATCAAGGTTCAGTGGCAGTGGGTCTGGAGCAGAGCATTCTCTCA
CCATTAGCAACCTGGAGCAGGAAGATGTTGCCACTTACTTTTGCCAACAGGGTTT
TACGCTTCCGTGGACGTTCGGTGGGGGCACCAAGGTGGAAATCAAACGG

SEQ ID NO:242: DNA encoding 49C11 light chain variable region (parental)
GATGTTTTGATGACCCAAACTCCACTCTCCCTGCCTGTCAGTCTTGGAGATCAAG
CCTCCTTCTCTTGCAGATCTAGTCAGAGCCTTATACACAGTAATGGAAACACCTA
TTTACATTGGTACCTGCAGAAGCCAGGCCAGTCTCCAAAGCTCCTGATCTACAAA
GTTTCCAACCGATTTTCTGGGGTCCCAGACAGGTTCAGTGGCAGTGGATCAGGGA
CAGATTTCACACTCAAGATCAGCAGAGTGGAGGCTGAGGATCTGGGAGTTTATTT
CTGCTCTCAAAGTACACATGTTCCGTGGACGTTCGGTGGAGGCACCAAGCTGGAA
ATCAAACGG

SEQ ID NO:243: DNA encoding 15D9 light chain variable region (parental)
GACATTGTGATGACCCAGTCTCAAAAATTCATGTCCACATCAATAGGAGACAGG
GTCAGCGTCACCTGCAGGGCCAGTCAGAATGTGGGTCCCAATTTAGCCTGGTATC
AACAGAAACCAGGGCAATCTCCTAAAGCACTGATTTACTCGGCATCCTACCGATT
CAGTGGAGTCCCTGATCGCTTCACAGGCAGTGGATCTGGGACAGATTTCACTCTC
ACCATCAGCAATGTGCAGTCTGAAGACTTGGCAGAGTATTTCTGTCAGCAATATA
ACAGGTATCCATTCACGTTCGGCTCGGGGACAAAGTTGGAAATAAAACGG

SEQ ID NO:244: DNA encoding 2F5 light chain variable region (parental)
GACATTGTGATGACCCAGTCTCAAAAATTCATGTCCACATCAGTAGGAGACAGG
GTCAGCATCACCTGCAAGGCCAGTCAGAATGTGGGTACTGCTGTAGCCTGGTATC
AACAGAAACCAGGACAATCTCCTAAACTACTGATTTCCTCGGCATCCAATCGGTA
CACTGGAGTCCCTGATCGCTTCACAGGCAGTGGATCTGGGACAGATTTCACTCTC
ACCATCAGTAATATGCAGTCTGAAGACGTGGCAGATTATTTCTGCCAGCAATATA
ACAGCTATCCTCTCACGTTCGGTGCTGGGACCAAGCTGGAGCTGAAACGG

SEQ ID NO:245: DNA encoding 1B11 light chain variable region (parental)
GACATTGTGATGACCCAGTCTCAAAAATTCATGTCCACTTCAGTAGGAGACAGGG
TCAGCGTCACCTGCAAGGCCAGTCAGAATGTGGGTCCTAATGTAGCCTGGTATCA
ACAGAAACCAGGGCAATCTCCTAAAGCACTGATTTACTCGGCATCCTACCGGTAC
AGTGGAGTCCCTGATCGCTTCACAGGCAGTGGATCTGGGACAGATTTCACTCTCA
CCATCAGCAATGTGCAGTCTGAAGACTTGGCAGACTATTTCTGTCAGCAATATAA
CCGCTATCCTCTCACGTTCGGTGCTGGGACCAAACTGGAGCTGAAACGG

SEQ ID NO:246: DNA encoding 2F2 light chain variable region (parental)
GACATTGTGATGACCCAGTCTCAAAAATTCATGTCCACATCAGTAGGAGACAGG
GTCAACGTCACCTGCAAGGCCAGTCAGAATGTGGGTACTCATGTAGCCTGGTATC
AACAGAAACCAGGGCAATCTCCTAAAGCACTGATTTACTCGGCATCCTACCGGTA
CAGTGGCGTCCCTGATCGCTTCACAGGCAGTGGATCTGGGACAGATTTCACTCTC
ACCATCAGCAATGTGCAGTCTGAAGACCTGGCAGAGTATTTCTGTCAGCAATATA
ACAGCTATCCTCGAGCGCTCACGTTCGGTGCTGGGACCAAGCTGGAGCTGAAAC
GG

SEQ ID NO:247: DNA encoding 11B6 light chain variable region (parental)
GACATTGTGATGACCCAGTCTCAAAAATTCATGTCCACATCAGTAGGAGACAGG
GTCAACGTCACCTGCAAGGCCAGTCAGAATGTGGGTCCTACTGTAGCCTGGTATC
AACAGAAACCAGGGCAATCTCCTAAAGCACTAATTTACTCGGCATCCTACCGGTA
CAGTGGAGTCCCTGATCGCTTCACAGGCAGTGGATCTGGGACAGATTTCACTCTC

ACCATCAGCAATGTGCACTCTGAAGACTTGGCAGAGTATTTCTGTCAGCAATATA
ACAGCTATCCATTCACGTTCGGCTCGGGGACAAAGTTGGAAATAAAACGG

SEQ ID NO:310: human IgG4 constant region
ASTKGPSVFPLAPCSRSTSESTAALGCLVKDYFPEPVTVSWNSGALTSGVHTFPAVLQ
SSGLYSLSSVVTVPSSSLGTKTYTCNVDHKPSNTKVDKRVESKYGPPCPSCPAPEFLG
GPSVFLFPPKPKDTLMISRTPEVTCVVVDVSQEDPEVQFNWYVDGVEVHNAKTKPR
EEQFNSTYRVVSVLTVLHQDWLNGKEYKCKVSNKGLPSSIEKTISKAKGQPREPQVY
TLPPSQEEMTKNQVSLTCLVKGFYPSDIAVEWESNGQPENNYKTTPPVLDSDGSFFL
YSRLTVDKSRWQEGNVFSCSVMHEALHNHYTQKSLSLSLGK

SEQ ID NO:311: human IgG4 constant region with S228P mutation
ASTKGPSVFPLAPCSRSTSESTAALGCLVKDYFPEPVTVSWNSGALTSGVHTFPAVLQ
SSGLYSLSSVVTVPSSSLGTKTYTCNVDHKPSNTKVDKRVESKYGPPCPPCPAPEFLG
GPSVFLFPPKPKDTLMISRTPEVTCVVVDVSQEDPEVQFNWYVDGVEVHNAKTKPR
EEQFNSTYRVVSVLTVLHQDWLNGKEYKCKVSNKGLPSSIEKTISKAKGQPREPQVY
TLPPSQEEMTKNQVSLTCLVKGFYPSDIAVEWESNGQPENNYKTTPPVLDSDGSFFL
YSRLTVDKSRWQEGNVFSCSVMHEALHNHYTQKSLSLSLGK

SEQ ID NO:312: human IgG4 constant region with S228P mutation and and also a mutation (Xtend) that promotes FcRn interations at low pH

ASTKGPSVFPLAPCSRSTSESTAALGCLVKDYFPEPVTVSWNSGALTSGVHTFPAVLQ
SSGLYSLSSVVTVPSSSLGTKTYTCNVDHKPSNTKVDKRVESKYGPPCPPCPAPEFLG
GPSVFLFPPKPKDTLMISRTPEVTCVVVDVSQEDPEVQFNWYVDGVEVHNAKTKPR
EEQFNSTYRVVSVLTVLHQDWLNGKEYKCKVSNKGLPSSIEKTISKAKGQPREPQVY
TLPPSQEEMTKNQVSLTCLVKGFYPSDIAVEWESNGQPENNYKTTPPVLDSDGSFFL
YSRLTVDKSRWQEGNVFSCSVLHEALHSHYTQKSLSLSLGK

SEQ ID NO:313: human IgK constant region
TVAAPSVFIFPPSDEQLKSGTASVVCLLNNFYPREAKVQWKVDNALQSGNSQESVTE
QDSKDSTYSLSSTLTLSKADYEKHKVYACEVTHQGLSSPVTKSFNRGEC

EXAMPLE 16

This Example describes functional characterization of recombinant purified high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory antibodies in several *in vitro* assays.

Methods:

The recombinant MASP-3 mAbs generated as described in Examples 11 and 14 were characterized for (i) binding to human MASP-3 and other species' MASP-3; (ii) the ability to inhibit cleavage of an artificial substrate; (iii) the capacity to inhibit pro-factor D to factor D cleavage; (iv) inhibition of complement deposition in human serum and (v) inhibition of rabbit erythrocyte lysis in human serum as follows:

1. **Assays to Determine Binding to human and mouse MASP-3**

ELISA Assays:

MASP-3 Binding Assay with purified recombinant MASP-3 mAbs:

Human MASP-3:

A sandwich ELISA assay was carried out to measure binding of 16 purified recombinant MASP-3 antibodies to human MASP-3 (CCP1-CCP2-SP fragment) as follows. An ELISA plate was coated in carbonate/bi-carbonate buffer overnight at 4^0C with capture antibody αM3-259 at 4 µg/mL. αM3-259 is a high avidity recombinant, chimeric chicken-human MASP-3 mAb from chickens immunized with the CCP1-CCP2-SP region of human MASP-3. Domain mapping studies revealed that αM3-259 binds the CCP1-CCP2 region of MASP-3 from multiple species, including human, cynomolgus monkey, mouse, rat and dog. As shown in FIGURE 51C, αM3-259 also binds to MASP-1.

The plate was subsequently blocked with 1% BSA/PBS, washed in PBS and then incubated for one hour at room temperature with MASP-3 CCP1-CCP2-SP (2 µg/mL). The plate was then washed (PBS-T, 0.05%) and the candidate MASP-3 antibodies were added followed by incubation for one hour at room temperature. The plate was washed (PBS-T, 0.05%) and a detection antibody was added (mouse anti-human kappa-HRP, SouthernBiotech #9230-05) for one hour at room temperature. After another wash (PBS-T, 0.05%) the plate was developed (5 minutes) with OPT EIA TMB (BD Biosciences #555214). Absorbance reading at A450 was measured using the Spectramax M5e plate reader.

Results:

FIGURE 51A and **FIGURE 51B** graphically illustrate the avidities of MASP-3 mAbs (purified recombinant) for human MASP-3 (CCP1-CCP2-SP). As shown in FIGURE 51A, FIGURE 51B, and Table 24, the MASP-3 mAbs have high avidity for human MASP-3, ranging from 0.241 nM to 0.023 nM. These values are 10 to 100-fold lower than those reported for the previously described MASP-3 mAbs (see Example 7 herein, also published as Example 15 in WO2013/192240).

MASP-3 mAb Binding Specificity:

To determine the specificity of the high affinity MASP-3 mabs for MASP-3, binding experiments were carried out to measure binding of 16 purified recombinant MASP-3 antibodies to human MASP-1 and to human MASP-2. Binding was determined as described for the MASP-3 binding ELISA, except that recombinant MASP-1A (S646A, CCP1-CCP2-SP fragment) and MASP-2 (CCP1-CCP2-SP fragment) were immobilized directly on the plate.

Results:

FIGURE 51C graphically illustrates the results of a binding experiment in which representative purified recombinant high affinity human MASP-3 inhibitory antibodies are shown to be selective for binding to MASP-3 and do not bind to human MASP-1.

FIGURE 51D graphically illustrates the results of a binding experiment in which representative purified recombinant high affinity human MASP-3 inhibitory antibodies are shown to be selective for binding to MASP-3 and do not bind to human MASP-2.

Mouse MASP-3:

Binding of the MASP-3 mAbs to mouse MASP-3 was measured as described above for human MASP-3 except that recombinant, full-length mouse MASP-3 (SEQ ID NO:3) was captured on the plate with αM3-259. The negative control mAb used in both experiments was mAb77, a recombinant, chimeric chicken-human mAb obtained from the same immunized chickens as αM3-259, however, mAb 77 does not bind mouse MASP-3.

Results:

FIGURE 52 graphically illustrates the avidities of representative MASP-3 mAbs (purified recombinant) for mouse full length MASP-3. As shown in FIGURE 52, most of the MASP-3 mAbs tested also have high avidity for mouse MASP-3.

The avidity values (EC_{50}) of the 16 recombinant chimeric MASP-3 mAbs for human and mouse MASP-3 are summarized in TABLE 24.

TABLE 24: Binding Avidity of MASP-3 mAbs for human and mouse MASP-3 (FIGURES 51A, 51B and 52)

Antibody clone	**Antigen used to generate mAb**	**Human MASP-3 (CCP1-CCP2-SP) Binding Avidity (EC_{50} nM)**	**Mouse MASP-3 (full length) Binding Avidity (EC_{50} nM)**

1A10*	SP	0.241	0.15
1B11	SP	0.059	1.10
1E7	SP	0.112	117.00
1F3	SP	0.236	0.111
1G4	SP	0.177	3.70
2D7	SP	0.122	NA
2F2	SP	0.057	0.105
2F5	SP	0.073	0.102
4B6	SP	0.211	0.188
4D5	SP	0.058	0.098
10D12	CCP1-CCP2-SP	0.089	0.081
11B6	CCP1-CCP2-SP	0.060	0.066
13B1	CCP1-CCP2-SP	0.059	0.035
15D9	CCP1-CCP2-SP	0.074	0.092
35C1	CCP1-CCP2-SP	0.091	0.209
49C11	CCP1-CCP2-SP	0.069	0.064

Three of the MASP-3 mAbs- 13B1, 10D12 and 4D5 - were also tested for binding to recombinant cynomolgus monkey, dog, and rat MASP-3. These results are summarized below in Table 25.

TABLE 25: Summary of MASP-3 mAb Cross-Species Binding Experiments

Species of MASP-3	**Ranking of Fab Binding**
Human	13B1 (pM) ≈ 10D12 (pM) ≈ 4D5 (pM)
Cynomolgus monkey	13B1 (pM) ≈ 4D5 (pM) > 10D12 (pM)
Dog	13B1 (pM) > 10D12 (pM) >> 4D5 (nM)
Rat	13B1 (pM) ≈ 10D12 (pM) >> 4D5 (nM)
Mouse	10D12 (pM) > 13B1 (pM) >> 4D5 (nM)

As shown in TABLE 25, MASP-3 mAbs 13B1, 10D12 and 4D5 bind to all five species of MASP-3 tested (human, mouse, rat, dog and cynomolgus monkey). While these mAbs bind

to human with high avidity (≤500 pM), they bind to other species of MASP-3 with varying avidities.

2. Fluorogenic Tripeptide Cleavage Assay

Background/Rationale:

In addition to its known natural substrates (Iwaki et al., *J. Immunol.* 187:3751, 2011; Cortesio and Jiang, *Arch. Biochem. Biophys.* 449:164-170, 2006), MASP-3 has been shown to hydrolyze various tripeptide substrates (Cortesio and Jiang, Ibid.). As very small substrates, these molecules can be used to map the catalytic site of the protease. Inhibition of tri-peptide cleavage is an indication that an inhibitory agent, such as an antibody, either directly blocks access of the small substrate to the catalytic site or causes a conformational shift in the SP domain that similarly denies access. As such, the antibody can also be expected to block catalysis of the large natural substrates by interfering with the active site of the enzyme. Functionally, this would most closely approximate the MASP-3 null mouse or 3MC patient (deficient in MASP-3).

Methods:

Titrations of the recombinant mAbs (3-fold dilution from 666 nM to 0.91 nM) were incubated with MASP-3 CCP1-CCP2-SP (197 nM) for 15 minutes at room temperature. Tri-peptide substrate BOC-V-P-R-AMC (t-Butyloxycarbonyl-Val-Pro-Arg-7-Amino-4-methylcoumarin) (R&D Systems, Cat. No. ES011) was added at a final concentration of 0.2 mM. Hydrolysis of the Arg-AMC amide bond releases AMC, a highly fluorescent group. Excitation 380nm/emission 460nm kinetic values were recorded every 5 minutes at 37^{0}C for 70 minutes using the Spectramax M5e fluorescence plate reader.

Results:

FIGURE 53 graphically illustrates the results of the assay measuring inhibition of MASP-3-dependent fluorogenic tripeptide cleavage with the MASP-3 monoclonal antibodies. As shown in FIGURE 53, the MASP-3 mAbs tested fall into three distinct groups:

1. MASP-3 mAbs that are strong inhibitors of peptide cleavage by MASP-3: 1A10 (29.77 nM), 1G4 (29.64 nM), 1F3 (32.99 nM), 4B6 (26.03 nM), 4D5 (27.54 nM), 10D12 (30.94 nM) and 13B1 (30.13 nM).
2. MASP-3 mAbs that are weak or very weak inhibitors of peptide cleavage by MASP-3: 15D9, 11B6, 2F5, 1E7 and 2D7

3. MASP-3 mAbs that are neutral or appear to stimulate peptide cleavage by MASP-3: 1B11; 2F2; 77 (control mAb)

3. **Inhibition of Pro-Factor D to Factor D Cleavage**

Methods:

Active, recombinant human MASP-3 protein (240 ng per reaction) was pre-incubated with representative MASP-3 mAbs and a control mAb (which binds to MASP-1 but not to MASP-3) in GVB++ buffer with a total volume of 9 µL at room temperature for 15 minutes. 70 ng of pro-factor D with an N-terminal Strep-tag II epitope tag (ST-pro-factor D-His) was then added to each tube to make the final volume per reaction to 10 µL. The reactions were incubated in a thermocycler at 37°C for 6 hours. One tenth from each reaction was then electrophoresed on a 12% Bis-Tris gel to resolve pro-factor D and active factor D cleavage product. The resolved proteins were transferred to a PVDF membrane and analyzed using Western blot by detection with a biotinylated factor D antibody (R&D Systems).

Results:

FIGURE 54 shows a Western blot analysis demonstrating the ability of representative MASP-3 mAbs to block recombinant MASP-3-mediated cleavage of pro-CFD to CFD in an in vitro assay. As shown in FIGURE 54, representative high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory mAbs 13B1, 4B6, 1G4, 2D7, 10D12, 1A10, 4D5, 1E7, and 1F3 mouse-human chimeric mAbs showed partial to full inhibition of the pro-CFD cleavage in this assay.

4. Factor Bb Deposition on Zymosan Assay

Methods:

Varying concentrations of MASP-3 mAbs were added to 10% CFD-depleted human serum (Complement Technology A336) and GVB + Mg/EGTA (20 nM) and incubated for 30 minutes on ice prior to the addition of recombinant ST-pro-factor D-His (2 µg/mL final) and zymosan (0.1 mg/mL final). The zymosan particles function as an activating surface for complement deposition. The mixtures were incubated at 37°C and the APC activity was measured by the flow cytometric detection of complement factor Bb (Quidel antibody A252) on the surface of the zymosan particles.

Results:

FIGURE 55A graphically illustrates the level of factor Bb deposition on zymosan particles (determined by flow cytometric detection measured in MFI units) in the presence of varying concentrations of MASP-3 mAbs 1F3, 1G4, 2D7 and 4B6 in factor D-depleted human serum at 37°C for 70 minutes.

FIGURE 55B graphically illustrates the level of factor Bb deposition on zymosan particles (determined by flow cytometric detection measured in MFI units) in the presence of varying concentrations of MASP-3 mAbs 4D5, 10D12 and 13B1 in CFD-depleted human serum at 37°C for 70 minutes.

The results shown in FIGURES 55A and 55B are summarized below in TABLE 26.

TABLE 26: Inhibition of Factor Bb deposition on zymosan by MASP-3 mAbs (FIGURE 55A and FIGURE 55B)

Antibody	Inhibition of Factor Bb Deposition on Zymosan (IC_{50} nM)
1F3	0.1
1G4	1.1
2D7	3.5
4B6	0.2
4D5	0.4
10D12	0.5
13B1	0.3

As shown in FIGURE 55A, FIGURE 55B and TABLE 26, the MASP-3 mAbs show potent inhibition of the APC in human serum, with IC_{50} values ranging from 0.1 nM to 3.5 nM. These results demonstrate that MASP-3 plays a key role in APC activation in an in vitro model in human serum, and further demonstrate that MASP-3 inhibitory antibodies are potent inhibitors of the APC.

5. **Assay to measure the ability of representative MASP-3 mAbs to inhibit rabbit erythrocyte lysis**

Methods:

To monitor the inhibition of the APC in another experimental context, we evaluated the ability of representative MASP-3 mAbs to block the lysis of rabbit erythrocytes in human

serum. Varying concentrations of MASP-3 mAbs were added to 10% factor D-depleted human serum and GVB + Mg/EGTA (20 nM) and incubated for 30 minutes on ice prior to the addition of recombinant ST-pro-factor B-His (2 µg/mL final) and erythrocytes ($2.5x10^8$ cells/mL final). The mixtures were incubated at 37°C for 70 minutes and APC-mediated hemolysis was measured by diluting the reactions and measuring the absorbance (A405), which indicates levels of free hemoglobin.

Results:

FIGURE 56A graphically illustrates the level of inhibition of rabbit erythrocyte lysis in the presence of varying concentrations of MASP-3 mAbs 1A10, 1F3, 4B6, 4D5, 1G4 and 2F2 in CFD-depleted human serum. FIGURE 56B graphically illustrates the level of inhibition of rabbit erythrocyte lysis in the presence of varying concentrations of MASP-3 mAbs 1B11, 1E7, 1G4, 2D7 and 2F5 in CFD-depleted human serum. The results are summarized in TABLE 27.

TABLE 27: Inhibition of Rabbit Erythrocyte Lysis by MASP-3 mAbs (FIGURE 56A and FIGURE 56B)

Antibody	**Inhibition of Rabbit Erythrocyte Lysis (IC_{50} nM)**
1A10	0.2
1F3	0.2
4B6	0.2
4D5	0.1
1G4	2.7
2F2	0.8
1B11	NA
1E7	NA
2D7	5.4
2F5	0.9

As shown in FIGURE 56A, FIGURE 56B and TABLE 27, the MASP-3 mAbs show inhibition of the APC-driven hemolysis of rabbit erythrocytes, with IC_{50} values ranging from 0.1 nM to 5.4 nM. These results corroborate the observations of the MASP-3 antibodies in

the zymosan assay, and further demonstrate that MASP-3 inhibitory antibodies are potent inhibitors of the APC.

6. Inhibition of pro-Factor D cleavage in 3MC patient serum

Methods:

A representative recombinant MASP-3 mAb (4D5) was tested for the ability to block recombinant MASP-3 cleavage (and activation) of pro-factor D originating from normal human serum and serum from 3MC Patient B ("Pat B"), an individual who has no detectable MASP-3 in the serum and manifests a deficiency in the APC.

Normal human serum and Patient B serum (10% final) and GVB + Mg/EGTA (30 nM) were incubated with no enzyme or with active recombinant MASP-3 (rMASP-3; 0.5 μg/mL), inactive rMASP-3, or active rMASP-3 plus MASP-3 mAb 4D5 (500 nM final) on ice for 1 hour. Zymosan (0.1 mg/mL final) was added, and the mixtures were incubasted at 37°C. After 2 hours, the samples were centrifuged and the supernatants were collected. The samples were immunoprecipitated with goat antibody raised against human Factor D (R&D Systems AF1824), heat denatured and treated with Peptide-N-Glycosidase (New England Biolabs P0704L). The captured and deglycosylated proteins were resolved with SDS-PAGE and the gels were electroblotted for Western blot analysis with a biotinylated anti-CFD (R&D Systems BAF1824) and High Sensitivity Streptavidin-HRP (Thermo Fischer Scientific 21130).

Results:

FIGURE 57 shows a Western blot analyzing the level of pro-factor D and factor Din 3MC Patient B serum in the presence active rMASP-3, inactive rMASP-3, and active rMASP-3 plus mAb 4D5. As shown in FIGURE 57, normal human serum contains predominately the mature form, while Patient B serum principally contains the zymogen form of factor D. As further shown in FIGURE 57, active rMASP-3 in the presence of zymosan causes cleavage of pro-factor D in Patient 3 serum, while the inactive (zymogen) form of MASP-3 does not. Finally, as shown in FIGURE 57, the MASP-3 mAb 4D5 blocks cleavage of pro-factor D in Patient 3 serum in the presence of active rMASP-3. These results further demonstrate the role of MASP-3 in the cleavage of pro-factor D in the activation of the APC, and demonstrate that a MASP-3 inhibitory mAb is capable of blocking MASP-3 mediated pro-factor D cleavage and thereby blocking the APC.

EXAMPLE 17

Analysis of representative MASP-3 inhibitory mAbs 10D12 and 13B1 for the ability to inhibit the APC *in vivo*.

1. **Inhibition of the APC by mAb M3-1 (13B1) and 10D12 *in vivo*:**

Methods:

In order to determine the efficacy of MASP-3 mAb 13B1 (M3-1) and 10D12 for inhibiting the APC *in vivo*, a group of mice (n = 4) received a single intravenous tail vein injection of 10 mg/kg mAb 13B1 and a second group of mice (n=4) received a single intravenous tail vein injection of 10 mg/kg mAb 10D12. Blood collected from the animals was used to prepare serum, providing a matrix for the flow cytometric assessment of APC activity in an *ex vivo* assay measuring the level of C3 (also C3b and iC3b, Dako F020102-2) deposition on zymosan particles. Serum prepared from blood harvested at a pre-dose timepoint and multiple post-dose time points (96 hrs, 1 week, and 2 weeks) was diluted to 7.5% and zymosan particles (0.1 mg/mL final) were added to induce the APC. Antibody-treated mice were compared to a group of control mice (n = 4) that were given a single intravenous dose of vehicle.

Results:

FIGURE 58 graphically illustrates the level of C3 deposition on zymosan particles at various time points after a single dose of mAb M3-1 (13B1), mAb 10D12, or vehicle in wild-type mice. As shown in FIGURE 58, in the pre-dose time point the three conditions show comparable levels of APC activity. At 96 hours and the two later time points, both mAb-treated groups show near-complete ablation of systemic APC activity, while the APC activity of the vehicle-treated group remains unabated.

These results demonstrate that MASP-3 mAb M3-1 (13B1) and mAb 10D12 are potent inhibitors of the APC *in vivo* in mouse.

2. Status of Factor B in mice treated with MASP-3 mAb 10D12

Methods:

During the conversion of Factor B zymogen to an active proteolytic enzyme, Factor B is

cleaved into the Ba (~30 kDa) and Bb (~60 kDa) fragments by Factor D. The status of the Ba fragment in mouse serum obtained from mice treated with the MASP-3 mAb 10D12 was determined as follows.

Mice (n=4) were given two intravenous tail vein injections of 10 mg/kg mAb 10D12.The treatments occurred seven days apart and blood was collected from the animals three days after the second injection. A second set of four mice received a single intravenous dose of vehicle (PBS). The blood collected from both groups was used to prepare serum, providing a matrix for complement activation. Zymosan particles (0.1 mg/mL final) were added to diluted serum (7.5% final) and incubated for 35 minutes at 37°C.

Results:

As a measure of APC activation, **FIGURE 59** shows a Western blot analyzing the status of the Ba fragment in mouse serum obtained from mice treated with mAb 10D12 or PBS and stimulated with zymosan. Each lane in FIGURE 59 represents a different mouse, and the lanes alternate to show serum from a representative vehicle mouse adjacent to a MASP-3 mAb-treated mouse for the purposes of comparison. Two control conditions, from mice treated with vehicle or mAb 10D12 are shown in lanes 1 and 2, respectively (starting from the left side of the blot) as representatives of the basal level of Ba present in the serum samples in the absence of zymosan. Lanes 3 to 10 all show the level of Ba fragment present after incubation with zymosan. In all cases, the MASP-3 mAb-treated mice demonstrate a reduced level of the Ba fragment in comparison to the vehicle-treated animals.

3. **Serum from Mice Treated with mAb 10D12 inhibits hemolysis**

Methods:

As another measure of APC inhibition by MASP-3 inhibitory antibodies, we evaluated the ability of the MASP-3 antibodies to block the lysis of rabbit erythrocytes in serum from mice treated with representative MASP-3 mAb 10D12 as compared to serum from vehicle control treated mice.

Mice (n=4/group) were given three intravenous tail vein injections of vehicle control (PBS), 10 mg/kg MASP-3 mAb 10D12, or 25 mg/kg MASP-3 mAb 10D12. The treatments

occurred seven days apart from one another and blood was collected from the animals three days after the third injection. The blood was used to prepare serum, providing a matrix for hemolysis reactions. Erythrocytes (2.5 x 10^8 cells/mL final) were added to 20% pooled serum from four mice in GVB + Mg/EGTA (20 nM). The mixtures were incubated at 37°C and APC-mediated hemolysis was measured by diluting the reactions and measuring the absorbance (A405).

Results:

FIGURE 60 graphically illustrates the level of inhibition of hemolysis by 20% serum from mice treated with MASP-3 mAb 10D12 (10 mg/kg or 25 mg/kg) or vehicle control treated mice. As shown in FIGURE 60, serum from mice treated with MASP-3 mAb 10D12 at both 10mg/kg and 25 mg/kg demonstrated less overall hemolysis during the 1 hour test period as compared to vehicle-treated mice.

Overall Summary of Results:

As described in this Example, representative high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory mAbs 13B1 and 10D12 inhibit the APC *in vivo*. As described in Example 12, it was determined that MASP-3 monoclonal antibody 13B1 (also referred to as mAb M3-1) provides a clear benefit to survival of red blood cells lacking Crry in a mouse model associated with paroxysmal nocturnal hemogloinuria (PNH). As described in Example 13, it was determined that MASP-3 mAb M3-1 reduced the incidence and severity of clinical arthritis scores in a dose-dependent fashion.

EXAMPLE 18

This Example describes the results of epitope binding analysis of high potency MASP-3 inhibitory mAbs.

1. Competition Binding Analysis

Methods:

96 well ELISA assay plates were coated with the capture antibody, αM3-259, an IgG4 isotype mAb which has been shown to bind the CCP1-CCP2 region of MASP-1 and MASP-

3. The full-length human MASP-3 protein was immobilized on the plate via capture antibody αM3-259. In separate, non-coated wells, a 2-fold dilution series of one test MASP-3 mAb of an IgG4 isotype was mixed with a constant concentration of another test MASP-3 antibody of an IgG1 isotype. The mixture was added to the coated wells and allowed to bind to the captured MASP-3. Potential competition between the two antibodies was determined by the detection of the IgG1 isoform using an HRP-conjugated antibody against the human IgG1 hinge region (Southern Biotech 9052-05), and a TMB substrate reagent set (BD Biosciences 555214).

Results:

FIGURES 61A-61E graphically illustrate the results of the competition binding analysis.

FIGURE 61A graphically illustrates the results of the competition binding analysis to identify MASP-3 mAbs (IgG4) that block the interaction between mAb 4D5 (IgG1) and human MASP-3.

FIGURE 61B graphically illustrates the results of the competition binding analysis to identify MASP-3 mAbs (IgG4) that block the interaction between mAb 10D12 (IgG1) and human MASP-3.

FIGURE 61C graphically illustrates the results of the competition binding analysis to identify MASP-3 mAbs (IgG4) that block the interaction between mAb 13B1 (IgG1) and human MASP-3.

FIGURE 61D graphically illustrates the results of the competition binding analysis to identify MASP-3 mAbs (IgG4) that block the interaction between mAb 1F3 (IgG1) and human MASP-3.

FIGURE 61E graphically illustrates the results of the competition binding analysis to identify MASP-3 mAbs (IgG4) that block the interaction between mAb 1G4 (IgG1) and human MASP-3.

The data from FIGURES 61A to 61E is summarized below in TABLE 28.

These data indicate that MASP-3 mAbs 4D5, 10D12, 13B1, 1A10, 1F3 and 1G4 share a common epitope or overlapping epitopes on human MASP-3. Surprisingly, 1G4 has a very

limited capacity to block the binding of the other five mAbs to MASP-3, but those mAbs almost completely block the binding of 1G4 itself to MASP-3.

2. Analysis of mAb binding to peptides representing linear and discontinuous MASP-3 epitopes

Methods:

Fourteen of the 16 MASP-3 mAbs were evaluated by Pepscan to identify the regions of MASP-3 to which they bind. To reconstruct both linear and potential discontinuous epitopes of the target molecule, a library of peptides was synthesized corresponding to amino acid residues 299 to 728 of SEQ ID NO:2 (human MASP-3). Amino acid residues 1-298 of MASP-3 were not present in the immunogen and were not included in this analysis.

Pepscan epitope analsysis included use of the CLIPS technology, which structurally fixes peptides into defined three-dimensional structures (see Timmerman et al., *J Mol Recog.* 20:283-299, 2007 and Langedijk et al., *Analytical Biochemistry* 417:149-155, 2011). The binding of each antibody to each of the synthesized peptides was tested in a Pepscan-based ELISA.

Results:

The peptide binding results from Pepscan for each antibody analyzed is described below and summarized in TABLE 4, TABLE 28 and FIGURES 62-67.

Antibodies 1F3, 4B6, 4D5 and 1A10 (Group IA)

When tested under moderate stringency conditions, antibodies 1F3, 4B6, 4D5 and 1A10 bound discontinuous epitope mimics and also bound simple constrained and linear mimics. Data analysis demonstrates that antibodies 1F3, 4B6, 4D5 and 1A10 all dominately recognize peptide stretch $_{498}$VLRSQRRDTTVI$_{509}$ (SEQ ID NO:9) of MASP-3. This peptide lies immediately adjacent to the active site histidine, H497. Data obtained for these antibodies with discontinuous mimics suggest that peptide stretches $_{544}$DFNIQNYNHDIALVQ$_{558}$ (SEQ ID NO:11), $_{639}$GNYSVTENMFC$_{649}$ (SEQ ID NO:13) and $_{704}$VSNYVDWVWE$_{713}$ (SEQ ID NO:14) of MASP-3 also contribute to the binding. Peptide $_{544}$DFNIQNYNHDIALVQ$_{558}$ (SEQ ID NO:11) contains the active site aspartate (D553).

Antibody 10D12 (Group IB)

When tested under moderate stringency conditions, antibody 10D12 bound peptides with core sequence $_{498}$VLRSQRRDTTVI$_{509}$ (SEQ ID NO:9) of MASP-3, the sequence adjacent to the active site histidine, H497.

Antibody 13B1 (Group IC)

When tested under moderate stringency conditions antibody 13B1 recognizes a discontinuous epitope comprising peptide stretches $_{494}$TAAHVLRSQRRDTTV$_{508}$ (SEQ ID NO:10) and $_{626}$PHAECKTSYESRS$_{638}$ (SEQ ID NO:12) of MASP-3, where peptide stretch $_{626}$PHAECKTSYESRS$_{638}$ (SEQ ID NO:12) appears to be the dominant part of the epitope as it can also be bound in simple constrained form. The peptide $_{494}$TAAHVLRSQRRDTTV$_{508}$ (SEQ ID NO:10) includes the active site histidine, H497.

Antibody 1G4 (Group II)

When tested under low stringency conditions antibody 1G4 recognizes a discontinuous epitope comprising peptide stretches $_{454}$RNAEPGLFPWQ$_{464}$ (SEQ ID NO:17), $_{514}$EHVTVYLGLH$_{523}$ (SEQ ID NO:19) and $_{667}$AFVIFDDLSQRW$_{678}$ (SEQ ID NO:23) of MASP-3, where peptide stretch $_{667}$AFVIFDDLSQRW$_{678}$ (SEQ ID NO:23) is the dominant part of the epitope. The dominant peptide lies within three amino acids of the active site serine, S664.

Antibodies 1E7 and 2D7 (Group IIIA)

When tested under high and low stringency conditions, respectively, antibodies 1E7 and 2D7 recognize a discontinuous epitope comprising peptide stretches $_{454}$RNAEPGLFPWQ$_{464}$ (SEQ ID NO:17), $_{514}$EHVTVYLGLH$_{523}$ (SEQ ID NO:19) and $_{667}$AFVIFDDLSQRW$_{678}$ (SEQ ID NO:23) of MASP-3, where peptide stretch $_{667}$AFVIFDDLSQRW$_{678}$ (SEQ ID NO:23) is the dominant part of the epitope and which lies within three amino acids of the active site serine, S664.

Antibodies 2F5 and 15D9 (Group IIIB)

When tested under low stringency conditions, antibodies 2F5 and 15D9 dominantly recognize a discontinuous epitope comprising peptide stretches $_{454}$RNAEPGLFPWQ$_{464}$ (SEQ ID NO:17), $_{479}$KWFGSGALLSASWIL$_{493}$ (SEQ ID NO:18), $_{562}$PVPLGPHVMP$_{571}$ (SEQ ID NO:20) and $_{667}$AFVIFDDLSQRW$_{678}$ (SEQ ID NO:23) of MASP-3. Peptides

$_{479}$KWFGSGALLSASWIL$_{493}$ (SEQ ID NO:18) and $_{667}$AFVIFDDLSQRW$_{678}$ (SEQ ID NO:23) localize within four or three amino acids of the active site residues H497 and S664, respectively.

Antibody 1B11 (Group IIIC)

When tested under moderate stringency conditions, antibody 1B11 recognizes a discontinuous epitope comprising peptide stretches $_{435}$ECGQPSRSLPSLV$_{447}$ (SEQ ID NO:16), $_{454}$RNAEPGLFPWQ$_{464}$ (SEQ ID NO:17), $_{583}$APHMLGL$_{589}$ (SEQ ID NO:21) and $_{614}$SDVLQYVKLP$_{623}$ (SEQ ID NO:22) of MASP-3.

TABLE 28: Summary of Epitope Binding Analysis

MASP-3 mAb Ref. No./Group	**Peptide Binding Fragments (Epitopes) on human MASP-3 (w/leader)**	**Competes With**	**Peptide Cleavage Assay**
4D5 Group IA	$_{498}$VLRSQRRDTTVI$_{509}$ (SIN:9) $_{544}$DFNIQNYNHDIALVQ$_{558}$ (SIN:11) $_{639}$GNYSVTENMFC$_{649}$ (SIN:13) $_{704}$VSNYVDWVWE$_{713}$ (SIN:14)	1F3, 1G4, 4D5, 10D12, 13B1	inhibits
1F3 Group IA	$_{498}$VLRSQRRDTTVI$_{509}$ (SIN:9) $_{544}$DFNIQNYNHDIALVQ$_{558}$ (SIN:11) $_{639}$GNYSVTENMFC$_{649}$ (SIN:13) $_{704}$VSNYVDWVWE$_{713}$ (SIN:14)	1F3, 1G4, 4D5, 10D12, 13B1	inhibits
4B6 Group IA	$_{498}$VLRSQRRDTTVI$_{509}$ (SIN:9) $_{544}$DFNIQNYNHDIALVQ$_{558}$ (SIN:11) $_{639}$GNYSVTENMFC$_{649}$ (SIN:13) $_{704}$VSNYVDWVWE$_{713}$ (SIN:14)	1F3, 1G4, 4D5, 10D12, 13B1	inhibits
1A10 Group IA	$_{498}$VLRSQRRDTTVI$_{509}$ (SIN:9) $_{544}$DFNIQNYNHDIALVQ$_{558}$ (SIN:11) $_{639}$GNYSVTENMFC$_{649}$ (SIN:13) $_{704}$VSNYVDWVWE$_{713}$ (SIN:14)	1F3, 1G4, 4D5, 10D12, 13B1	inhibits
10D12 Group IB	$_{498}$VLRSQRRDTTVI$_{509}$ (SIN:9)	1F3, 1G4, 4D5, 10D12, 13B1	inhibits
13B1 Group IC	$_{494}$TAAHVLRSQRRDTTV$_{508}$ (SIN:10) $_{626}$PHAECKTSYESRS$_{638}$ (SIN:12)	1F3, 1G4, 4D5, 10D12, 13B1	inhibits
Group I	$_{498}$VLRSQRRDTTV$_{508}$ (SIN:15)		

core sequence			
1G4 Group II-cross competes with Group I and III	$_{454}$RNAEPGLFPWQ$_{464}$ (SIN:17) $_{514}$EHVTVYLGLH$_{523}$ (SIN:19) $_{667}$AFVIFDDLSQRW$_{678}$ (SIN:23)	1F3, 1G4, 4D5, 10D12, 13B1	inhibits
1E7 Group IIIA	$_{454}$RNAEPGLFPWQ$_{464}$ (SIN:17) $_{514}$EHVTVYLGLH$_{523}$ (SIN:19) $_{667}$AFVIFDDLSQRW$_{678}$ (SIN:23)	1G4	Weakly inhibits
2D7 Group IIIA	$_{454}$RNAEPGLFPWQ$_{464}$ (SIN:17) $_{514}$EHVTVYLGLH$_{523}$ (SIN:19) $_{667}$AFVIFDDLSQRW$_{678}$ (SIN:23)		Weakly inhibits
2F5 Group IIIB	$_{454}$RNAEPGLFPWQ$_{464}$ (SIN:17) $_{479}$KWFGSGALLSASWIL$_{493}$(SIN 18) $_{562}$PVPLGPHVMP$_{571}$ (SIN:20) $_{667}$AFVIFDDLSQRW$_{678}$ (SIN:23)		No effect
15D9 Group IIIB	$_{454}$RNAEPGLFPWQ$_{464}$ (SIN:17) $_{479}$KWFGSGALLSASWIL$_{493}$(SIN 18) $_{562}$PVPLGPHVMP$_{571}$ (SIN:20) $_{667}$AFVIFDDLSQRW$_{678}$ (SIN:23)		No effect
1B11 Group IIIC	$_{435}$ECGQPSRSLPSLV$_{447}$ (SIN:16) $_{454}$RNAEPGLFPWQ$_{464}$ (SIN:17) $_{583}$APHMLGL$_{589}$ (SIN:21) $_{614}$SDVLQYVKLP$_{623}$ (SIN:22)		stimulates
Core sequence for Group II and Group III	$_{454}$RNAEPGLFPWQ$_{464}$ (SIN:17)		
2F2 Group IV	Binding epitope not determined	1F3, 4D5, 11B6, 2F2	stimulates
11B6 Group IV	Binding epitope not determined	1F3, 4D5, 11B6, 2F2	No effect

FIGURE 62 provides a schematic diagram showing the regions of contact on human MASP-3 by the MASP-3 mAbs, as determined by Pepscan Analysis. As shown in FIGURE 62, all of the MASP-3 mAbs have regions of contact in the beta chain containing the SP domain of MASP-3. One mAb, 1B11, also has a region of contact between the CCP2 and SP domains in the alpha chain of MASP-3.

FIGURES 63A to 67 show 3-D models illustrating the regions of contact of the high affinity MASP-3 mAbs on the CCP1/2/SP domains of human MASP-3, wherein the SP domain active site of MASP-3 is facing towards the front and the catalytic triad is shown as side chains.

FIGURE 63A shows the regions of contact between human MASP-3 and high affinity MASP-3 mAbs 1F3, 4D5 and 1A10, including aa residues 498-509 (SEQ ID NO:9), aa residues 544-558 (SEQ ID NO:11), aa residues 639 to 649 (SEQ ID NO:13) and aa residues 704 to 713 (SEQ ID NO:14).

FIGURE 63B shows the regions of contact between human MASP-3 and high affinity MASP-3 mAb 10D12, including aa residues 498 to 509 (SEQ ID NO:9).

FIGURE 64 shows the regions of contact between human MASP-3 and high affinity MASP-3 mAb 13B1, including aa residues 494 to 508 (SEQ ID NO:10) and aa residues 626 to 638 (SEQ ID NO: 12).

FIGURE 65 shows the regions of contact between human MASP-3 and high affinity MASP-3 mAb 1B11, including aa residues 435 to 447 (SEQ ID NO:16), aa residues 454 to 464 (SEQ ID NO:17), aa residues 583 to 589 (SEQ ID NO:21) and aa residues 614 to 623 (SEQ ID NO:22).

FIGURE 66 shows the regions of contact between human MASP-3 and high affinity MASP-3 mAbs 1E7, 1G4 and 2D7, including aa residues 454 to 464 (SEQ ID NO:17), aa residues 514 to 523 (SEQ ID NO:19) and aa residues 667 to 678 (SEQ ID NO:23).

FIGURE 67 shows the regions of contact between human MASP-3 and high affinity MASP-3 mAbs 15D9 and 2F5, including aa residues 454 to 464 (SEQ ID NO:17), aa residues 479 to 493 (SEQ ID NO:18), aa residues 562 to 571 (SEQ ID NO:20), and aa residues 667 to 678 (SEQ ID NO:23).

In summary, conclusive binding profiles were obtained for 12 of the 14 antibodies. All 12 mapped antibodies recognized solvent exposed epitopes within the peptidase S1 domain. The

close proximity of a number of the epitope determinants to residues for the active site catalytic triad (H497, D553, S664) is consistent with a model in which the high affinity inhibitory MASP-3 mAbs block enzymatic activity by interfering with the enzyme-substrate interaction.

EXAMPLE 19

This Example describes the humanization of representative MASP-3 mAbs and engineering of potential post-translational modification sites.

Methods:

1. Humanization of Representative High Affiinity MASP-3 mAbs

Methods:

To reduce immunogenicity risk, representative high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory antibodies 4D5, 10D12 and 13B1 were humanized by a CDR-grafting method. CDRS of each MASP-3 antibody were grafted into the closest consensus human framework sequences. Some of the Vernier zone residues were modified by Quickchange site-directed mutagenesis (Agilent Technologies). The resulting humanized VH and VL regions were transferred into pcDNA3.1-based human IgG1 or IgG4 and IgK expression contructs, and the recombinant antibodies were expressed and purified as described above. Affinity of the humanized antibodies was determined by ELISA using monovalent Fab fragments, and potency was assessed by C3 deposition assay using intact IgG4 formats.

Results:

Amino acid sequences of representative humanized versions of the heavy chain variable regions and light chain variable regions for mAbs 4D5, 10D12 and 13B1 are provided below. The CDRs (Kabat) are underlined.

4D5:

h4D5_VH-14 (SEQ ID NO:248)

QVQLVQSGAEVKKPGASVKVSCKASGYTFTTDDINWVRQAPGQGLEWIGWIYPRD
DRTKYNDKFKDKATLTVDTSSNTAYMELSSLRSEDTAVYYCSSLEDTYWGQGTLVT
VSS

h4D5_VH-19 (SEQ ID NO:249)

QVQLVQSGAEVKKPGASVKVSCKASGYTFTTDDINWVRQAPGQGLEWIGWIYPRD
DRTKYNDKFKDRATLTVDTSSNTAYMELSSLRSEDTAVYYCSSLEDTYWGQGTLVT
VSS

h4D5_VL-1 (SEQ ID NO:250)

DIVMTQSPDSLAVSLGERATINCKSSQSLLNSRTRKNYLAWYQQKPGQPPKLLIYWA
STRESGVPDRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISSLQAEDVAVYYCKQSYNLYTFGQGTKVEIKR

10D12:

h10D12_VH-45 (SEQ ID NO:251)

QIQLVQSGSELKKPGASVKVSCKASGYIFTSYGMSWVRQAPGKGLKWMGWINTYS
GVPTYADDFKGRFVFSLDTSVRTPYLQISSLKAEDTAVYFCARGGEAMDYWGQGTL
VTVSS

h10D12_VH-49 (SEQ ID NO:252)

QIQLVQSGSELKKPGASVKVSCKASGYIFTSYGMSWVRQAPGKGLKWMGWINTYS
GVPTYADDFKGRFVFSLDTSVRTPYLQISSLKAEDTATYFCARGGEAMDYWGQGTL
VTVSS

h10D12_VL-21 (SEQ ID NO:253)
DVLMTQTPLSLSVTPGQPASISCKSSQSLLDSDGKTYLNWLLQRPGQSPKRLIYLVSK
LDSGVPDRFSGSGSGTDFTLKISRVEAEDVGVYYCWQGTHFPWTFGQGTKVEIKR

13B1

h13B1_VH-9 (SEQ ID NO:254)

QVQLVQSGAEVKKPGASVKVSCKASGYTFTGKWIEWVRQAPGQGLEWIGEILPGTG
STNYAQKFQGRATFTADSSTSTAYMELSSLRSEDTAVYYCLRSEDVWGQGTLVTVS
S

h13B1_VH-10 (SEQ ID NO:255)

QVQLVQSGAEVKKPGASVKVSCKASGYTFTGKWIEWVRQAPGQGLEWIGEILPGTG
STNYNEKFKGRATFTADSSTSTAYMELSSLRSEDTAVYYCLRSEDVWGQGTLVTVSS

h13B1_VL-1 (SEQ ID NO:256)
DIVMTQSPDSLAVSLGERATINCKSSQSLLNSRTRKNYLAWYQQKPGQPPKLLIYWA
STRESGVPDRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISSLQAEDVAVYYCKQSYNIPTFGQGTKVEIKR

The affinity of representative humanized 4D5, 10D12 and 13B1 antibodies for human MASP-3 is shown below in TABLE 29.

TABLE 29: Binding of Representative humanized MASP-3 mAbs to MASP-3

MASP-3 antibody clone (Fab format)	**Binding to human MASP-3 EC_{50} (nM)**
4D5 Parental Fab	0.107
h4D5_14-1 Fab (VH-14 and VL-1)	0.085
h4D5_19-1 Fab (VH-19 and VL-1)	0.079
10D12 Parental Fab	0.108
h10D12_45-21 Fab (VH-45 and VL-21)	0.108

h10D12_49-21 Fab (VH-49 and VL-21)	0.115
13B1 Parental Fab	0.123
h13B1_9-1 Fab (VH-9 and VL-1)	0.101
h13B1_10-1 Fab (VH-10 and VL-1)	0.097

The percent identity of humanized framework sequences to those of human germline framework sequences:

h4D5_VH-14=90%; h4D5_VH-19=91%; h4D5_VL-1=100%;

h10D12_VH-45=92%; h10D12_VH-49=91%; h10D12_VL-21=93%;

h13B1_VH-9=95%; h13B1_VH-10=94%; h13B1_VL-1=100%

2. Mutagenesis of Representative MASP-3 mAbs to remove Asn/Asp Modification Sites in CDR-1 of the Light Chain Variable Region of 4D5, 10D12 and 13B1

Representative high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory mAbs 4D5, 10D12 and 13B1 were analyzed for post-translational modification. Asparagine residues with a succeeding Glycine, Serine, Histidine, Alanine or Asparagine ("NG", "NS", "NH", "NA", or "NN" motif) are often susceptible to the hydrolysis of the amide group of Asparagine side-chain, or "deamidation." Aspartic acid residues with a succeeding Glycine or Proline ("DG" or "DP" motif) are often susceptible to the interconversion, or "isomerization." Such modifications result in charge heterogeneity and may affect antibody function if they occur in a binding interface. They also may increase risks of fragmentation, immunogeneticity and aggregation.

Potential post-translational modification motifs were identified in CDR-1 of the light chain variable regions of 4D5, 10D12 and 13B1.

4D5 and 13B1 contained one possible Asn deamidation site in CDR1 of the light chain (shown as "NS" at positions 8 and 9 of SEQ ID NO:142 underlined in TABLE 30 below. As further shown below in Table 30, 10D12 contained one possible Asp isomerization site in

CDR1 of the light chain.

Variants of the humanized version of these MASP-3 mAbs were generated by site-directed mutagenesis as shown in TABLE 30. The variants were expressed and purified as described above. Affinity was determined by ELISA using monovalent Fab fragments, and potency was assessed by C3 deposition assay using intact IgG4 formats as described above.

TABLE 30: Variants of CDR-L1 for 4D5, 10D12 and 13B1

Antibody	Region	Sequence
4D5 parent	LC-CDR1	KSSQSLLNSRTRKNYLA (SEQ ID NO:142)
4D5-NQ mutant	LC-CDR1	KSSQSLLQSRTRKNYLA (SEQ ID NO:257)
4D5-NA mutant	LC-CDR1	KSSQSLLASRTRKNYLA (SEQ ID NO:258)
4D5-ST mutant	LC-CDR1	KSSQSLLNTRTRKNYLA (SEQ ID NO:259)
13B1 parent	LC-CDR1	KSSQSLLNSRTRKNYLA (SEQ ID NO:142)
13B1-NQ	LC-CDR1	KSSQSLLQSRTRKNYLA (SEQ ID NO:257)
13B1-NA	LC-CDR1	KSSQSLLASRTRKNYLA (SEQ ID NO:258)
13B1-ST	LC-CDR1	KSSQSLLNTRTRKNYLA (SEQ ID NO:259)
Consensus for 4D5, 13B1 and variants	LC-CDR1	KSSQSLLXXRTRKNYLA (SEQ ID NO:260) Wherein X at position 8 is N, Q or A; and wherein X at position 9 is S or T
10D12 parent	LC-CDR1	KSSQSLLDSDGKTYLN (SEQ ID NO:153)
10D12-DE mutant	LC-CDR1	KSSQSLLDSEGKTYLN (SEQ ID NO:261)
10D12-DA mutant	LC-CDR1	KSSQSLLDSAGKTYLN (SEQ ID NO:262)
10D12-GA mutant	LC-CDR1	KSSQSLLDSDAKTYLN (SEQ ID NO:263)
35C1	LC-CDR1	KSSQSLLDSDGKTYLS (SEQ ID NO:159)
Consensus of 10D12, 35C1 and variants	LC-CDR1	KSSQSLLDSXXKTYLX (SEQ ID NO:215) Wherein X at position 10 is D, E or A; Wherein X at position 11 is G or A; and wherein X at position 16 is N or S

TABLE 31: Binding of mutagenized candidates of humanized 4D5, 10D12 and 13B1 mAbs to human MASP-3

MASP-3 antibody clone (Fab format)	**Binding to human MASP-3 EC_{50} (pM)**
h4D5_19-1 parental Fab (VH-19 and VL-1)	102
h4D5-19-1-NQ Fab (VH-19 and VL-1-NQ)	732
h4D5-19-1-NA Fab (VH-19 and VL-1-NA)	122
h4D5-19-1-ST Fab (VH-19 and VL-1-ST)	151
h10D12_45-21 parental Fab (VH-45 and VL-21)	108
h10D12-45-21-DE Fab (VH-45 and VL-21-DE)	326
h10D12-45-21-DA Fab (VH-45 and VL-21-DA)	294
h10D12-45-21-GA Fab (VH-45 and VL-21-GA)	181
h13B1_10-1 parental Fab (VH-10 and VL-1)	100
h13B1_10-1-NQ Fab (VH-10 and VL-1-NQ)	138
h13B1_10-1-NA Fab (VH-10 and VL-1-NA)	105
h13B1_10-1-ST Fab (VH-10 and VL-1-ST)	120

TABLE 32: MASP-3 Antibody humanized VH Sequences (CDRs and FR regions, Kabat)

Antibody	**HC FR1**	**HC CDR1**
4D5 parent (SIN:24)	QVQLKQSGPELVKPGASVKLSCKASGYTFT (SEQ ID NO:55)	TDDIN (SEQ ID NO:56)
h4D5_VH-14 (SIN:248)	QVQLVQSGAEVKKPGASVKVSCKASGYTFT (SEQ ID NO:264)	TDDIN (SEQ ID NO:56)
h4D5_VH-19 (SIN:249)	QVQLVQSGAEVKKPGASVKVSCKASGYTFT (SEQ ID NO:264)	TDDIN (SEQ ID NO:56)
10D12 parent (SIN:28)	QIQLVQSGPELKKPGETVKISCKASGYIFT (SEQ ID NO:71)	SYGMS (SEQ ID NO:72)
h10D12_VH-45 (SIN:251)	QIQLVQSGSELKKPGASVKVSCKASGYIFT (SEQ ID NO:269)	SYGMS (SEQ ID NO:72)
h10D12-VH-49 (SIN:252)	QIQLVQSGSELKKPGASVKVSCKASGYIFT (SEQ ID NO:269)	SYGMS (SEQ ID NO:72)
13B1 parent (SIN:30)	QVQLKQSGAELMKPGASVKLSCKATGYTFT (SEQ ID NO:83)	GKWIE (SEQ ID NO:84)
h13B1_VH-9 (SIN:254)	QVQLVQSGAEVKKPGASVKVSCKASGYTFT (SEQ ID NO:273)	GKWIE (SEQ ID NO:84)
h13B1_VH-10 (SIN:255)	QVQLVQSGAEVKKPGASVKVSCKASGYTFT (SEQ ID NO:273)	GKWIE (SEQ ID NO:84)
Antibody	**HC FR2**	**HC CDR2**
4D5 parent	WVKQRPGQGLEWIG (SEQ ID NO:57)	WIYPRDDRTKYNDKFKD (SEQ ID NO:58)
h4D5_VH-14	WVRQAPGQGLEWIG (SEQ ID NO:265)	WIYPRDDRTKYNDKFKD (SEQ ID NO:58)
h4D5_VH-19	WVRQAPGQGLEWIG (SEQ ID NO:265)	WIYPRDDRTKYNDKFKD (SEQ ID NO:58)
10D12 parent	WVRQAPGKGLKWMG (SEQ ID NO:73)	WINTYSGVPTYADDFKG (SEQ ID NO:74)
h10D12_VH-45	WVRQAPGKGLKWMG (SEQ ID NO:73)	WINTYSGVPTYADDFKG (SEQ ID NO:74)
h10D12-VH-49	WVRQAPGKGLKWMG (SEQ ID NO:73)	WINTYSGVPTYADDFKG (SEQ ID NO:74)
13B1 parent	WVKQRPGHGLEWIG (SEQ ID NO:85)	EILPGTGSTNYNEKFKG (SEQ ID NO:86)
h13B1_VH-9	WVRQAPGQGLEWIG (SEQ ID NO:274)	EILPGTGSTNYAQKFQG (SEQ ID NO:275)

h13B1_VH-10	WVRQAPGQGLEWIG (SEQ ID NO:274)	EILPGTGSTNYNEKFKG (SEQ ID NO:86)
Antibody	**HC FR3**	**HC CDR3**
4D5 parent	KATLTVDTSSNTAYMDLHSLTSEDSAVYFCSS (SEQ ID NO:59)	LEDTY (SEQ ID NO:60)
h4D5_VH-14	KATLTVDTSSNTAYMELSSLRSEDTAVYYCSS (SEQ ID NO:266)	LEDTY (SEQ ID NO:60)
h4D5_VH-19	RATLTVDTSSNTAYMELSSLRSEDTAVYYCSS (SEQ ID NO:267)	LEDTY (SEQ ID NO:60)
10D12 parent	RFAFSLETSARTPYLQINNLKNEDTATYFCAR (SEQ ID NO:75)	GGEAMDY (SEQ ID NO:76)
h10D12_VH-45	RFVFSLDTSVRTPYLQISSLKAEDTAVYFCAR (SEQ ID NO:270)	GGEAMDY (SEQ ID NO:76)
h10D12-VH-49	RFVFSLDTSVRTPYLQISSLKAEDTATYFCAR (SEQ ID NO:271)	GGEAMDY (SEQ ID NO:76)
13B1 parent	KATFTADSSSNTAYMQLSSLTTEDSAMYYCLR (SEQ ID NO:87)	SEDV (SEQ ID NO:88)
h13B1_VH-9	RATFTADSSTSTAYMELSSLRSEDTAVYYCLR (SEQ ID NO:276)	SEDV (SEQ ID NO:88)
h13B1_VH-10	RATFTADSSTSTAYMELSSLRSEDTAVYYCLR (SEQ ID NO:276)	SEDV (SEQ ID NO:88)
Antibody	**HC FR4**	
4D5 parent	WGQGTLVAVSS (SEQ ID NO:61)	
h4D5_VH-14	WGQGTLVTVSS (SEQ ID NO:268)	
h4D5_VH-19	WGQGTLVTVSS (SEQ ID NO:268)	
10D12 parent	WGQGTSVTVSS (SEQ ID NO:77)	
h10D12_VH-45	WGQGTLVTVSS (SEQ ID NO:272)	
h10D12-VH-49	WGQGTLVTVSS (SEQ ID NO:272)	
13B1 parent	WGTGTTVTVSS (SEQ ID NO:89)	

h13B1_VH-9	WGQGTLVTVSS (SEQ ID NO:277)	
h13B1_VH-10	WGQGTLVTVSS (SEQ ID NO:277)	

Representative Humanized Light Chain Variable Regions with Variants:

h4D5_VL-1-NA (SEQ ID NO:278)

DIVMTQSPDSLAVSLGERATINCKSSQSLLASRTRKNYLAWYQQKPGQPPKLLIYWA
STRESGVPDRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISSLQAEDVAVYYCKQSYNLYTFGQGTKVEIKR

h10D12_VL-21-GA (SEQ ID NO:279)

DVLMTQTPLSLSVTPGQPASISCKSSQSLLDSDAKTYLNWLLQRPGQSPKRLIYLVSK
LDSGVPDRFSGSGSGTDFTLKISRVEAEDVGVYYCWQGTHFPWTFGQGTKVEIKR

h13B1_VL-1-NA (SEQ ID NO:280)

DIVMTQSPDSLAVSLGERATINCKSSQSLLASRTRKNYLAWYQQKPGQPPKLLIYWA
STRESGVPDRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISSLQAEDVAVYYCKQSYNIPTFGQGTKVEIKR

TABLE 33: MASP-3 Antibody humanized VL Sequences (CDRs and FR regions, Kabat) [plus variants in LC-CDR1]

Antibody	**LC FR1**	**LC CDR1**
4D5 parent (SIN:40)	DIVMTQSPSSLAVSAGEKVTMTC (SEQ ID NO:141)	KSSQSLLNSRTRKNYLA (SEQ ID NO:142)
h4D5_VL-1 (SIN:250)	DIVMTQSPDSLAVSLGERATINC (SEQ ID NO:281)	KSSQSLLNSRTRKNYLA (SEQ ID NO:142)
h4D5_VL-1-NA (SIN:278)	DIVMTQSPDSLAVSLGERATINC (SEQ ID NO:281)	KSSQSLLASRTRKNYLA (SEQ ID NO:258)
10D12 parent (SIN:43)	DVLMTQTPLTLSVTIGQPASISC (SEQ ID NO:152)	KSSQSLLDSDGKTYLN (SEQ ID NO:153)
h10D12_VL-21 (SIN:253)	DVLMTQTPLSLSVTPGQPASISC (SEQ ID NO:285)	KSSQSLLDSDGKTYLN (SEQ ID NO:153)
h10D12_VL-21-GA (SIN:279)	DVLMTQTPLSLSVTPGQPASISC (SEQ ID NO:285)	KSSQSLLDSDAKTYLN (SEQ ID NO:263)

13B1 parent	DIVMTQSPSSLAVSAGEKVTMSC (SEQ ID NO:151)	KSSQSLLNSRTRKNYLA (SEQ ID NO:142)
h13B1_VL-1	DIVMTQSPDSLAVSLGERATINC (SEQ ID NO:281)	KSSQSLLNSRTRKNYLA (SEQ ID NO:142)
h13B1_VL-1-NA	DIVMTQSPDSLAVSLGERATINC (SEQ ID NO:281)	KSSQSLLASRTRKNYLA (SEQ ID NO:258)
Antibody	**LC FR2**	**LC CDR2**
4D5 parent	WYQQKPGQSPKLLIY (SEQ ID NO:143)	WASTRES (SEQ ID NO:144)
h4D5_VL-1	WYQQKPGQPPKLLIY (SEQ ID NO:282)	WASTRES (SEQ ID NO:144)
h4D5_VL-1-NA	WYQQKPGQPPKLLIY (SEQ ID NO:282)	WASTRES (SEQ ID NO:144)
10D12 parent	WLLQRPGQSPKRLIY (SEQ ID NO:154)	LVSKLDS (SEQ ID NO:155)
h10D12_VL-21	WLLQRPGQSPKRLIY (SEQ ID NO:154)	LVSKLDS (SEQ ID NO:155)
h10D12_VL-21-GA	WLLQRPGQSPKRLIY (SEQ ID NO:154)	LVSKLDS (SEQ ID NO:155)
13B1 parent	WYQQKPGQSPKLLIY (SEQ ID NO:143)	WASTRES (SEQ ID NO:144)
h13B1_VL-1	WYQQKPGQPPKLLIY (SEQ ID NO:282)	WASTRES (SEQ ID NO:144)
h13B1_VL-1-NA	WYQQKPGQPPKLLIY (SEQ ID NO:282)	WASTRES (SEQ ID NO:144)
Antibody	**LC FR3**	**LC CDR3**
4D5 parent	GVPDRFTGSGSGTDFSLTISSVQAEDLAVYYC (SEQ ID NO:145)	KQSYNLYT (SEQ ID NO:146)
h4D5_VL-1	GVPDRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISSLQAEDVAVYYC (SEQ ID NO:283)	KQSYNLYT (SEQ ID NO:146)
h4D5_VL-1-NA	GVPDRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISSLQAEDVAVYYC (SEQ ID NO:283)	KQSYNLYT (SEQ ID NO:146)
10D12 parent	GVPDRFTGSGSGTDFTLKISRVEAEDLGVYYC (SEQ ID NO:156)	WQGTHFPWT (SEQ ID NO:157)
h10D12_VL-21	GVPDRFSGSGSGTDFTLKISRVEAEDVGVYYC (SEQ ID NO:286)	WQGTHFPWT (SEQ ID NO:157)

h10D12_VL-21-GA	GVPDRFSGSGSGTDFTLKISRVEAEDVGVYYC (SEQ ID NO:286)	WQGTHFPWT (SEQ ID NO:157)
13B1 parent	GVPDRFTGSGSGTDFTLTISSVQAEDLAVYYC (SEQ ID NO:150)	KQSYNIPT (SEQ ID NO:161)
h13B1_VL-1	GVPDRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISSLQAEDVAVYYC (SEQ ID NO:283)	KQSYNIPT (SEQ ID NO:161)
h13B1_VL-1-NA	GVPDRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISSLQAEDVAVYYC (SEQ ID NO:283)	KQSYNIPT (SEQ ID NO:161)
Antibody	**LC FR4**	
4D5 parent	FGGGTKLEIKR (SEQ ID NO:147)	
h4D5_VL-1	FGQGTKVEIKR (SEQ ID NO:284)	
h4D5_VL-1-NA	FGQGTKVEIKR (SEQ ID NO:284)	
10D12 parent	FGGGTKLEIKR (SEQ ID NO:147)	
h10D12_VL-21	FGQGTKVEIKR (SEQ ID NO:287)	
h10D12_VL-21-GA	FGQGTKVEIKR (SEQ ID NO:287)	
13B1 parent	FGGGTKLEIKR (SEQ ID NO:147)	
h13B1_VL-1	FGQGTKVEIKR (SEQ ID NO:284)	
h13B1_VL-1-NA	FGQGTKVEIKR (SEQ ID NO:284)	

EXAMPLE 20

Analysis of a representative MASP-3 inhibitory mAb 13B1 in a mouse model of multiple sclerosis.

Background/Rationale: Experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis (EAE), an acquired inflammatory and demyelinating autoimmune disorder, is an established animal model of

multiple sclerosis (MS). Evidence suggesting that the APC plays a significant role in the development/progression of EAE was provided by reports that the disease is attenuated in mice treated with a Factor B-neutralizing antibody (Hu et al., *Mol. Immunol.* 54:302, 2013). This Example describes the analysis of a representative high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory antibody, 13B1, in the EAE model.

Methods:

EAE Induction:

A kit for inducing EAE, purchased from Hooke Laboratories (Lawrence, MA) was used to induce EAE in this study. This kit contained the neuroantigen MOG_{35-55} in Complete Freund's Adjuvant (CFA) as well as pertussis toxin.

30 wild-type C57 Bl/6J female mice were used for this study and were acclimated to the facility for at least one week prior to EAE induction. The mice were approximately 10 weeks of age at the time of induction. As shown in TABLE 34 below, at the time of induction, each mouse received two 100 µL subcutaneous (sc) injections of MOG35-55 and one intraperitoneal (ip) injection of 100 µL (400 ng) pertussis toxin. A second injection of pertussis toxin was administered 24 hours after the first.

Treatment: The 30 mice were divided into three groups of 10 and treated with an irrelevant isotype control mAb 10 mg/kg i.v.); mAb 13B1 (anti-MASP-3, 10 mg/kg i.v.) or mAb 1379 (anti-Factor B (*Hu et al., Mol. Immunol.* 54:302, 2013) 40 mg/kg i.p.). As shown in TABLE 34, dosing with the isotype control mAb and MASP-3 mAb 13B1 occurred weekly beginning at Day -16 and ending on Day +12. Dosing with mAb 1379 occurred every other day from Day +3 to Day +11, according to the dosing schedule described in Hu et al., *Mole Immunol* 54:302-308, (2013).

TABLE 34: Experimental Methods for EAE Experiment with MASP-3 mAb 13B1

Day of Administration	Pertussis Toxin 400 ng i.p.	MOG peptide 35-55 250 µg	mAb 1379 (anti-Factor B) 40 mg i.p.	Isotype Control mAb 10 mg/kg i.v.	mAb 13B1 (anti-MASP-3) 10 mg/kg i.v.
-16				+	+
-9				+	+

-2				+	+
0	+	+			
+1	+				
+3			+		
+5			+	+	+
+7			+		
+9			+		
+11			+		
+12				+	+

Scoring: The mice were checked every other day until the emergence of symptoms, after which they were checked daily. The first signs of disease appeared 7-12 days after immunization, as expected. The mice were scored according to the scale shown below in TABLE 35.

TABLE 35: EAE Model Scoring Criteria

Score	Clinical Observations
0.0	No obvious changes in motor functions of the mouse in comparison to non-immunized mice. When picked up by the base of the tail, the tail has tension and is erect. Hind legs are usually spread apart. When the mouse is walking, there is no gait or head tilting.
0.5	Tip of tail is limp. When the mouse is picked up by the base of the tail, the tail has tension except for the tip. Muscle straining is felt in the tail, while the tail continues to move.
1.0	Limp tail. When mouse is picked up by the base of the tail, instead of being erect, the whole tail drapes over finger. Hind legs are usually spread apart. No signs of tail movement are observed.
1.5	Limp tail and hind leg inhibition. When picked up by the base of the tail, the whole tail drapes over finger. When the mouse is dropped on a wire rack, at least one hind leg falls through consistently. Walking is very slightly wobbly.
2.0	Limp tail and weakness of hind legs. When picked up by the base of the tail, the legs are not spread apart, but held close together. When the mouse is observed walking, it has a clearly apparent wobbly walk. One foot may have toes dragging, but the other leg has no apparent inhibitions of movement; OR, Mouse appears to be at score 0.0, but there are obvious signs of head tilting when the walk is observed. The balance is poor.
2.5	Limp tail and dragging of hind legs. Both hind legs have some movement, but both are dragging at the feet (mouse trips on hind feet). - OR- No movement in one leg/completely dragging one leg, but movement in the other leg.- OR - EAE severity appears mild when picked up (as score 0.0-1.5), but there is a strong head tilt that causes the mouse to occasionally fall over.
3.0	Limp tail and complete paralysis of hind legs (most common). - OR - Limp tail and almost complete paralysis of hind legs. One or both hind legs are able to paddle, but neither hind leg is able to move forward of the hind hip. - OR - Limp tail with paralysis of one front and one hind leg. - OR - ALL of: Severe head tilting, walking only along the edges of the cage, pushing against the cage wall, spinning when picked up by base of

	tail.
3.5	Limp tail and complete paralysis of hind legs. In addition to: Mouse is moving around the cage, but when placed on its side, is unable to right itself. Hind legs are together on one side of body. - OR - Mouse is moving around the cage, but the hind quarters are flat like a pancake, giving the appearance of a hump in the front quarters of the mouse
4.0	Limp tail, complete hind leg and partial front leg paralysis. Mouse is minimally moving around the cage but appears alert and feeding. Often euthanasia is recommended after the mouse scores 4.0 for 2 days. However, with daily s.c. fluids some mice can recover to 3.5 or 3.0. When the mouse is euthanized because of severe paralysis, a score of 5.0 is entered for that mouse for the rest of the experiment.
4.5	Complete hind and partial front leg paralysis, no movement around the cage. Mouse is not alert. Mouse has minimal movement in the front legs. The mouse barely responds to contact. Euthanasia is recommended. When the mouse is euthanized because of severe paralysis, a score of 5.0 is entered for that mouse for the rest of the experiment.
5.0	Mouse is spontaneously rolling in the cage.

Results:

FIGURE 68 graphically illustrates the results of the EAE model in mice treated with either MASP-3 inhibitory mAb 13B1 (10mg/kg), Factor B mAb 1379 (40 mg/kg) or isotype control mAb (10 mg/kg), wherein downward pointing arrows indicate dosing of anti-Factor B antibody and upward pointing arrows indicates the last dose of mAb 13B1. As shown in FIGURE 68, mice treated with MASP-3 inhibitory mAb 13B1 and Factor B mAb 1379 exhibited an improvement in clinical symptoms scored according to the parameters shown in TABLE 35, as compared to isotype control.

In accordance with the foregoing, MASP-3 inhibitory antibodies, such as the high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory antibodies disclosed herein, are expected to be beneficial (neuroprotective or neuroregenerative) in the treatment and/or rehabilitation of a subject suffering from multiple sclerosis, Balo concentric sclerosis, neuromyelitis optica, Marburg multiple sclerosis, Schilder's disease, Tumefactive multiple sclerosis and acute disseminated encephalomyelitis (ADM).

EXAMPLE 21

Pharmacodynamic Study with Representative high affinity MASP-3 mAbs in Cynomolgus Monkeys.

Background/Rationale: As was demonstrated in rodent studies (FIGURE 44), a high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory antibody was capable of inhibiting steady-state (resting) pro-factor D maturation *in vivo*. This Example describes a study that was carried out in cynomolgus monkeys to determine if representative high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory mAbs are capable of

inhibiting APC activity in a non-human primate.

Methods: To confirm that MASP-3 functions in the APC in a non-human primate, and that the high affinity MASP-3 antibodies are capable of inhibiting the APC in a non-human primate, 9 cynomolgus monkeys (3 animals per mAb condition) were given a single 5 mg/kg intravenous dose with one of three representative high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory antibodies: h4D5X, h10D12X, or h13B1X. ("h" refers to humanized, "X" refers to the IgG4 constant hinge region (SEQ ID NO:312) containing the stabilizing S228P amino acid substitution and a mutation human IgG4 constant region with S228P mutation and also a mutation that promotes FcRn interations at low pH). Plasma (EDTA) and serum samples were collected at regular intervals over a period of three weeks or longer.

Two assays were employed to measure APC activity in the sera from treated monkeys. The first assay assessed levels of complement factor Bb deposited on zymosan beads added to diluted serum. The second assay measured the fluid phase products of the zymosan-activated APC, complement factors Ba and Bb, as well as C3a.

Flow cytometry using the factor Bb antibody A252 (Quidel) was used to detect factor Bb deposited on zymosan. As a means for determining the background signal in the assay following complete inhibition of the APC, an aliquot of serum (5% final, diluted in GVB + Mg/EGTA) prepared from MASP-3 mAb-treated cynomolgus monkeys was spiked with 300 nM of an inhibitory Factor D antibody. To determine the degree of APC inhibition by the MASP-3 mAb delivered intravenously to the monkey, another aliquot of diluted serum was spiked with 300 nM of a neutral isotype control antibody (that has no APC inhibitory activity) before testing factor Bb deposition on zymosan. The spiked antibody-serum mixtures were incubated for 30 minutes on ice prior to the addition of zymosan (0.1 mg/mL final). The mixtures were incubated at 37°C for 65 minutes, and the APC activity was measured by the flow cytometric detection of complement factor Bb (Quidel antibody A252) on the surface of the zymosan particles.

For determining generation of the fluid phase markers Ba, Bb, and C3a, the APC was induced in *ex vivo* assays by incubating zymosan (1 mg/mL final) in serum (5% final, diluted in GVB + Mg/EGTA) prepared from anti-MASP-3 mAb-treated cynomolgus monkeys. The mixtures were incubated at 37°C for 40 minutes, and the APC activity was measured by ELISA-based detection of the complement end-points. Ba, Bb, and C3a were detected in the reaction

supernatants using commercially available ELISA kits (Quidel). Absorbance values of all tests were normalized by setting pre-treatment values as 100% activity, and a pre-treatment sample incubated, but not exposed to zymosan, to 0%.

In order to relate the degree of APC inhibition to the antibody to target ratio in MASP-3 mAb-treated monkeys, serum MASP-3 and inhibitory MASP-3 mAb levels were quantitated. Serum MASP-3 was measured by a sandwich ELISA assay. The MASP-3 protein was captured on a plate with αM3-259 (described in Example 16). Serum samples (diluted 1:40) were first incubated with unlabeled (non-biotinylated) MASP-3 mAb, corresponding to the treatment mAb, at 37°C for 1 hour, then further diluted 1:250 (final 1:10,000) and added to the plate and incubated at 37°C for another hour. The plate was washed and a biotinylated version of mAb 10D12 was used as a detection antibody. The large dilution of serum prior to the detection steps was used to uncouple target and treatment mAb, and to prevent competition between the treatment antibody and the detection antibody. After the plate was washed multiple times, streptavidin-HRP was used for the final detection step. Absorbance values were collected at A450 with a plate reader. MASP-3 serum concentrations were extrapolated from a standard curve created by assaying recombinant, full-length cyno MASP-3 protein. The amount of anti-MASP-3 antibody present in the serum was detected using the Human Therapeutic IgG4 ELISA Kit (Cayman Chemicals), following the manufacturer's instructions.

Western blot analysis was used to analyze the level of pro-Factor D and Factor D in serum from a cynomolgus monkey over time (hours) after treatment with a single 5 mg/kg intravenous dose of mAb h13B1X. Briefly described, the Western blot analysis was carried out by mixing 20 µL of cynomolgus plasma obtained at the different timepoints prior to treatment (-120hr, -24hr) and after treatment (72hr, 168hr, 336 hr, 504hr, 672hr and 840 hr) with PBS and 11.2 µL of anti-CFD antibody (0.5 µg/µL) in a total volume of 400µL at 4°C for 1 hour. 12 µL of Protein A/G Plus Agarose (Santa Cruz Biotech) was added and the mixture was incubated overnight at 4°C. Immunoprecipitates were collected by centriguation at 1000 x g for 5 minutes at 4°C. The pellets were washed five times with PBS. After the final wash, the pellets were resuspended in 30 µL of 1x Glycoprotein Denaturing Buffer and the glycoprotein was denatured by heating the reaction at 100°C for 10 minutes. 10X G2 reaction buffer, 10% NP-40 and 2.5 µL Peptide-N-Glycosidase (New England Biolabs, P0704L) was added into each tube and the reaction was incubated at 37°C for 2 hours. The

agarose beads were pelleted by centrifugation at 1000 x g for 5 minutes and 20 µL supernatant was collected into new tubes. The captured and deglycosylated proteins were resolved with SDS-PAGE (NuPAGE 12% Bis-Tris Mini Gel) and the gels were electroblotted for Western blot analysis with a biotinylated anti-CFD (R&D Systems BAF1824) and Pierce ™ High Sensitivity Streptavidin-HRP (Thermo Fischer Scientific 21130).

Results:

FIGURE 69 graphically illustrates APC activityin serum samples obtained from a group of three cynomolgus monkeys over time after a single treatment at time=0 with high affinity MASP-3 mAb h13B1X. The figure shows the average MFI in a flow cytometric assay detecting complement factor Bb on the surface of zymosan particles in 5% serum spiked with either the APC-inhibiting fact D mAb or the neutral isotype control mAb. As shown in FIGURE 69, the animals demonstrate diminished APC activity as early as 4 hrs. If MASP-3 antibody treatment blocks the APC as effectively as Factor D inhibition, the two spiked antibody conditions will demonstrate identical levels of inhibition of Bb deposition in post-dose samples, but not in the pre-dose (or time = 0; FIGURE 69) condition. As shown in FIGURE 69, by 72 hrs post-treatment, the APC activity is decreased to approximately that achieved by adding the Factor D mAb to the serum samples. Nearly complete inhibition due to h13B1X treatment, as experimentally determined by comparison with the spiked Factor D antibody, persists until 336 hrs (14 days) post-dose. Thus, these results demonstrate that treatment with a high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory mAb provides a complete, sustained inhibition of the APC in a non-human primate.

FIGURE 70 graphically illustrates APC activity, as determined by Bb deposition on zymosan, in serum samples obtained from groups of cynomolgus monkeys (3 animals per group) treated with a single 5 mg/kg intravenous dose of high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory mAbs h4D5X, h10D12X or h13B1X. Bb deposition data was collected as described above. APC activity for the treatment timepoints was normalized by setting pre-treatment MFIs of samples spiked with the non-inhibitory, isotype control antibody as 100% activity, and a pre-treatment sample incubated with 50 mM EDTA (to inhibit all complement activity) to 0%. The h13BX treatment data used for FIGURE 70 are also reflected in FIGURE 69. As shown in FIGURE 70, treatment with all three high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory antibodies resulted

in greater than 95% inhibition of the APC. The h4D5X-, h10D12X-, and h13B1X-treated animals maintained at least 90% inhibition of the APC for 6.7, 11.7, and 16 days, respectively. Thus, these results demonstrate that treatment with these represensative high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory mAbs provides sustained inhibition of the APC in a nonhuman primate with a single 5 mg/kg dose.

FIGURE 71A-C graphically illustrates additional measures of APC activity. Fluid-phase Ba (FIGURE 71A), Bb (FIGURE 71B) and C3a (FIGURE 71C) were measured in zymosan-treated, diluted serum samples obtained from groups of cynomolgus monkeys (3 animals per group) over time after treatment with a single 5 mg/kg intravenous dose of h4D5X, h10D12X, and h13B1X as described above.

As shown in FIGURE 71A-C, single administrations of all three high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory antibodies resulted in inhibition of the APC, as defined by three different fluid-phase endpoints. These data are consistent with level of APC inhibition demonstrated in the Bb deposition study of FIGURE 70, and further illustrate the efficacy of these mAbs to inhibit the pathway for multiple weeks.

FIGURE 72A-C graphically illustrates the relationship of APC activity, as determined by fluid-phase Ba production, relative to the molar ratio of monomeric MASP-3 and MASP-3 mAb antibody detected in serum from monkeys treated with either h4D5X (FIGURE 72A), h10D12X (FIGURE 72B) or h13B1X (FIGURE 72C). Each panel in FIGURE 72A-C represents the data from one monkey. The monkey subjects used and serum (or plasma) obtained in this study are the same as those described above (FIGURES 69, 70, and 71).

FIGURES 72A-C graphically illustrates the molar ratio of target (MASP-3) to the high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory antibodies h4D5X (FIGURE 72A), h10D12X (FIGURE 72B) and h13B1X (FIGURE 72C) at the timepoints of complete APC inhibition, as measured by fluid-phase Ba. For reference purposes, the molar ratio of 1:1 target to antibody is shown as a dotted line in each graph. As shown in FIGURES 72A-C, target (MASP-3) to the high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory mAbs h4D5X, h10D12X and h13B1X at a molar ratio in the range of about 2:1 to about 2.5:1 (target to antibody) are sufficient to completely inhibit the APC. These data demonstrate that these three representative MASP-3 inhibitory mAbs are potent, high-affinity MASP-3 inhibitory antibodies that are capable at inhibiting the APC

when present at molar concentrations less than the concentration of target. These levels of potency strongly indicate that the mAbs have the potential to be used clinically to treat diseases or indications caused by the APC.

FIGURE 73 shows a Western blot analyzing the level of pro-Factor D and Factor D in serum from a cynomolgus monkey over time (hours) prior to and after treatment with a single 5 mg/kg intravenous dose of mAb h13B1X. As shown in FIGURE 73, Factor D is present in plasma as pro-Factor D for at least 336 hours (14 days) following a single dose of mAb h13B1X.

Summary of Results

As described in Example 11, a single dose administration of a high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory antibody, mAb 13B1, to mice led to near-complete ablation of systemic alternative pathway complement activity for at least 14 days. As further described in Example 12, in a study conducted in a well-established animal model associated with PNH it was demonstrated that mAb 13B1 significantly improved the survival of PNH-like red blood cells and protected PNH-like red blood cells significantly better than did C5 inhibition. As described in Example 13, it was further demonstrated that mAb 13B1 reduced the incidence and severity of disease in a mouse model of arthritis. The results in this example demonstrate that representative high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory mAbs 13B1, 10D12 and 4D5 are highly effective at blocking the alternative pathway in primates. Single dose administration of mAb 13B1, 10D12 or 4D5 to cynomolgus monkeys resulted in sustained ablation of systemic alternative pathway activity lasting for approximately 16 days. The extent of alternative pathway ablation in cynomolgus monkeys treated with high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory antibodies was comparable to that achieved by factor D blockade in vitro, indicating complete blockade of factor D conversion by the MASP-3 inhibitory antibodies. Therefore, high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory mAbs have therapeutic utility in the treatment of patients suffering from diseases related to alternative pathway hyperactivity, such as, for example, paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria (PNH), age-related macular degeneration (AMD, including wet and dry AMD), ischemia-reperfusion injury, arthritis, disseminated intravascular coagulation, thrombotic microangiopathy (including hemolytic uremic syndrome (HUS), atypical hemolytic uremic syndrome (aHUS),thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura (TTP) or

transplant-associated TMA), asthma, dense deposit disease, pauci-immune necrotizing crescentic glomerulonephritis, traumatic brain injury, aspiration pneumonia, endophthalmitis, neuromyelitis optica, Behcet's disease, multiple sclerosis, Guillain Barre Syndrome, Alzheimer's disease, Amylotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS), lupus nephritis, systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE), Diabetic retinopathy, Uveitis, Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD), C3 glomerulopathy, transplant rejection, Graft-versus-host disease (GVHD), hemodialysis, sepsis, Systemic inflammatory response syndrome (SIRS), Acute Respiratory Distress Syndrome (ARDS), ANCA vasculitis, Anti-phospholipid syndrome, Atherosclerosis, IgA Nephropathy and Myasthenia Gravis.

VII. OTHER EMBODIMENTS

All publications, patent applications, and patents mentioned in this specification are herein incorporated by reference.

Various modifications and variations of the described methods, compositions, and compounds, of the invention will be apparent to those skilled in the art without departing from the scope and spirit of the invention. Although the invention has been described in connection with specific desired embodiments, it should be understood that the invention as claimed should not be unduly limited to such specific embodiments. Indeed, various modifications of the described modes for carrying out the invention that are obvious to those skilled in the fields of medicine, immunology, pharmacology, oncology, or related fields are intended to be within the scope of the invention.

In accordance with the foregoing, the invention features the following embodiments.

High Affinity MASP-3 inhibitory antibodies that bind one or more epitopes within the SP domain

1A. An isolated monoclonal antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof that specifically binds to the serine protease domain of human MASP-3 (amino acid residues 450 to 728 of SEQ ID NO:2) with high affinity (having a K_D of less than 500 pM), wherein the antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof inhibits alternative pathway complement activation.

2A. The isolated antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of paragraph 1, wherein the antibody or antigen-binding fragment is characterized by at least one or more of the following properties:

(a) inhibits pro-Factor D maturation;
(b) does not bind to human MASP-1 (SEQ ID NO:8);
(c) inhibits the alternative pathway at a molar ratio of from about 1:1 to about 2.5:1 (MASP-3 target to mAb) in a mammalian subject;
(d) does not inhibit the classical pathway.
(e) inhibition of hemolysis and/or opsonization;
(f) inhibition of MASP-3 serine protease substrate-specific cleavage;
(g) a reduction of hemolysis or the reduction of C3 cleavage and C3b surface deposition;
(h) a reduction of Factor B and Bb deposition on an activating surface;
(i) a reduction of resting levels (in circulation, and without the experimental addition of an activating surface) of active Factor D relative to pro-Factor D;
(j) a reduction of levels of active Factor D relative to pro-Factor D in response to an activating surface;
(k) a reduction of the production of resting and/or surface-induced levels of fluid-phase Ba, Bb, C3b, or C3a and/or
(l) a reduction in factor P deposition.

3A. The isolated antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of paragraph 1 or 2, wherein said antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof specifically binds to an epitope located within the serine protease domain of human MASP-3, wherein said epitope is located within at least one or more of: VLRSQRRDTTVI (SEQ ID NO:9), TAAHVLRSQRRDTTV (SEQ ID NO:10), DFNIQNYNHDIALVQ (SEQ ID NO:11), PHAECKTSYESRS (SEQ ID

NO:12), GNYSVTENMFC (SEQ ID NO:13), VSNYVDWVWE (SEQ ID NO:14) and/or VLRSQRRDTTV (SEQ ID NO:15). [Group I]

4A. The antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of paragraph 3, wherein said antibody or antigen-binding fragment binds to an epitope within SEQ ID NO:15. [includes all group I abs]

5A. The antibody or antigen-binding fragment of paragraph 3, wherein said antibody or antigen-binding fragment binds to an epitope within SEQ ID NO:9. [10D12]

6A. The antibody or antigen-binding fragment of paragraph 3, wherein said antibody or antigen-binding fragment binds to an epitope within SEQ ID NO:10. [13B1]

7A. The antibody or antigen-binding fragment of paragraph 6, wherein said antibody or antigen binding fragment also binds to an epitope within SEQ ID NO:12. [13B1]

8A. The antibody or antigen-binidng fragment of paragraph 3, wherein said antibody or antigen-binding fragment also binds to an epitope within SEQ ID NO:10 and/or SEQ ID NO:12. [13B1]

9A. The antibody or antigen-binding fragment of paragraph 3, wherein said antibody or antigen binding fragment binds to an epitope within SEQ ID NO:9. [1F3, 4B6, 4D5, 1A10]

10A. The antibody or antigen-binding fragment of paragraph 7, wherein said antibody or antigen binding fragment also binds to an epitope within at least one of SEQ ID NO:11, SEQ ID NO: 13 and/or SEQ ID NO:14. [1F3, 4B6, 4D5, 1A10]

11A. The antibody or antigen-binding fragment of paragraph 7, wherein the antibody or antigen-binding fragment also binds to an epitope within at least one of SEQ ID NO:10, SEQ ID NO:11, SEQ ID NO:13 and/or SEQ ID NO:14. [1F3, 4B6, 4D5, 1A10]

12A. The antibody or antigen-binding fragment of paragraph 1 or 2, wherein said antibody binds to an epitope within at least one of: ECGQPSRSLPSLV (SEQ ID NO:16), RNAEPGLFPWQ (SEQ ID NO:17); KWFGSGALLSASWIL(SEQ ID NO:18);

EHVTVYLGLH (SEQ ID NO:19); PVPLGPHVMP (SEQ ID NO:20); APHMLGL (SEQ ID NO:21); SDVLQYVKLP (SEQ ID NO:22); and/or AFVIFDDLSQRW (SEQ ID NO:23). [group II and III]

13A. The antibody or antigen-binding fragment of paragraph 12, wherein said antibody or antigen-binding fragment binds to an epitope within SEQ ID NO:17. [all group II and III abs]

14A. The antibody or antigen-binding fragment of paragraph 13, wherein said antibody or antigen binding fragment also binds to an epitope within EHVTVYLGLH (SEQ ID NO:19) and/or AFVIFDDLSQRW (SEQ ID NO:23). [1G4, 1E7, 2D7 15D9]

15A. The antibody or antigen-binding fragment of paragraph 14, wherein said antibody or antigen binding fragment also binds to an epitope within SEQ ID NO:23. [1G4, 1E7, 2D7, 15D9, 2F5]

16A. The antibody or antigen-binding fragment of paragraph 14, wherein said antibody or antigen binding fragment also binds to an epitope within SEQ ID NO:19 and/or SEQ ID NO:23. [Ig4, 1E7, 2D7]

17A. The antibody or antigen-binding fragment of paragraph 14, wherein said antibody or antigen-binding fragment also binds to an epitope within SEQ ID NO:18, SEQ ID NO:20 and/or SEQ ID NO:23. [15D9, 2F5]

18A. The antibody or antigen-binding fragment of paragraph 14, wherein said antibody or antigen-binding fragment also binds to an epitope within at least one of SEQ ID NO:18, SEQ ID NO:20 and/or SEQ ID NO:23 [15D9, 2F5].

19A. The antibody or antigen-binding fragment of paragraph 14, wherein said antibody or antigen-binding fragment also binds to an epitope within at least one of SEQ ID NO:16, SEQ ID NO: 21 and/or SEQ ID NO:22. [1B11]

20A. The antibody or antigen-binding fragment of paragraph 14, wherein said antibody or antigen-binding fragment also binds to an epitope within at least one of SEQ ID NO:16, SEQ ID NO: 21 and/or SEQ ID NO:22 [1B11].

21A. The antibody or antigen binding fragment thereof of any one of paragraphs 1-20, wherein the antibody or antigen-binding fragment is selected from the group consisting of a human antibody, a humanized antibody, a chimeric antibody, a murine antibody, and an antigen-binding fragment of any of the foregoing.

22A. The antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of any one of paragraphs 1-21, wherein said antibody or antigen binding fragment thereof is selected from the group consisting of a single chain antibody, an ScFv, a Fab fragment, an Fab' fragment, an F(ab')2 fragment, a univalent antibody lacking a hinge region and a whole antibody.

23A. The antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of any one of paragraphs 1-22, further comprising an immunoglobulin constant region.

24A. The antibody or antigen binding fragment thereof of any one of paragraphs 1-23, wherein the antibody or antigen-binding fragment is humanized.

25A. The antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of any one of paragraphs 1-24 wherein said antibody binds to the serine protease domain of human MASP-3 with an affinity of less than 500 pM.

26A. The antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of any of paragraphs 1-25, wherein said antibody inhibits alternative pathway activation in mammalian blood.

27A. A composition comprising the antibody or antigen-binding fragment of any of paragraphs 1A-26A and a pharmaceutically acceptable excipient.

A. Group IA High Affinity MASP-3 inhibitory antibodies That Bind one or more epitopes within the SP domain (4D5, 4B6, 1A10 plus 4D5 variants)

1B. An isolated antibody, or antigen-binding fragment thereof, that binds to MASP-3 comprising:

(a) a heavy chain variable region comprising a HC-CDR1 set forth as SEQ ID NO:209 (XXDIN, wherein X at position 1 is S or T and wherein X at position 2 is N or D); a HC-CDR2 set forth as SEQ ID NO:210 (WIYPRDXXXKYNXXFXD, wherein X at position 7 is G or D; X at position 8 is S, T or R; X at position 9 is I or T; X at position 13 is E or D; X at position 14 is K or E; and X at position 16 is T or K); and a HC-CDR3 set forth as SEQ ID NO:211 (XEDXY, wherein X at position 1 is L or V, and wherein X at position 4 is T or S); and

(b) a light chain variable region comprising a LC-CDR1 set forth as SEQ ID NO:212 (KSSQSLLXXRTRKNYLX, wherein X at position 8 is N, I, Q or A; wherein X at position 9 is S or T; and wherein X at position 17 is A or S); a LC-CDR2 set forth as SEQ ID NO:144 (WASTRES) and a LC-CDR3 set forth as SEQ ID NO:146 (KQSYNLYT).

2B. The isolated antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of paragraph 1, wherein the HC-CDR1 of the heavy chain variable region according to (a) comprises SEQ ID NO:56 (TDDIN). [4D5 and variants]

3B. The isolated antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of paragraph 1, wherein the HC-CDR1 of the heavy chain variable region according to (a) comprises SEQ ID NO:62 (SNDIN). [1F3, 4B6 and 1A10]

4B. The isolated antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of paragraph 1, wherein the HC-CDR2 of the heavy chain variable region according to (a) comprises SEQ ID NO:58 (WIYPRDDRTKYNDKFKD) [4D5 and variants].

5B. The isolated antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of paragraph 1, wherein the HC-CDR2 of the heavy chain variable region according to (a) comprises SEQ ID NO:63 (WIYPRDGSIKYNEKFTD). [1F3]

6B. The isolated antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of paragraph 1, wherein the HC-CDR2 of the heavy chain variable region according to (a) comprises SEQ ID NO:67 (WIYPRDGTTKYNEEFTD). [4B6]

7B. The isolated antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of paragraph 1, wherein the HC-CDR2 of the heavy chain variable region according to (a) comprises SEQ ID NO:69 (WIYPRDGTTKYNEKFTD). [1A10]

8B. The isolated antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of paragraph 1, wherein the HC-CDR3 of the heavy chain variable region according to (a) comprises SEQ ID NO:60 (LEDTY)[4D5 and variants]

9B. The isolated antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of paragraph 1, wherein the HC-CDR3 of the heavy chain variable region according to (a) comprises SEQ ID NO:65 (VEDSY). [1F3, 4B6 and 1A10]

10B. The isolated antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of paragraph 1, wherein the LC-CDR1 of the light chain variable region according to (b) comprises SEQ ID NO:142 (KSSQSLLNSRTRKNYLA); SEQ ID NO:257 (KSSQSLLQSRTRKNYLA), SEQ ID NO:258 (KSSQSLLASRTRKNYLA); or SEQ ID NO:259 (KSSQSLLNTRTRKNYLA). [4D5 and variants]

11B. The isolated antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of paragraph 10, wherein the LC-CDR1 of the light chain variable region according to (b) comprises SEQ ID NO:258 (KSSQSLLASRTRKNYLA). [4D5 NA mutant]

12B. The isolated antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of paragraph 1, wherein the LC-CDR1 of the light chain variable region according to (b) comprises SEQ ID NO:149 (KSSQSLLISRTRKNYLS). [1F3 and 4B6]

13B. The isolated antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of paragraph 1, wherein the HC-CDR1 comprises SEQ ID NO:56, the HC-CDR2 comprises SEQ ID NO:58, the HC-CDR3 comprises SEQ ID NO:60 and wherein the LC-CDR1 comprises SEQ ID NO:142, SEQ ID NO:257, SEQ ID NO:258 or SEQ ID NO:259; wherein the LC-CDR2 comprises SEQ ID NO:144 and wherein the LC-CDR3 comprises SEQ ID NO:146. [all 6 CDRs of 4D5 with variants at LC-CDR1].

14B. The isolated antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of paragraph 1, wherein the HC-CDR1 comprises SEQ ID NO:62, the HC-CDR2 comprises SEQ ID NO:63, SEQ ID NO:67 or SEQ ID NO:69, the HC-CDR3 comprises SEQ ID NO:65 and wherein the LC-CDR1 comprises SEQ ID NO:149, the LC-CDR2 comprises SEQ ID NO:144 and the LC-CDR3 comprises SEQ ID NO:146. [all 6 CDRS of 1F3, 4B6 and 1A10]

15B. The antibody or antigen binding fragment thereof of any one of paragraphs 1-14, wherein the antibody or antigen-binding fragment is selected from the group consisting of a human antibody, a humanized antibody, a chimeric antibody, a murine antibody, and an antigen-binding fragment of any of the foregoing.

16B. The antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of any one of paragraphs 1-15, wherein said antibody or antigen binding fragment thereof is selected from the group consisting of a single chain antibody, an ScFv, a Fab fragment, an Fab' fragment, an F(ab')2 fragment, a univalent antibody lacking a hinge region and a whole antibody.

17B. The antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of any one of paragraphs 1-16, further comprising an immunoglobulin constant region.

18B. The antibody or antigen binding fragment thereof of any one of paragraphs 1-17, wherein the antibody or antigen-binding fragment is humanized.

19B. The isolated antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of paragraph 1, wherein the antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof comprises a heavy chain comprising at least 80%, 85%, 90%, 95%, 98%, 99% or 100% identical to SEQ ID NO:24, SEQ ID NO:248 or SEQ ID NO:249 and a light chain comprising at least 80%, 85%, 90%, 95%, 98%, 99% or 100% identical to SEQ ID NO:40, SEQ ID NO:250 or SEQ ID NO:278 [4D5 parental, humanized and modified versions].

20B. The isolated antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of paragraph 1, wherein the antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof comprises a heavy chain comprising at least 80%, 85%, 90%, 95%, 98%, 99% or 100% identical to SEQ ID NO:25 and a light chain

comprising at least 80%, 85%, 90%, 95%, 98%, 99% or 100% identical to SEQ ID NO:41 [1F3].

21B. The isolated antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of paragraph 1, wherein the antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof comprises a heavy chain comprising at least 80%, 85%, 90%, 95%, 98%, 99% or 100% identical to SEQ ID NO:26 and a light chain comprising at least 80%, 85%, 90%, 95%, 98%, 99% or 100% identical to SEQ ID NO:42 [4B6].

22B. The isolated antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of paragraph 1, wherein the antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof comprises a heavy chain comprising at least 80%, 85%, 90%, 95%, 98%, 99% or 100% identical to SEQ ID NO:27 and a light chain comprising at least 80%, 85%, 90%, 95%, 98%, 99% or 100% identical to SEQ ID NO:42 [1A10].

23B. The antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of any one of paragraphs 1-22 wherein said antibody binds to human MASP-3 with an affinity of less than 500 pM.

24B. The antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of any of paragraphs 1-23, wherein said antibody inhibits alternative pathway activation in mammalian blood.

25B. A composition comprising the antibody or antigen-binding fragment of any of paragraphs 1B-24B and a pharmaceutically acceptable excipient.

B. Group IB High Affinity MASP-3 inhibitory antibodies That Bind one or more epitopes within the SP domain (10D12, 35C1 and 10D12 variants)

1C. An isolated antibody, or antigen-binding fragment thereof, that binds to MASP-3 comprising:

(a) a heavy chain variable region comprising a HC-CDR1 set forth as SEQ ID NO:213 (SYGXX, wherein X at position 4 is M or I and wherein X at position 5 is S or T); a HC-CDR2 set forth as SEQ ID NO:74; and a HC-CDR3 set forth as

SEQ ID NO:214 (GGXAXDY, wherein X at position 3 is E or D and wherein X at position 5 is M or L); and

(b) a light chain variable region comprising a LC-CDR1 set forth as SEQ ID NO:215 (KSSQSLLDSXXKTYLX , wherein X at position 10 is D, E or A; wherein X at position 11 is G or A; and wherein X at position 16 is N or S); a LC-CDR2 set forth as SEQ ID NO:155; and a LC-CDR3 set forth as SEQ ID NO:216 (WQGTHFPXT, wherein X at position 8 is W or Y).

2C. The isolated antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of paragraph 1, wherein the HC-CDR1 of the heavy chain variable region according to (a) comprises SEQ ID NO:72 (SYGMS). [10D12 and variants]

3C. The isolated antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of paragraph 1, wherein the HC-CDR1 of the heavy chain variable region according to (a) comprises SEQ ID NO:79 (SYGIT). [35C1]

4C. The isolated antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of paragraph 1, wherein the HC-CDR3 of the heavy chain variable region according to (a) comprises SEQ ID NO:76 (GGEAMDY). [10D12 and variants].

5C. The isolated antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of paragraph 1, wherein the HC-CDR3 of the heavy chain variable region according to (a) comprises SEQ ID NO:82 (GGDALDY). [35C1]

6C. The isolated antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of paragraph 1, wherein the LC-CDR1 of the light chain variable region according to (b) comprises SEQ ID NO:153 (KSSQSLLDSDGKTYLN); SEQ ID NO:261 (KSSQSLLDSEGKTYLN), SEQ ID NO:262 (KSSQSLLDSAGKTYLN) or SEQ ID NO:263 (KSSQSLLDSDAKTYLN). [10D12 and variants]

7C. The isolated antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of paragraph 6, wherein the LC-CDR1 of the light chain variable region comprises SEQ ID NO:263 (KSSQSLLDSDAKTYLN). [10D12 GA variant]

8C. The isolated antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of paragraph 1, wherein the LC-CDR1 of the light chain variable region comprises SEQ ID NO:152. [35C1]

9C. The isolated antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of paragraph 1, wherein the LC-CDR3 of the light chain variable region according to (b) comprises SEQ ID NO:159 (KSSQSLLDSDGKTYLS). [10D12]

10C. The isolated antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of paragraph 1, wherein the LC-CDR3 of the light chain variable region according to (b) comprises SEQ ID NO:160 (WQGTHFPYT). [35C1]

11C. The isolated antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of paragraph 1, wherein the HC-CDR1 comprises SEQ ID NO:72, the HC-CDR2 comprises SEQ ID NO:74, the HC-CDR3 comprises SEQ ID NO:76, the LC-CDR1 comprises SEQ ID NO:153, SEQ ID NO:261, SEQ ID NO:262 or SEQ ID NO:263; the LC-CDR2 comprises SEQ ID NO:155 and the LC-CDR3 comprises SEQ ID NO:157. [all 6 CDRs of 10D12 with variants at LC-CDR1]

12C. The isolated antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of paragraph 1, wherein the HC-CDR1 comprises SEQ ID NO:79, the HC-CDR2 comprises SEQ ID NO:74, the HC-CDR3 comprises SEQ ID NO:82, the LC-CDR1 comprises SEQ ID NO:159, the LC-CDR2 comprises SEQ ID NO:155 and the LC-CDR3 comprises SEQ ID NO:160. [all 6 CDRs of 35C1]

13C. The antibody or antigen binding fragment thereof of any one of paragraphs 1-12, wherein the antibody or antigen-binding fragment is selected from the group consisting of a human antibody, a humanized antibody, a chimeric antibody, a murine antibody, and an antigen-binding fragment of any of the foregoing.

14C. The antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of any one of paragraphs 1-13, wherein said antibody or antigen binding fragment thereof is selected from the group consisting of a single chain antibody, an ScFv, a Fab fragment, an Fab' fragment, an F(ab')2 fragment, a univalent antibody lacking a hinge region and a whole antibody.

15C. The antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of any one of paragraphs 1-14, further comprising an immunoglobulin constant region.

16C. The antibody or antigen binding fragment thereof of any one of paragraphs 1-15, wherein the antibody or antigen-binding fragment is humanized.

17C. The isolated antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of paragraph 1, wherein the antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof comprises a heavy chain comprising at least 80%, 85%, 90%, 95%, 98%, 99% or 100% identical to SEQ ID NO:28, SEQ ID NO:251 or SEQ ID NO:252 and a light chain comprising at least 80%, 85%, 90%, 95%, 98%, 99% or 100% identical to SEQ ID NO:43, SEQ ID NO:253 or SEQ ID NO:279 [10D12 parental, humanized and variants].

18C. The isolated antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of paragraph 1, wherein the antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof comprises a heavy chain comprising at least 80%, 85%, 90%, 95%, 98%, 99% or 100% identical to SEQ ID NO:29 and a light chain comprising at least 80%, 85%, 90%, 95%, 98%, 99% or 100% identical to SEQ ID NO:44 [35C1].

19C. The antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of any one of paragraphs 1-18 wherein said antibody binds to human MASP-3 with an affinity of less than 500 pM.

20C. The antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of any of paragraphs 1-19, wherein said antibody inhibits alternative pathway activation in mammalian blood.

21C. A composition comprising the antibody or antigen-binding fragment of any of paragraphs 1C-20C and a pharmaceutically acceptable excipient.

C. Group IC High Affinity MASP-3 inhibitory antibodies That Bind one or more epitopes within the SP domain (13B1 and variants)

1D. An isolated antibody, or antigen-binding fragment thereof, that binds to MASP-3 comprising:

(a) a heavy chain variable region comprising a HC-CDR1 set forth as SEQ ID NO:84 (GKWIE); a HC-CDR2 set forth as SEQ ID NO:86 (EILPGTGSTNYNEKFKG) or SEQ ID NO:275 (EILPGTGSTNYAQKFQG); and a HC-CDR3 set forth as SEQ ID NO:88 (SEDV); and

(b) a light chain variable region comprising a LC-CDR1 set forth as SEQ ID NO:142 (KSSQSLLNSRTRKNYLA), SEQ ID NO:257 (KSSQSLLQSRTRKNYLA); SEQ ID NO:258 (KSSQSLLASRTRKNYLA); or SEQ ID NO:259 (KSSQSLLNTRTRKNYLA), a LC-CDR2 set forth as SEQ ID NO:144 (WASTRES); and a LC-CDR3 set forth as SEQ ID NO:161 (KQSYNIPT). [all 6 CDRs of 13B1 and variants in LC-CDR1]

2D. The isolated antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of paragraph 1, wherein the LC-CDR1 comprises SEQ ID NO:258. [13B1 LC-CDR1 NA variant]

3D. The antibody or antigen binding fragment thereof of any one of paragraphs 1-2, wherein the antibody or antigen-binding fragment is selected from the group consisting of a human antibody, a humanized antibody, a chimeric antibody, a murine antibody, and an antigen-binding fragment of any of the foregoing.

4D. The antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of any one of paragraphs 1-3, wherein said antibody or antigen binding fragment thereof is selected from the group consisting of a single chain antibody, an ScFv, a Fab fragment, an Fab' fragment, an F(ab')2 fragment, a univalent antibody lacking a hinge region and a whole antibody.

5D. The antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of any one of paragraphs 1-4, further comprising an immunoglobulin constant region.

6D. The antibody or antigen binding fragment thereof of any one of paragraphs 1-5, wherein the antibody or antigen-binding fragment is humanized.

7D. The isolated antibody or antigen-binding fragment of paragraph 1, wherein the antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof comprises a heavy chain comprising at least 80%, 85%, 90%, 95%, 98%, 99% or 100% identical to SEQ ID NO:30, SEQ ID NO:254 or SEQ ID NO:255 and a light chain comprising at least 80%, 85%, 90%, 95%, 98%, 99% or 100% identical to SEQ ID NO:45, SEQ ID NO:256 or SEQ ID NO:280 [13B1 parental, humanized and variants].

8D. The antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of any one of paragraphs 1-7 wherein said antibody binds to human MASP-3 with an affinity of less than 500 pM.

9D. The antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of any of paragraphs 1-8, wherein said antibody inhibits alternative pathway activation in mammalian blood.

10D. A composition comprising the antibody or antigen-binding fragment of any of paragraphs 1D-9D and a pharmaceutically acceptable excipient.

D. **Group II High Affinity MASP-3 inhibitory antibodies That Bind one or more epitopes within the SP domain (1G4)**

1E. An isolated antibody, or antigen-binding fragment thereof, that binds to MASP-3 comprising:

(a) a heavy chain variable region comprising a HC-CDR1 set forth as SEQ ID NO:91 (GYWIE); a HC-CDR2 set forth as SEQ ID NO:93 (EMLPGSGSTHYNEKFKG), and a HC-CDR3 set forth as SEQ ID NO:95 (SIDY); and

(b) a light chain variable region comprising a LC-CDR1 set forth as SEQ ID NO:163 (RSSQSLVQSNGNTYLH), a LC-CDR2 set forth as SEQ ID NO:165 (KVSNRFS) and a LC-CDR3 set forth as SEQ ID NO:167 (SQSTHVPPT).

2E. The antibody or antigen binding fragment thereof of paragraph 1, wherein the antibody or antigen-binding fragment is selected from the group consisting of a human antibody, a humanized antibody, a chimeric antibody, a murine antibody, and an antigen-binding fragment of any of the foregoing.

3E. The antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of any one of paragraphs 1-2, wherein said antibody or antigen binding fragment thereof is selected from the group consisting of a single chain antibody, an ScFv, a Fab fragment, an Fab' fragment, an F(ab')2 fragment, a univalent antibody lacking a hinge region and a whole antibody.

4E. The antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of any one of paragraphs 1-3, further comprising an immunoglobulin constant region.

5E. The antibody or antigen binding fragment thereof of any one of paragraphs 1-4, wherein the antibody or antigen-binding fragment is humanized.

6E. The isolated antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of paragraph 1, wherein the antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof comprise a heavy chain comprising at least 80%, 85%, 90%, 95%, 98%, 99% or 100% identical to SEQ ID NO:31 and a light chain comprising at least 80%, 85%, 90%, 95%, 98%, 99% or 100% identical to SEQ ID NO:46 [1G4].

7E. The antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of any one of paragraphs 1-6 wherein said antibody binds to human MASP-3 with an affinity of less than 500 pM.

8E. The antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of any of paragraphs 1-7, wherein said antibody inhibits alternative pathway activation in mammalian blood.

9E. A composition comprising the antibody or antigen-binding fragment of any of paragraphs 1E-8E and a pharmaceutically acceptable excipient.

F. **Group III High Affinity MASP-3 inhibitory antibodies that bind one or more epitopes within the SP domain (1E7, 2D7, 15D9, 2F5, 1B11, 2F2, 11B6)**

1F. An isolated antibody, or antigen-binding fragment thereof, that binds to MASP-3 comprising:

(a) a heavy chain variable region comprising a HC-CDR1 set forth as SEQ ID NO:109 (RVHFAIRDTNYWMQ), a HC-CDR2 set forth as SEQ ID NO:110 (AIYPGNGDTSYNQKFKG), a HC-CDR3 set forth as SEQ ID NO:112

(GSHYFDY); and a light chain variable region comprising a LC-CDR1 set forth as SEQ ID NO:182 (RASQSIGTSIH), a LC-CDR2 set forth as SEQ ID NO:184 (YASESIS) and a LC-CDR3 set forth as SEQ ID NO:186 (QQSNSWPYT) [1E7]; or

(b) a heavy chain variable region comprising a HC-CDR1 set forth as SEQ ID NO:125 (DYYMN), a HC-CDR2 set forth as SEQ ID NO:127 (DVNPNNDGTTYNQKFKG), a HC-CDR3 set forth as SEQ ID NO:129 (CPFYYLGKGTHFDY); and a light chain variable region comprising a LC-CDR1 set forth as SEQ ID NO:196 (RASQDISNFLN), a LC-CDR2 set forth as SEQ ID NO:198 (YTSRLHS) and a LC-CDR3 set forth as SEQ ID NO:200 (QQGFTLPWT) [2D7]; or

(c) a heavy chain variable region comprising a HC-CDR1 set forth as SEQ ID NO:132, a HC-CDR2 set forth as SEQ ID NO:133, a HC-CDR3 set forth as SEQ ID NO:135; and a light chain variable region comprsing a LC-CDR1 set forth as SEQ ID NO:203, a LC-CDR2 set forth as SEQ ID NO:165 and a LC-CDR3 set forth as SEQ ID NO:204 [49C11]; or

(d) a heavy chain variable region comprising a HC-CDR1 set forth as SEQ ID NO:137 a HC-CDR2 set forth as SEQ ID NO:138, a HC-CDR3 set forth as SEQ ID NO:140; and a light chain variable region comprising a LC-CDR1 set forth as SEQ ID NO:206, a LC-CDR2 set forth as SEQ ID NO:207 and a LC-CDR3 set forth as SEQ ID NO:208 [15D9];or

(e) a heavy chain variable region comprising a HC-CDR1 set forth as SEQ ID NO:98, a HC-CDR2 set forth as SEQ ID NO:99, a HC-CDR3 set forth as SEQ ID NO:101; and a light chain variable region comprising a LC-CDR1 set forth as SEQ ID NO:169, a LC-CDR2 set forth as SEQ ID NO:171 and a LC-CDR3 set forth as SEQ ID NO:173. [2F5]; or

(f) a heavy chain variable region comprising a HC-CDR1 set forth as SEQ ID NO:103, a HC-CDR2 set forth as SEQ ID NO:105, a HC-CDR3 set forth as SEQ ID NO:107; and a light chain variable region comprising a LC-CDR1 set forth as SEQ ID NO:176, a LC-CDR2 set forth as SEQ ID NO:178 and a LC-CDR3 set forth as SEQ ID NO:193 [1B11]; or

(g) a heavy chain variable region comprising a HC-CDR1 set forth as SEQ ID NO:114, a HC-CDR2 set forth as SEQ ID NO:116, a HC-CDR3 set forth as SEQ ID NO:118; and a light chain variable region comprising a LC-CDR1 set forth as SEQ ID NO:188, a LC-CDR2 set forth as SEQ ID NO:178 and a LC-CDR3 set forth as SEQ ID NO:190 [2F2]; or

(h) a heavy chain variable region comprising a HC-CDR1 set forth as SEQ ID NO:114, a HC-CDR2 set forth as SEQ ID NO:121, a HC-CDR3 set forth as SEQ ID NO:123; and a light chain variable region comprising a LC-CDR1 set forth as SEQ ID NO:191, a LC-CDR2 set forth as SEQ ID NO:178 and a LC-CDR3 set forth as SEQ ID NO:193. [11B6]

2F. The antibody or antigen binding fragment thereof of paragraph 1(a)-(g), wherein the antibody or antigen-binding fragment is selected from the group consisting of a human antibody, a humanized antibody, a chimeric antibody, a murine antibody, and an antigen-binding fragment of any of the foregoing.

3F. The antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of any one of paragraphs 1-2, wherein said antibody or antigen binding fragment thereof is selected from the group consisting of a single chain antibody, an ScFv, a Fab fragment, an Fab' fragment, an F(ab')2 fragment, a univalent antibody lacking a hinge region and a whole antibody.

4F. The antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of any one of paragraphs 1-3, further comprising an immunoglobulin constant region.

5F. The antibody or antigen binding fragment thereof of any one of paragraphs 1-4, wherein the antibody or antigen-binding fragment is humanized.

6F. The antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of paragraph 1, wherein the antibody or antigen binding fragment thereof comprises a heavy chain comprising at least 80%, 85%, 90%, 95%, 98%, 99% or 100% identical to SEQ ID NO:32 and a light chain comprising at least 80%, 85%, 90%, 95%, 98%, 99% or 100% identical to SEQ ID NO:47 [1E7].

7F. The antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of paragraph 1, wherein the antibody or antigen binding fragment thereof comprises a heavy chain comprising at least 80%, 85%, 90%, 95%, 98%, 99% or 100% identical to SEQ ID NO:33 and a light chain comprising at least 80%, 85%, 90%, 95%, 98%, 99% or 100% identical to SEQ ID NO:48 [2D7].

8F. The antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of paragraph 1, wherein the antibody or antigen binding fragment thereof comprises a heavy chain comprising at least 80%, 85%, 90%, 95%, 98%, 99% or 100% identical to SEQ ID NO:34 and a light chain comprising at least 80%, 85%, 90%, 95%, 98%, 99% or 100% identical to SEQ ID NO:49 [49C11].

9F. The antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of paragraph 1, wherein the antibody or antigen binding fragment thereof comprises a heavy chain comprising at least 80%, 85%, 90%, 95%, 98%, 99% or 100% identical to SEQ ID NO:35 and a light chain comprising at least 80%, 85%, 90%, 95%, 98%, 99% or 100% identical to SEQ ID NO:50 [15D9]

10F. The antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of paragraph 1, wherein the antibody or antigen binding fragment thereof comprises a heavy chain comprising at least 80%, 85%, 90%, 95%, 98%, 99% or 100% identical to SEQ ID NO:36 and a light chain comprising at least 80%, 85%, 90%, 95%, 98%, 99% or 100% identical to SEQ ID NO:51 [2F5].

11F. The antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of paragraph 1, wherein the antibody or antigen binding fragment thereof comprises a heavy chain comprising at least 80%, 85%, 90%, 95%, 98%, 99% or 100% identical to SEQ ID NO:37 and a light chain comprising at least 80%, 85%, 90%, 95%, 98%, 99% or 100% identical to SEQ ID NO:52 [1B11].

12F. The antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of paragraph 1, wherein the antibody or antigen binding fragment thereof comprises a heavy chain comprising at least 80%, 85%, 90%, 95%, 98%, 99% or 100% identical to SEQ ID NO:38 and a light chain comprising at least 80%, 85%, 90%, 95%, 98%, 99% or 100% identical to SEQ ID NO:53 [2F2].

13F. The antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of paragraph 1, wherein the antibody or antigen binding fragment thereof comprises a heavy chain comprising at least 80%, 85%, 90%, 95%, 98%, 99% or 100% identical to SEQ ID NO:39 and a light chain comprising at least 80%, 85%, 90%, 95%, 98%, 99% or 100% identical to SEQ ID NO:54 [11B6].

14F. The antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of any one of paragraphs 1-13 wherein said antibody binds to human MASP-3 with an affinity of less than 500 pM.

15F. The antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of any of paragraphs 1-14, wherein said antibody inhibits alternative pathway activation in mammalian blood.

16F. A composition comprising the antibody or antigen-binding fragment of any of paragraphs 1F-15F and a pharmaceutically acceptable excipient.

E. Use of MASP-3 Inhibitory Antibodies for treatment of AP diseases

1. A method of inhibiting alternative pathway complement activation in a mammal, the method comprising administering to a mammal subject in need thereof an amount of a composition comprising a high affinity MASP-3 inhibitory antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof sufficient to inhibit alternative pathway complement pathway activation in the mammal.

2. The method of claim 1, wherein the antibody, or antigen binding fragment thereof binds to MASP-3 with an affinity of less than 500 pM.

3. The method of paragraph 1, wherein as a result of administering the composition comprising the antibody or antigen-binding fragment one or more of the following is present in the mammalian subject:
   (a) inhibition of Factor D maturation;
   (b) inhibition of the alternative pathway when administered to the subject at a molar ratio of from about 1:1 to about 2.5:1 (MASP-3 target to mAb)
   (c) the classical pathway is not inhibited.
   (d) inhibition of hemolysis and/or opsonization;
   (e) a reduction of hemolysis or the reduction of C3 cleavage and C3b surface deposition;
   (f) a reduction of Factor B and Bb deposition on an activating surface;
   (g) a reduction of resting levels (in circulation, and without the experimental addition of an activating surface) of active Factor D relative to pro-Factor D;
   (h) a reduction of levels of active Factor D relative to pro-Factor D in response to an activating surface; and/or

(i) a reduction of the production of resting and surface-induced levels of fluid-phase Ba, Bb, C3b, or C3a.

4. The method of paragraph 1, wherein the antibody inhibits the alternative pathway at a molar ratio of from about 1:1 to about 2.5:1 (MASP-3 target to mAb)

5. The method of any of paragraphs 1-3 wherein the high affinity MASP-3 antibody characterized according to any of claims 27A, 25B, 21C, 10D, 9E or 16F.

6. The method of any of paragraphs 1-4, wherein the antibody or antigen binding fragment thereof selectively inhibits the alternative pathway without affecting the classical pathway activation.

7. The method of any of paragraphs 1-6 wherein the mammal subject is suffering from, or at risk of developing an alternative-pathway disease or disorder selected from the group consisting of paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria (PNH), age-related macular degeneration (AMD, including wet and dry AMD), ischemia-reperfusion injury, arthritis, disseminated intravascular coagulation, thrombotic microangiopathy (including hemolytic uremic syndrome (HUS), atypical hemolytic uremic syndrome (aHUS),thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura (TTP) or transplant-associated TMA), asthma, dense deposit disease, pauci-immune necrotizing crescentic glomerulonephritis, traumatic brain injury, aspiration pneumonia, endophthalmitis, neuromyelitis optica , Behcet's disease, multiple sclerosis, Guillain Barre Syndrome, Alzheimer's disease, Amylotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS), lupus nephritis, systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE), Diabetic retinopathy, Uveitis, Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD), C3 glomerulopathy, transplant rejection, Graft-versus-host disease (GVHD), hemodialysis, sepsis, Systemic inflammatory response syndrome (SIRS), Acute Respiratory Distress Syndrome (ARDS), ANCA vasculitis, Anti-phospholipid syndrome, Atherosclerosis, IgA Nephropathy and Myasthenia Gravis.

While the preferred embodiment of the invention has been illustrated and described, it will be appreciated that various changes can be made therein without departing from the spirit and scope of the invention.

CLAIMS

The embodiments of the invention in which an exclusive property or privilege is claimed are defined as follows:

1.An isolated antibody, or antigen-binding fragment thereof, that binds to MASP-3 comprising:a heavy chain variable region comprising a HC-CDR1 set forth as SEQ ID NO:84 (GKWIE); a HC-CDR2 set forth as SEQ ID NO:86 (EILPGTGSTNYNEKFKG) or SEQ ID NO:275 (EILPGTGSTNYAQKFQG); and a HC-CDR3 set forth as SEQ ID NO:88 (SEDV); and a light chain variable region comprising a LC-CDR1 set forth as SEQ ID NO:142 (KSSQSLLNSRTRKNYLA), SEQ ID NO:257 (KSSQSLLQSRTRKNYLA); SEQ ID NO:258 (KSSQSLLASRTRKNYLA); or SEQ ID NO:259 (KSSQSLLNTRTRKNYLA), a LC-CDR2 set forth as SEQ ID NO:144 (WASTRES); and a LC-CDR3 set forth as SEQ ID NO:161 (KQSYNIPT).

2. The antibody or antigen binding fragment thereof of Claim 1, wherein the antibody or antigen-binding fragment is selected from the group consisting of a human antibody, a humanized antibody, a chimeric antibody, a murine antibody, and an antigen-binding fragment of any of the foregoing.

3. The antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of Claim 1, wherein said antibody or antigen binding fragment thereof is selected from the group consisting of a single chain antibody, an ScFv, a Fab fragment, an Fab' fragment, an F(ab')2 fragment, a univalent antibody lacking a hinge region and a whole antibody.

4. The antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of Claim 1, further comprising an immunoglobulin constant region.

5. The antibody or antigen binding fragment thereof of Claim 1, wherein the antibody or antigen-binding fragment is humanized.

6. The antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of Claim 1, wherein said antibody binds to the serine protease domain of human MASP-3 with an affinity of less than 500 pM.

7. The antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of Claim 1, wherein said antibody inhibits alternative pathway activation in mammalian blood.

8. An isolated DNA sequence encoding the heavy and light chain variable regions of an antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof from any one of claims 1-7.

9. A cloning or expression vector comprising one or more DNA sequences of Claim 8.

10. A host cell comprising one or more cloning or expression vectors of claim 9.

11. A process for producing the antibody or antigen-binding fragment of any of claims 1-7 comprising culturing the host cell of claim 10 and isolating the antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof.

12. A composition comprising the antibody or antigen-binding fragment of any of Claims 1-7 and a pharmaceutically acceptable excipient.

13. Use of a composition according to claim 12 in the manufacture of a medicament for treating an alternative pathway disease or disorder selected from the group consisting of paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria (PNH), age-related macular degeneration (AMD, including wet and dry AMD), ischemia-reperfusion injury, arthritis, disseminated intravascular coagulation, thrombotic microangiopathy (including hemolytic uremic syndrome (HUS), atypical hemolytic uremic syndrome (aHUS),thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura (TTP) or transplant-associated TMA), asthma, dense deposit disease, pauci-immune necrotizing crescentic glomerulonephritis, traumatic brain injury, aspiration pneumonia, endophthalmitis, neuromyelitis optica, Behcet's disease, multiple sclerosis, Guillain Barre Syndrome, Alzheimer's disease, amylotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS), lupus nephritis, systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE), diabetic retinopathy, uveitis, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD), C3 glomerulopathy, transplant rejection, graft-versus-host disease (GVHD), hemodialysis, sepsis, systemic inflammatory response syndrome (SIRS), acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS), ANCA vasculitis, anti-phospholipid syndrome, atherosclerosis, IgA nephropathy and myasthenia gravis, wherein the composition comprising a MASP-3 inhibitory antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof is in an amount sufficient to inhibit alternative pathway complement activation in the mammalian subject.

14. The isolated antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of Claim 1, wherein the LC-CDR1 comprises SEQ ID NO:258.

15. The isolated antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of claim 1, wherein the HC-CDR2 comprises SEQ ID NO:86.

16. The isolated antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of claim 1, wherein the HC-CDR2 comprises SEQ ID NO:275.

17. The isolated antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of claim 1, wherein the LC-CDR1 comprises SEQ ID NO:142.

18. The isolated antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of claim 1, wherein the LC-CDR1 comprises SEQ ID NO:257.

19. The isolated antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of claim 1, wherein the LC-CDR1 comprises SEQ ID NO:259.

20. The isolated antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of claim 1, wherein the HC-CDR1 comprises SEQ ID NO:84, the HC-CDR2 comprises SEQ ID NO:86, the HC-CDR3 comprises SEQ ID NO:88, the LC-CDR1 comprises SEQ ID NO:258, the LC-CDR2 comprises SEQ ID NO:144 and the LC-CDR3 comprises SEQ ID NO:161.

21. The isolated antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of claim 1, wherein the HC-CDR1 comprises SEQ ID NO:84, the HC-CDR2 comprises SEQ ID NO:275, the HC-CDR3 comprises SEQ ID NO:88; the LC-CDR1 comprises SEQ ID NO:258, the LC-CDR2 comprises SEQ ID NO:144 and the LC-CDR3 comprises SEQ ID NO:161.

22. The isolated antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of claim 1, wherein the heavy chain variable region comprises the amino acid sequence set forth as SEQ ID NO:30.

23. The isolated antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of claim 1, wherein the light chain variable region comprises the amino acid sequence set forth as SEQ ID NO:45.

24. The isolated antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of claim 1, wherein the heavy chain variable region comprises the amino acid sequence set forth as SEQ ID NO:30 and the light chain variable region comprises the amino acid sequence set forth as SEQID NO:45.

25. The isolated antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of claim 1, wherein the heavy chain variable region comprises the amino acid sequence set forth as SEQ ID NO:254 or SEQ ID NO:255.

26. The isolated antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of claim 1, wherein the light chain variable region comprises the amino acid sequence set forth as SEQ ID NO:256 or SEQ ID NO:280.

27. An isolated antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof that binds to human MASP-3, comprising a heavy chain variable region comprising SEQ ID NO:254 or SEQ ID NO:255 and a light chain variable region comprising SEQ ID NO:256 or SEQ ID NO:280.

28. The isolated antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of claim 27, wherein the heavy chain variable region comprises SEQ ID NO:254 and the light chain variable region comprises SEQ ID NO:256.

29. The isolated antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of claim 27, wherein the heavy chain variable region comprises SEQ ID NO:255 and the light chain variable region comprises SEQ ID NO:256.

30. The isolated antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of claim 27, wherein the heavy chain variable region comprises SEQ ID NO:254 and the light chain variable region comprises SEQ ID NO: 280.

31. The isolated antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof of claim 27, wherein the heavy chain variable region comprises SEQ ID NO:255 and the light chain variable region comprises SEQ ID NO: 280.

32. The isolated antibody of claim 27, wherein the antibody is selected from the group consisting of a single chain antibody, an ScFv, a Fab fragment, an Fab' fragment, an F(ab')2 fragment, a univalent antibody lacking a hinge region and a whole antibody.

33. The isolated antibody of claim 27, further comprising an immunoglobulin constant region.